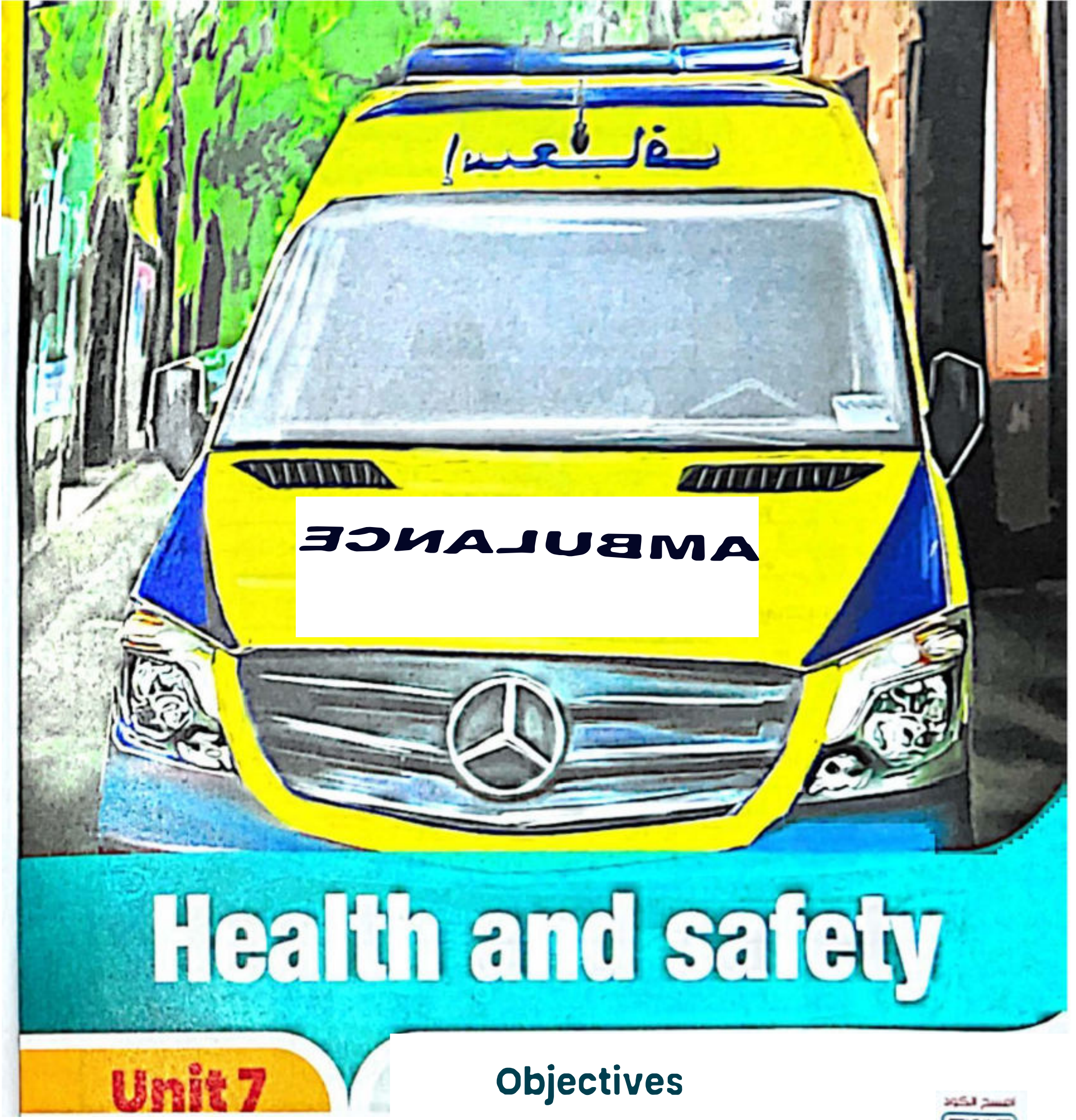

AL ADWAA
Gem
1st SEC
SECOND TERM
TREASURE ISLAND
NEW HELLO!
2024

Contents



Objectives



- **Reading** : Leaflet about hygiene around the home
- **Writing** : An email giving advice
- **Listening** : How to give first aid
- **Speaking** : Giving advice
- **Language** : should/shouldn't, must/mustn't
- **Critical thinking** : Interpreting research: the importance of hygiene

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

allergy (n)	حساسية	danger (n)	خطر
at least	على الأقل	dust (n)	غبار/تراب
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا (جمع)	emergency services	خدمات طوارئ
bedding (n)	أغطية السرير	first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية
breathe (v) – d	يتنفس	research (n)	بحث/دراسة
CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation) (n)	إنعاش قلبي رئوي	respond (v) – ed	يستجيب/يرد
		soil (n)	التربة الزراعية

To be healthy, drink **at least** eight cups of water daily.

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

agree (v) – d	يوافق	contain (v) – ed	يحتوي على
article (n)	مقال	description (n)	وصف
available (adj)	متاح	drop (v) – ped	يسقط
avoid (v) – ed	يتجنب	easily (adv)	بسهولة
basic (adj)	أساسي	electrical (adj)	كهربي
bin (n)	سلة مهملات	equipment (n)	معدات
blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية	follow (v) – ed	يتبع
bottom (n)	قاع	food waste (n)	بقايا الطعام
cable (n)	كابل/ سلك (كهربائي)	gardening (n)	أعمال الحديقة
cause (v) – d (n)	يسبب/سبب	gloves (n)	قفازات
check (v) – ed	يفحص/يراجع	grow (v)	ينمو

healthy (adj)	صحي/سليم	remove (v) – d	يزيل
hurt (v)	يؤذي/يجرح	rule (n)	قاعدة
hygiene (n)	النظافة الشخصية	safe (adj)	سليم/آمن
hygienically (adv)	صحيًا (بشكل صحي)	safety (n)	سلامة/أمان
ingredients (n)	مكونات	scientific (adj)	علمي
interpreting (n)	تفسير	separate (adj)	منفصل
leaflet (n)	منشور/نشرة	shout (v) – ed	يهتف/يصيح
leave (v)	يغادر/يترك	situation (n)	موقف
lie (v)	يستلقي/يكذب	skin (n)	جلد (الإنسان)
links (n)	روابط	soapy (adj)	صابوني
mean (v)	يعني/يقصد	surprising (adj)	مدهش
medical (adj)	طبي	trousers (n)	بنطلون
metal (n)	معدن	trust (v) – ed (n)	يثق في/ثقة
nearby (adj)	قريب/مجاور	warm (adj)	دافئ
possibility (n)	إمكانية/احتمالية	wear (v)	يرتدي

Workbook Vocabulary

chopping boards	ألواح تقطيع (طعام)	properly (adv)	بشكل جيد
cleaner (n)	منظف/عامل نظافة	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
cough (v) – ed	يكح	replace (v) – d	يستبدل
cut (n)	جرح/شق	sneeze (v) – d	يعطس
dirt (n)	قذارة	special (adj)	خاص/مخصوص
expert (n)	خبير	sponge (n)	قطعة إسفنج
extra (adj)	إضافي	spread (v)	ينتشر
fact (n)	حقيقة	tissue (n)	منديل ورقي
messy (adj)	فوضوي	wet (adj)	مبلل

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The dog is specially trained to .... its owner everywhere.
   a) flow b) drop
   c) contain d) follow
2. We should boil milk to kill harmful ....
   a) infection b) injection
   c) bacteria d) allergy
3. She is trained well to do .... She really likes helping people.
   a) bedding b) first aid
   c) food waste d) snows
4. Because she has a/an .... to some kinds of flowers, she feels uncomfortable in the garden.
   a) infection b) breathing
   c) danger d) allergy
5. You should wash your hands with .... after using the toilet.
   a) gloves b) oil
   c) dirt d) soap
6. She has been missing for several hours and her family is worried about her ....
   a) allergy b) safety
   c) possibility d) ingredient
7. Bacteria like to grow in warm, wet places like a kitchen ....
   a) oven b) cook
   c) sponge d) machine
8. She has influenza. She can't stop coughing and ....
   a) laughing b) breathing
   c) eating d) sneezing
9. Mobile phones are useful in ...., especially car accidents.
   a) CPR b) sports
   c) emergencies d) schools
10. There was a cloud of .... after moving the books from my grandfather's old bookcase.
    a) allergy b) soil
    c) dust d) blogs

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

as often as you can	بقدر ما تستطيع	belong to	ينتمي لـ/يخص
become ill	يمرض	contact with	تواصل مع
carry bacteria	ينقل العدوى البكتيرية	full of	مملوء بـ
come back again	يرجع مرة أخرى	find about	يكشف عن
do/perform/carry out CPR	يقوم بعمل إنعاش للقلب	go into	يدخل فى
DOs and DON'Ts	ما يجب فعله وما لا يجب فعله	home for/to	موطن لـ
follow the rules	يتبع القواعد	take air in and out	يستنشق ويزفر الهواء
get dirty	يتسخ	know about	يعرف عن
give advice	ينصح	live on	يعيش على (طعام معين مثلًا)
have a shower	يستحم/ يغتسل	return from	يعود من
have an allergy to	لديه حساسية من	shout at	يصرخ فى
keep ... clean	يحافظ على ... نظيفًا	talk to	يتحدث إلى
make ... harder	يجعل ... أصعب	think of/about	يفكر فى
move away from	يتحرك بعيدًا عن	lie on	يستلقى على
post online	ينشر على الإنترنت	move around	يتنقل
protect ... against	يحمي ... ضد/من ...	near to	قريب من
stay clean	يبقى نظيفًا	respond to	يستجيب لـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
agree	يوافق	agreement	اتفاق	agreeable	مقبول
-------------------		allergy allergen	حساسية مادة تثير الحساسية	allergic	لديه حساسية
breathe	يتنفس	breathing breath	عملية التنفس النفس	breathless breathy	غير قادر على التنفس لاهث
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive describable	وصفى قابل للوصف

dirty	يجعل شيئا قذرًا	dirt	قذارة	dirty	قذر
dust	يزيل التراب	dust	تراب	dusty	مترب (عليه غبار)
endanger*	يعرض للخطر	danger	خطر	dangerous endangered	خطير معرض للخطر
grow	ينمو	growth	نمو	growing	نامٍ/متزايد
interpret	يفسر	interpretation interpreter	تفسير مترجم (فورى)	interpretive	تفسيرى
medicate	يعالج/يداوى	medicine	طب/دواء	medical	طبى
mess	يقوم بعمل فوضى	mess	فوضى	messy	فوضوى
respond	يستجيب	response	استجابة	responsive	متجاوب
soap	يغسل بالصابون	soap	صابون	soapy	صابونى
soil	يلطخ/يلوث/يوسخ	soil	التربة الزراعية	soiled	متسخ

- Driving at a high speed endangers people's lives.
- People's lives are in danger if they drive too fast.
- Driving at a high speed is very dangerous.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
available	متاح	feasible/obtainable	unavailable/occupied	غير متاح
avoid	يتجنب	evade/avert	face/support	يواجه/يدعم
bottom	قاع	base/basement	top/summit/peak	قمة
change	يغير	alter/modify	remain/keep	يظل/يبقى
danger	خطر	hazard/insecurity	safety/security	أمان
easily	بسهولة	simply/smoothly	difficultly/hard	بصعوبة
follow	يتبع	pursue/chase	precede/go before	يسبق
interpret	يفسر	clarify/define	confuse/mix up	يربك
leave	يغادر	depart/abandon	arrive/reach	يصل
messy	فوضوى	untidy/disorderly	tidy/ordered/organised	مرتب
respond	يستجيب	reply/answer/react	ignore/request	يتجاهل/يطلب

Let's check our memory!

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The fire department responded .... the call within minutes.
a) for b) at c) to d) from

2 A lot of rare animals are ...., so we must try to keep them.
a) dangerous b) dangers
c) endanger d) endangered

3 Don't shout .... the little child; he might get scared.
a) for b) at c) of d) with

4 The doctor tells him some .... till he recuperates يتعافى من المرض.
a) dos and don'ts b) pros and cons
c) merits and demerits d) ins and outs

5 We get together .... as we can. That's because we are always busy.
a) more often b) as often
c) less often d) as long

6 When my parents returned home, everything in the house was messy. The opposite of "messy" is ....
a) organised b) untidy
c) disorderly d) terrible

7 To help other people, all of us must learn to .... CPR.
a) carry b) make c) give d) perform

8 The new book will be available for people to buy soon. The synonym of "available" is "..............".
a) unavailable b) obtainable
c) occupied d) avoidable

9 Ali has worked as an .... for many years.
a) interpret b) interpreter
c) interpretation d) interpretive

10 Most young people need a contact .... the old and wise people in the society.
a) no word b) with c) by d) to

Reading Text

Hygiene at home: Seven DOs and DON'Ts for a healthy life





1. Take your shoes off

The bottoms of your shoes can carry a lot of bacteria into your house. You should always take your shoes off at the door.

2. No more dust[1]

Dust quickly comes back again after you've cleaned. However, dust can make it difficult to breathe and it can cause[2] skin problems. You should clean your house or flat as often as you can.

3. Wash the kitchen floor

Food and drinks can easily fall[3] on the kitchen floor. You should clean your kitchen floor at least[4] once a week. You should use warm[5], soapy water so you can remove[6] all the bacteria.

4. Change your bedding

We spend a lot of our time asleep in bed. You should change your bedding[7] at least once every two weeks so bacteria can't live in it.

5. Wash your hands after spending time with your pets[8]

Research has shown that contact[9] with pets early in life can protect you against allergies[10]. But animals can also carry bacteria. If you touch your pet, you shouldn't touch anything else until you've washed your hands.

6. Stay clean in the garden

You should wear gloves[11] if you're going to touch soil in the garden because it can contain bacteria. You should wash your hands when you've finished gardening, too.

(1) غبار
(2) يسبب
(3) يسقط
(4) على الأقل
(5) دافئ
(6) يزيل
(7) أغطية الفراش
(8) حيوانات أليفة
(9) اتصال
(10) حساسية
(11) قفازات

7. Don't forget to keep your bins clean

A lot of bacteria can grow[12] in your bin[13]. You shouldn't leave your bin open.

Hygiene rules around the world

In the UK, you must put your food waste[14] in a separate[15] bin.

In Thailand, you must take your shoes off before going into someone's house.

In the USA, you should offer[16] to help clean up after dinner at a friend's house.

(12) ينمو
(13) سلة مهملات
(14) بقايا الطعام
(15) منفصل
(16) يعرض

Listening Text





(1) يستلقي
(2) فوراً
(3) يتحقق من
(4) مخاطر
(5) الكابلات الكهربائية
(6) عملية التنفس

Nurse: Today, I'm going to tell you what to do if you find a person who is lying[1] on the ground and not moving. Call the emergency services immediately[2]. Then you must check[3] if there are any dangers[4] near to the person, like electrical cables[5]. If there are any dangers, move the person away from them. When you know they're safe, shout 'Hello!' or 'Wake up!' and see if the person responds. If the person doesn't respond to you, put your face next to their face so you can check their breathing[6]. If the person isn't breathing, the emergency services will tell you how to do CPR so you can help the person start to breathe again.

Workbook Text

Most people like to keep their homes clean, but there are many places that we don't think about and so they become full of dirt[1] and bacteria.

Research shows that the deep cuts in chopping boards[2] are often a home for bacteria because people don't clean them properly[3]. Bacteria often move around our homes when we touch things, so phones, tablets and computer keyboards often have a lot of bacteria on them, too. However, bacteria really love warm, wet places and so your kitchen sponge[4] probably has more bacteria than anything else in your home.

Experts[5] say that it's most important to wash our hands regularly. If we touch animals, we should wash our hands, and we need to use a tissue[6] when we sneeze to stop the bacteria spreading[7] in the air. They suggest using plastic chopping boards and giving them an extra clean once a week. We should replace[8] kitchen sponges every two weeks, and we can buy special cleaners for phones, tablets and computers.

(1) قذارة
(2) أنواع التقطيع
(3) بصورة صحيحة
(4) قطعة إسفنج
(5) خبراء
(6) منديل ورقى
(7) انتشار
(8) يستبدل

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1

take ... off		يمكن استخدام (take ... off) بمعان كثيرة مثل:
	- يخلع (ملابس)	He took off his wet coat and sat by the fire.
	- تقلع (للطائرات)	The plane took off an hour late.
	- يترك (مكانًا بسرعة)	When he saw me coming, he took off in the opposite direction.
	- ينجح (بسرعة/بشكل مفاجئ)	- The new magazine has really taken off. - Her singing career took off after her TV interview.
	- يقلد (شخصًا)	Ali can take off his father to perfection.

2

wear	يرتدى (شكل الملابس كاملًا على الشخص)	We wear light clothes in summer.
put on	تصف عملية الارتداء و من الممكن أن تأتى كفعل أمر	- While putting on my clothes, the phone rang. - Put on your shoes. We are late for school.

3

contain	يحتوى على (بداخله)	This drink doesn't contain any sugar.
include	يشتمل على/يتضمن	Does the price of this service include tax?
consist of	يتكون من	My house consists of four rooms, a hall, a kitchen and a bathroom.

4

soil	تربة زراعية	This kind of vegetables needs muddy soil to grow well.
earth	الكرة الأرضية/تراب	- Earth is not flat as most people believed in the past. - The dog slept in the earth and got dirty.
ground	هى السطح الصلب للأرض – أرض الشارع والطريق التى نسير عليها	On my way to school, I dropped my bag on the ground.
land	اليابسة/البر (عكس البحر)	Earth consists of water and land.
floor	طابق فى بناية/أرضية الحجرة	- My brother lives on the 15th floor of this building. - The floor of my room needs to be cleaned.

5

spend (time) + (v-ing)	يقضى وقتا فى فعل شىء	Mona spends all her free time painting.
spend (time) with + (somebody)	يقضى وقتا مع (شخص)	I want to spend more time with my family.
spend (time) in/at	يقضى وقتا فى (مكان)	We'll have to spend the night in a hotel.
spend money on	ينفق مالًا على	Don't spend too much money on unimportant things.

6

regularly	بانتظام	He should take the medicine regularly to become better.
gradually	تدريجيًا	After taking the medicine, his health is improving gradually.

7	**hygiene** نظافة شخصية	Brushing your teeth is a part of your hygiene.
	sanitation النظافة العامة	Good sanitation is important for the environment.
8	**skin** بشرة الإنسان أو الحيوان/القشرة الخارجية	There are some red blotches on my skin; I must see a doctor.
	leather جلد (مدبوغ) جلد حيوان يتم معالجته لاستخدامه في الصناعة	My wallet is made of high quality leather.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 To keep healthy, we should avoid foods which .... a lot of fat.
a) consist b) conclude
c) enclose d) contain

2 I can't use these cosmetics مستحضرات تجميل as my .... is quite sensitive.
a) leather b) skin
c) heart d) kidney

3 I saw the woman who sat on the .... of the street asking people for money.
a) ground b) land
c) floor d) soil

4 Galal bought such a fantastic pair of shoes made of ....
a) leather b) skin
c) wood d) steel

5 I was taking .... my shoes when the phone rang.
a) from b) of
c) off d) up

Practice



Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Make sure you put your rubbish in the ...., and don't leave it open.
a) ground b) dust c) soil d) bin

2 We should do some .... about the topic using the internet.
a) research b) first aid c) burnings d) bandage

3 The man was saved as he was given .... at the scene of the accident.
a) infection b) allergy c) hygiene d) first aid

4 Lifeguards should be trained to deal with ....
a) beddings b) neighbours c) gardening d) emergencies

5 Some plants and herbs اعشاب grow better in dry ....
a) soil b) floor c) dust d) flour

6 I'm so sorry; I've .... the camera by mistake. *(Longman)*
a) feared b) filled c) fallen d) dropped

7 When his breathing stopped, I did him CPR to make him .... again.
a) breath b) breathing c) breathe d) breeze

8 You should use a .... when you sneeze in order not to spread viruses.
a) bedding b) tissue c) sponge d) toilet

9 Mothers must change the .... of their children's bed every week.
a) carpet b) leaflet c) board d) bedding

10 We must cover food well to stop .... from getting to it.
a) blood b) bacteria c) beans d) dangers

11 Most people begin to .... when they smell spices.
a) smile b) breathe c) carry d) sneeze

12 The teacher told us that tomatoes .... best in direct sunlight.
a) grow b) agree c) plant d) respond

13 Many skin diseases can be prevented by following good personal ....
a) allergy b) hygiene c) clearance d) blog

14 We managed to .... first aid to save the two people who were seriously injured. *(Longman)*
a) notice b) do c) make d) take

15 She is .... well to the new treatment. She may be better in two days.
a) replying b) agreeing c) responding d) answering

16 It is known that smoking can seriously damage your .... and cause death.
a) health b) work c) relationship d) research

17 Our youth should .... untrusted websites. This is my advice.
a) agree b) contain c) avoid d) follow

18 This food is home-cooked, and it contains fresh ....
a) solutions b) ingredients c) parts d) components
19 While I was carrying a ladder, it hit an overhead علوى electrical .... I was about to die.
a) cable b) car c) clouds d) plane
20 My daughter coughs hard when approaching pets at home. I think she has a/an .... to animals.
a) response b) impact c) allergy d) reply
21 The businessman tried to .... his career problems completely from his family life. (Longman)
a) join b) separate c) find d) link
22 You should .... on gloves while repairing your car to keep your hands clean.
a) dress b) move c) wear d) put
23 When I entered the room after a long time, I began to blow the .... off the books.
a) mist b) dust c) soil d) earth
24 It is advisable to do your own thing. Don't just .... the crowds.
a) fellow b) follow c) ignore d) grow
25 People strive يكافح to meet their .... needs because prices are getting higher all over the world. (Longman)
a) base b) basic c) basis d) basics
26 Do you think this chemical will .... the stain بقعة on my jacket? (Longman)
a) check b) prove c) shake d) remove

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

27 The colour that I wanted was available in another branch. The synonyms of the word "available" are ....
a) feasible b) unavailable c) obtainable d) occupied e) visible
28 My mother always shouts at me because I leave my bedroom .... before going to school.
a) clean b) tidy c) untidy d) in order e) messy
29 Healthy people should avoid eating fast food. The synonyms of the word "avoid" are ....
a) avert b) face c) confuse d) evade e) alter
30 Before leaving the train, make sure you have all your belongings with you. The antonyms of the word "leaving" are ....
a) reaching b) arriving c) departing d) abandoning e) clarifying
31 The reporter asked the interviewee to interpret his words. The synonyms of the word "interpret" are ....
a) clarify b) confuse c) show d) understand e) define

B Language

(should/shouldn't) (must/mustn't)

1 (should = ought to) + inf./(shouldn't = oughtn't to) + inf.

USAGE الاستخدام

1 **To give and ask for advice:** لإعطاء أو طلب النصيحة:
- You should/ought to wash your hands after you touch animals.
- You shouldn't/ oughtn't to sleep late. It is bad for you.
- What should I do to join the Faculty of Medicine?

2 **For suggestion:** للاقتراح:
- You should travel by train. It is much safer.

3 **To give an opinion:** لإعطاء الرأى:
- Mona should follow a diet. This will help her to lose weight.

Important Notes

should/shouldn't بدائل

should	shouldn't
had better + inf. My students had better study hard.	**had better not + inf.** You had better not walk alone in uninhabited places.
I advise ... to ... I advise my students to study hard.	**I advise ... not to ...** I advise you not to walk alone in uninhabited places.
It is advisable ... to ... It is advisable for my students to study hard.	**It is inadvisable to ...** It is inadvisable to walk alone in uninhabited places.
If I were you, I would ... If I were you, I would study hard.	**If I were you, I wouldn't ...** If I were you, I wouldn't walk alone in uninhabited places.

It is important to ... ▸ It is important to study hard.	**It is important not to ...** ▸ It is important not to walk alone in uninhabited places.
It would be a good idea to ... ▸ It would be a good idea to study hard.	**It wouldn't be a good idea to ...** ▸ It wouldn't be a good idea to walk alone in uninhabited places.

2 must/ mustn't + inf.

MUST

1 **Rules and laws:** القوانين والقواعد العامة:
- All drivers must have a valid licence.
- Students must be silent during the written exam.

2 **Necessity:** الضرورة:
- You must study hard. (It is necessary to study hard.)
- Plants must get enough light and water to grow properly.

3 **Strong advice:** نصيحة قوية:
- You must stop smoking to keep healthy.
- You must check the engine before driving.

4 **Warm invitations:** دعوات حارة:
- You must come to my birthday party. It will be tomorrow.
- You must have lunch with us. I will wait for you.



5 **Strong feelings:** المشاعر القوية:
- I must buy a present for my mother's birthday.
- We must phone Noha to ask about her mother as she is ill.

Extra Points

must بدائل

must + inf. You must get up early.	It is a necessity to + inf.	▸ It is a necessity to get up early.
	It is a must + to + inf.	▸ It is a must to get up early.
	It is necessary to + inf.	▸ It is necessary to get up early.
	Object (am – is – are) obliged to + inf.	▸ Ali is obliged to get up early.

What is the difference between must & have to?

must → إلزام ومشاعر داخلية من المتكلم
- I must study my lessons to get high marks.
- I must train well to win the match.

have to → إلزام خارجي مفروض على الشخص في موقف معين
- I have to work from 8:30 to 5:30 every day.
- You have to wear the school uniform when going to your school.

- لاحظ الفرق بينهم في السؤال:

Must + subject + inf. + ...?	▸ Must I turn right here?
Do/Does + subject + have to + inf. + ...?	▸ Do you have to wear a tie?
Wh- word + must + subject + inf. + ...?	▸ What must I do to avoid traffic jams?
Wh- word + do/does + subject + have to + inf. + ...?	▸ What does he have to do to avoid traffic jams?

- يستخدم التركيب التالي للتعبير عن الضرورة:

Subject + v. to be + to + inf. + ...

- Nada is to cook the food early.

MUSTN'T

للتعبير عن التحريم (شيء خطير أو ضد القانون).

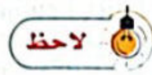
1
- You mustn't park your car here. It is not allowed.
- You mustn't smoke in petrol stations. It is against law.

للتعبير عن النصيحة القوية.

2
- You mustn't stay up late as it is bad for your health.
- You mustn't waste your time in vain.

mustn't	بدائل

mustn't + inf. You mustn't smoke in hospitals.	It is (forbidden/banned/prohibited/illegal) to + inf.	It is (forbidden/banned/prohibited/illegal) to smoke in hospitals.
	It is not permitted to + inf.	It is not permitted to smoke in hospitals.
	Subject + (am – is – are) not allowed/permitted to + inf.	You are not allowed/permitted to smoke in hospitals.
	Subject + (am – is – are) (banned/prohibited/forbidden) from + v-ing	You are (banned/prohibited/forbidden) from smoking in hospitals.



من الممكن استخدام .can't + inf بدلًا من .mustn't + inf للتعبير عن المنع.

- You can't smoke in hospitals.

Practice



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This film is fantastic. You .... watch it. I only advise you.
   a) have to b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) should
2. You .... try this cake. It is really delicious.
   a) needn't b) mustn't c) must d) suggest
3. The bus is about to leave. We .... hurry to catch it.
   a) must b) mustn't c) may d) needn't
4. Students .... forget their teacher's instructions, or they will be punished.
   a) oughtn't b) mustn't c) don't have to d) should
5. Merna's sight is not good. She .... wear glasses for reading. It is my advice.
   a) needs b) ought c) ought to d) shouldn't
6. I advise you .... unhealthy food. *(Longman)*
   a) not eat b) to not eat c) not to eat d) don't eat
7. You .... keep away from uncovered electric wires or you will be electrocuted. *(Longman)*
   a) ought not b) mustn't c) ought d) must
8. It would be a good idea to go to the cinema together, so we .... do that.
   a) must b) mightn't c) should d) mustn't
9. You .... wash your hands before and after meals.
   a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) must d) might
10. You .... talk to your parents kindly. It is polite to do so.
    a) mustn't b) needn't c) must d) may
11. Oh! It is midnight, I .... go now, or I will not find any means of transport.
    a) should b) need c) must d) mustn't
12. This shirt is very tight, you .... to try another one.
    a) should b) must c) ought d) are banned
13. You .... play chess. You will enjoy it very much.
    a) must to b) can't c) should d) need to
14. You .... drink from the same glass as he is an infected person.
    a) oughtn't b) mustn't c) should d) have to
15. Your paragraph must .... to correct your mistakes. *(Longman)*
    a) to be rewritten b) be rewriting c) rewrite d) be rewritten
16. It's said here in the law book, "Cars .... have an inspection every three years before the registration can be renewed."
    a) must b) needn't c) have to d) need to
17. You .... go to bed early to be in good health. *(Longman)*
    a) would like b) would prefer c) prefer d) had better

18 Do you .... wear those shoes to work? Are they part of the dress code?
a) should b) must c) have to d) could

19 I .... arrive at school on time. It is a rule.
a) should b) am allowed to c) mustn't d) have to

20 I .... write to my brother. I haven't written to him for along.
a) have to b) must c) mustn't d) shouldn't

21 The baby is asleep and I want to do the housework. You .... shout.
a) should b) must c) needn't d) mustn't

22 You .... drive fast in the city centre. It is really dangerous.
a) must b) don't have to c) are inadvisable to d) mustn't

23 You .... to wear your shoes inside the mosque as it is prohibited.
a) needn't b) are not allowed c) shouldn't d) hadn't better

24 You .... walk off when the teacher is speaking to you. It is impolite.
a) should b) are prohibited c) had better d) mustn't

25 You .... have the car inspected next week. The registration expires soon.
a) needn't b) had to c) have to d) need

26 This site is very dangerous to kids, they .... be here.
a) must b) mustn't c) should d) ought to

27 Does my son .... take this medicine, doctor?
a) has to b) must c) have to d) should

28 We .... buy some presents for our friends at the end of the school year.
a) have to b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) must

29 It is .... to sleep early and get up early to have good health.
a) allowed b) advisable c) forbidden d) banned

30 It is compulsory إجباري to follow school rules. It is .... to do this. *(Longman)*
a) unimportant b) inadvisable c) necessary d) forbidden

31 No one .... to smoke in public places. It is forbidden.
a) isn't allowed b) is allowed c) is banned d) are allowed

32 It is a/an .... to sleep early to be able to get up early.
a) prohibition b) advice c) necessity d) necessary

33 You mustn't eat too much sugar. This is ....
a) an obligation b) a suggestion c) strong advice d) a rule

34 You mustn't park your car here. This means that ....
a) you are allowed to park here b) you have to park here
c) parking is banned here d) you are free to park here

35 It is forbidden to leave school early without permission. This means that ....
a) you mustn't leave school early without permission
b) you shouldn't leave school early without permission
c) you should have left school early without permission
d) it is permitted to leave school early without permission

Test yourself



Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 All the furniture was covered in .... when we returned from abroad after such a long time.
a) dust b) blood c) tissue d) soil

2 I live on the last .... of a large block of flats. It is very hot during the day.
a) earth b) ground c) land d) floor

3 I could help the injured man because I had learnt a lot about ....
a) hospitality b) first aid c) hygiene d) danger

4 The patient's name was .... on the waiting list for the operation.
a) included b) consisted c) contained d) concluded

5 He is a/an .... engineer and can help you with your problem.
a) medical b) electrical c) allergic d) plumber

6 One of my daughters has a/an .... to cow's milk. Her face gets red once she drinks it.
a) emergency b) health c) allergy d) sense

7 He inhaled استنشق the smoke and couldn't stop ....
a) laughing b) coughing c) sniffing d) spreading

8 You should always wash in summer; at .... once a day.
a) last b) almost c) list d) least

9 Pets can .... certain bacteria, viruses, and fungi فطريات that can cause illness if transmitted to humans.
a) make b) carry c) invent d) discover

10 To prevent .... bacteria in the air, all of us should use tissues when sneezing or coughing.
a) publishing b) spreading c) removing d) spraying

11 The teacher .... deeply before speaking again. It was clear that he was very angry.
a) breathed b) smiled c) looked d) sneezed

12 There are no carpets, so you don't have to .... your shoes.
a) take off b) get on c) put out d) put away

13 It is a good thing to put food waste in a .... bin away from other waste.
a) same b) separate c) detached d) polluted

14 I want to spend more time .... my family. I love them very much.
a) by b) to c) in d) with

15 You should wash your hands with .... water after playing in the dust.
a) soup b) soap c) soapy d) dusty

Language

16 When you come to Cairo again, you .... come and see us.
a) should b) must c) has to d) ought

17 I have just told Radwa that she .... go out as it is raining.
a) had better b) had better not
c) had better not to d) not had better

18 You .... drive very carefully near schools as there are a lot of children.
a) must b) are advisable c) shouldn't d) mustn't

19 To get a high mark in the exam, you .... to revise regularly.
a) should b) had better c) must d) ought

20 Businessmen .... pay their taxes every year as it is the country's law.
a) has to b) don't have to c) must d) should

21 I think you .... do more exercise to keep fit.
a) ought b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't

22 The sign says, "No smoking!". This means you .... smoke.
a) should b) can c) mustn't d) shouldn't

23 What .... I do if I have a difficult problem? Really, I need your advice.
a) might b) should c) ought d) mustn't

24 If you are not well, you .... ask Yousra to do the housework instead.
a) mustn't b) ought c) had better d) would better

25 We .... forget that we have an important meeting tomorrow.
a) aren't allowed b) shouldn't c) don't have to d) mustn't

26 Hend .... be at home before 10 p.m. or her mother will punish her.
a) should b) have to c) must d) is forbidden to

27 It is really a good film. You .... go and see it with your family.
a) need b) should c) better d) ought

28 When you go to Egypt, you .... visit the Pyramids. They are fantastic!
a) needn't b) must c) have d) need to

29 Menna and Marwan .... be home by eight. That's a family rule.
a) has to b) can c) have to d) could

30 The deadline for university applications is next week. I .... finish my papers as soon as possible.
a) needn't b) must c) have to d) need to



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

blanket (n)*	بطانية	immediately (adv)	في الحال
burn (n) (v)	حرق/يحرق	wrap (v) – ped	يلف/يغلف
evacuate (v) – d	يخلي (مكانًا)		

The blanket is too light, I still feel cold.

Vocabulary on Reading Texts

back (n)	ظهر	happen (v) – ed	يحدث
complain (v) – ed	يشكو	hurt (v)	يؤلم
cut (v) (n)	يجرح/جرح (صغير)	injured (adj)	مصاب
damage (n)	تلف	offer (v) – ed	يعرض/يقدم عرضا
fire (n)	حريق	remember (v) – ed	يتذكر

Workbook Vocabulary

apologise (v) – d	يعتذر	helmet (n)	خوذة
argument (n)	جدال	plaster (n)	لاصق طبي/ضمادة
beach (n)	شاطئ (بلاج)	realise (v) – d	يدرك
borrow (v) – ed	يستلف	serious (adj)	خطير/جاد
explain (v) – ed	يشرح	smell (n)	رائحة

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. During fires, buildings should be .... to save people from dangers.
   a) evacuated b) burnt c) wrapped d) damaged
2. I must .... for cancelling the meeting as the manager is very ill.
   a) remember b) apologise c) realise d) explain
3. We should put a .... on the cut so that it doesn't get infected.
   a) helmet b) plaster c) poster d) post
4. My brother always .... about how bad he's treated at work.
   a) evacuates b) learns c) agrees d) complains
5. In summer, we do not need ...., as the weather is hot.
   a) fans b) blankets c) clothes d) water
6. My neighbour .... to buy my old bike for L.E. 500.
   a) presented b) forgot c) offered d) followed
7. In accidents, the injured person should be .... up in a blanket to keep them warm.
   a) given b) evacuated c) cleaned d) wrapped
8. My friend .... his back while playing football last week.
   a) burnt b) complained c) hurt d) got
9. Can you .... what the poem means?
   a) wrap b) grow c) evacuate d) explain
10. When the telephone rang, my daughter answered it ....
   a) lately b) differently c) immediately d) once

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

ask for advice	يطلب النصيحة	make/commit a mistake	يخطئ
at the weekend	فى نهاية الأسبوع	make sure	يتأكد
get angry	يغضب	put pressure on	يضغط على
have an argument with	لديه جدال مع	receive advice	يتلقى نصيحة
have problems	لديه مشكلات	stay calm	يبقى هادئا
come up	يحدث قريبا	take action	يتخذ إجراء
complain about	يشكو بشأن	on fire	محترق
decide on	يقرر بشأن	put ... on	يضع ... على
get to	يصل إلى	sorry for	يأسف على
help with	يساعد فى		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
apologise*	يعتذر	apology	اعتذار	apologetic	اعتذارى/تبريرى
argue	يجادل	argument	جدال	argumentative	جدلى
burn	يحرق	burn burner	حرق موقد	burning	مشتعل/شديد الحرارة
complain	يشكو	complaint	شكوى	------------------	
evacuate	يخلى (مكانا)	evacuation evacuee	إخلاء مُرحَّل	evacuative	إخلائى
explain	يشرح	explanation	شرح	explanatory	تفسيرى
injure	يصيب	injury	إصابة	injured	مصاب

- You should apologise for repeating the mistake.
- I accept your apology, but don't repeat this mistake.
- Your apologetic words are enough for me.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
argument	جدال	disagreement/debate	agreement/harmony	اتفاق / انسجام
evacuate	يخلى (مكان)	abandon/empty	remain/stay	يظل
immediately	فى الحال	at once/instantly	later/eventually	فيما بعد
realise	يدرك	understand/grasp	misunderstand/confuse	يسىء الفهم
serious	خطير	dangerous/hazardous	safe/secure	غير خطير
wrap	يلف	cover/enclose	uncover/reveal	يكشف

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All the neighbours complained .... the noise during the party.
   a) from b) to c) about d) by
2. We must help anyone immediately after they ask us for help. The synonym of "immediately" is "..............".
   a) later b) at once c) eventually d) latter
3. Egypt faces a lot of serious problems that we must unite to solve them. The antonym of "serious" is "..............".
   a) secure b) dangerous c) hazardous d) empty
4. There are .... notes at the end of each chapter.
   a) explain b) explanation c) explainer d) explanatory
5. I always .... angry when my students make mistakes.
   a) put b) make c) get d) come
6. The government found that the .... of people from the area near the volcano is necessary.
   a) evacuate b) evacuation c) evacuated d) evacuates
7. My brother .... a mistake and called the wrong number.
   a) did b) got c) had d) made
8. We called the firefighters immediately as the house was .... fire.
   a) in b) on c) at d) for

Reading Text

To : (name)
Subject : Advice

Dear ....,

How are you? I'm well, but I'm writing to ask for some advice. Do you remember my neighbour, Mrs Zeinab? She had an accident[1] last year and now she doesn't go out[2] much. It isn't easy for her to clean. I went to her flat[3] yesterday and the bins were full. The floor and kitchen were dirty, too. She complained[4] about her back hurting[5] and I think she needs help, but I have a lot of exams coming up[6]. What do you think I should do?

I hope you can help me.

Best wishes,

....

(1) حادث
(2) يخرج
(3) شقة
(4) يشتكي
(5) ألم /إصابة
(6) يحدث قريبًا

Workbook Text

To : Amir
Subject : Help!

Hi Amir,

How are you? I hope you had a good weekend at the beach. Samy told me about the argument[1] you had with Hany. I think it would be a good idea to say that you are sorry for getting angry. Stay calm and explain[2] that he should ask you before he borrows[3] your things. I'm sure he will realise that he made a mistake[4] and he will say sorry too. Why don't you talk to him tomorrow? I suggest talking to him in the morning because he is usually busy on Sunday afternoons.

Now I hope you can help me with my problem. Do you remember that I was planning to clean my house at the weekend? Well, I was busy and I forgot[5] about it! The problem is that my parents are coming home tomorrow and the house is really dirty. There's dust everywhere and there's a strange smell[6] in the kitchen! What should I do? Help!

Regards,

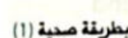
Maher

(1) جدال
(2) يشرح
(3) يستعير
(4) ارتكب خطأ
(5) نسيت
(6) رائحة

Video Script

We need food to live, but if our food isn't prepared hygienically[1], we can have some serious[2] health problems. That's the reason why food hygiene is very important, both in restaurants and shops, and at home.

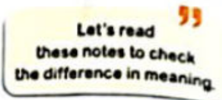
Before you start cooking, you must wash your hands, so that there are no bacteria on them. If you have long hair, you should tie it up so no hairs[3] will go into the food you're cooking. After that, you can take your ingredients[4], knives[5] and other equipment and start preparing the food. You must wash fruit and vegetables first. You mustn't touch the metal part of the knife while you're using it.



(1) بطريقة صحية
(2) جاد/خطير
(3) شعرات
(4) مكونات
(5) سكاكين

0:00





1	realise يدرك	I suddenly realised that the boy was crying.
	recognise يتعرف على	I hadn't seen her for ten years, but I recognised her immediately.
2	complain that + subject + verb + ... يشكو لن	She complained that no one had been at the airport to meet her.
	complain of/ about يشكو من	- Nora has been complaining of severe headaches. - She complains about not feeling appreciated at work.
	complain to يشكو إلى	Neighbours complained to the police about the dogs barking.
3	evacuate from يخلى ... من	The government evacuated the families from the old house.
	evacuate to يخلى ... إلى	The government evacuated the families to new houses.
4	borrow يستلف/يستعير borrow .. (شىء) .. from .. (شخص) borrow .. (شىء)	- Can I borrow your book, please? - I want to borrow a laptop from Amr because I need to study.
	lend يسلف/يعير lend .. (شىء) .. to .. (شخص) lend .. (شىء (شخص)	- I will lend my laptop to Ahmed because he wants to study. - Can you lend me your book, please?

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The moment I saw her, I .... that she was very angry.
a) recognised b) complained c) accompanied d) realised

2 As a result of the earthquake, a lot of people were evacuated .... their houses.
a) from b) to c) in d) by

3 During the war, he was evacuated .... Scotland to live there.
a) from b) with c) to d) at

4 I .... him as soon as he came into the room.
a) recognised b) failed c) made d) realised

5 I want to .... my friend some money to solve his problem.
a) borrow from b) lend c) borrow d) lend to





Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It's cold tonight. I need another .... to feel warm, please.
a) blanket b) bedding c) cleaner d) curtain

2 Can you .... something burning in the kitchen?
a) borrow b) touch c) train d) smell

3 His .... leg prevented him from playing the final match.
a) serious b) healthy c) injured d) separated

4 It took the teacher a while to .... that two of his students were absent.
a) understand b) recognise c) complain d) realise

5 Our teacher gave us some .... on how to prepare for the exam.
a) mistakes b) actions c) arguments d) advice

6 The secretary will .... how to use this new system as I don't know how to use it.
a) complain b) explain c) tell d) borrow

7 After the fire, my neighbour was taken to hospital with serious ....
a) compliments b) burns c) borders d) dots

8 He was sorry .... making such a mistake.
a) to b) with c) at d) for

9 It is known that exams put .... on both students and teachers.
a) treasure b) measure c) pressure d) pleasure

10 A lot of guests .... about the bad room service in the hotel. (Longman)
a) thanked b) complained c) corrected d) planned

11 I can't play football this week because I've .... my foot.
a) moved b) wrapped c) hurt d) replaced

12 He spent the evening .... the presents for the party.
a) wrapping b) burning c) evacuating d) taking

13 I think you should .... to your brother for damaging his tablet.
a) complain b) apologise c) realise d) show

14 We had a/an .... with the waiter about the bill. They added more taxes.
a) agreement b) statement c) approval d) argument

15 My friends describe me as a .... man because I don't like jokes.
a) serious b) kind c) funny d) humorous

16 It is very risky to ride your bike without wearing a ....
a) helmet b) blanket c) complaint d) plaster

17 After the accident, he suffered .... and bruises كدمات.
a) cuts b) fires c) arguments d) pandemics

18 Can I .... your digital camera for two days, please? (Longman)
a) borrow b) lend c) owe d) think

19 Civilians المدنيين were .... from the city to escape the dangers of war.
a) evacuated b) left c) stayed d) kept
20 My wife went to hospital complaining .... chest pains.
a) to b) off c) of d) with
21 They have to leave .... to catch the train to Alexandria.
a) gradually b) regularly c) immediately d) presently
22 My father was so ill and doctors said that his condition was ....
a) serious b) injured c) burning d) apologetic
23 I have to make a/an .... for you. I'm afraid as I lost your book you gave me.
a) apologise b) apology c) complaint d) argument
24 My father always puts his coffee .... the table and forgets to drink it.
a) at b) in c) on d) up
25 It is advisable for students to .... calm in the exam room.
a) take b) stay c) come d) make
26 He always helps his wife .... the housework. He is very kind.
a) at b) with c) from d) of
27 .... the chicken in foil and cook it for two hours.
a) Cut b) Evacuate c) Wrap d) Burn

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

28 When I told my father that I got low marks, he .... very angry.
a) fell b) got c) gave d) did e) became
29 The government should find a solution to the serious problem of unemployment. The antonyms of the word "serious" are ....
a) hazardous b) safe c) dangerous d) secure e) empty
30 My dad doesn't get into any arguments. The synonyms of the word "argument" are ....
a) contract b) disagreement c) agreement d) debate e) harmony
31 Because of the tumbledown building العقار المتهالك, the police gave the order to .... the area.
a) remain b) uncover c) understand d) evacuate e) empty
32 The present was beautifully .... in gold paper.
a) remained b) evacuated c) wrapped d) confused e) covered
33 Students always complain .... the quantity of homework they have.
a) at b) of c) that d) about e) to
34 Don't worry; I will bring you the medicine immediately. "Immediately" is similar in meaning to ".........." *(Longman)*
a) at first b) at once c) later d) slowly e) instantly
35 You've .... a bad mistake, Peter. *(Longman)*
a) done b) committed c) thought d) made e) remembered

B Language

1 Necessity الضرورة

Present المضارع

It is necessary for ... to + inf.
- It is necessary for you to wear a helmet.

has/have (got) to + inf.
- You have (got) to wear a helmet when you drive a motorbike.

need(s) to + inf.
- You need to wear a helmet when you drive a motorbike.

Past الماضي

It was necessary for ... to + inf.
- It was necessary for them to leave early.

had to + inf.
- They had to leave early in order not to miss the train.

Future المستقبل

It will be necessary for ... + to + inf.
- It will be necessary for you to show your passport.

will have to + inf.
- You will have to show your passport to the officer at the airport.

2 Lack of Necessity غياب الضرورة

Present المضارع

It isn't necessary for ... to + inf.
- She isn't late for school, so it isn't necessary for her to hurry.

(don't/doesn't) have to + inf.
- She isn't late for school, so she doesn't have to hurry.

(don't/doesn't) need to + inf.
- She isn't late for school, so she doesn't need to hurry.

needn't + inf.
- She isn't late for school, so she needn't hurry.

Past الماضي

It wasn't necessary for ... to + inf.
- It wasn't necessary for him to buy a new mobile.

didn't have to + inf. لم يكن مضطرًا ولم يقُم بالفعل
- He didn't have to buy a new mobile.
(He didn't buy a new mobile).

needn't have + P.P. لم يكن مضطرًا وقام بالفعل
- He needn't have bought a new mobile.
(He bought a new mobile).

didn't need to + inf. لم يكن مضطرًا والفعل قد يكون تم أو لا
- He didn't need to buy a new mobile.
(He might or mightn't buy a new mobile).

Future المستقبل

It won't be necessary for ... to + inf.
- It won't be necessary for Ali to attend the party next week.

won't have to + inf.
- Ali won't have to attend the party next week.

won't need to + inf.
- Ali won't need to attend the party next week.

Regret & Blaming النَدم واللوم



should/ought to have + P.P. كان ينبغي القيام بالفعل ولم يتم
- You should have studied your lessons hard.

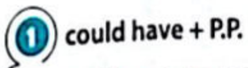
It was wrong of ... (not) to + inf.
- It was wrong of you not to study your lessons hard.



shouldn't have + P.P. لم يكن ينبغي القيام بالفعل ولكنه تم
- You shouldn't have wasted your time.

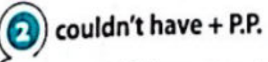
It was wrong of ... to + inf.
- It was wrong of you to waste your time.

Extra Points



Past Possibility

1 could have + P.P. للتعبير عن حدث كان بالمقدور فعله ولكن لم يحدث.
- I could have taken the bus, but I preferred to take a taxi.
- You could have gone out last night; you got lazy and sat lonely.



Past Impossibility

2 couldn't have + P.P. للتعبير عن حدث كان من المستحيل حدوثه ولم يحدث.
- He couldn't have attended the wedding party. He died many years ago.
- She couldn't have stolen the money. She was abroad at the time of the robbery.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is enough petrol in your car, you .... go to the petrol station.
   a) don't need b) have to
   c) mustn't d) don't have to
2. You have got the needed amount of money. You .... get a loan قرض.
   a) should b) must
   c) needn't d) doesn't have to
3. When we were children, we didn't have emails, so we .... write letters.
   a) had to b) must
   c) have to d) has to
4. It is a national holiday tomorrow, so I .... to school.
   a) needn't have gone b) won't have to go
   c) mustn't have gone d) must have gone
5. They didn't win the match. They .... well and hard to win.
   a) must have trained b) needn't have trained
   c) ought train d) should have trained

Language Summary

Must



Necessity | Warm invitations

Strong feelings | Rules & laws

Strong advice

▶ You must have a ticket to enter the theatre.

Should



Advice | Suggestion

Opinion

▶ You should study to be clever.

Necessity



- ▶ It is necessary for
- ▶ has/have (got) to + inf.
- ▶ need(s) to + inf.



- ▶ It was necessary for
- ▶ had to + inf.



- ▶ It will be necessary for
- ▶ will have to + inf.

Lack of necessity



- ▶ It isn't necessary for
- ▶ (don't/doesn't) need to + inf.
- ▶ needn't + inf.
- ▶ (don't/doesn't) have to + inf.



- ▶ It wasn't necessary for
- ▶ didn't have to + inf.
- ▶ needn't have + P.P.
- ▶ didn't need to + inf.



- ▶ It won't be necessary for
- ▶ won't have to + inf.
- ▶ won't need to + inf.

Regret & Blame

- ▶ should/ought to have + P.P.
- ▶ shouldn't have + P.P
- ▶ It was wrong of ... to + inf.



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Your train leaves after 8 hours, you .... prepare your luggage now. We're still early.
   a) must b) have to c) needn't d) shouldn't
2. Your writing is full of mistakes. You .... it carefully.
   a) needn't have checked b) should have checked
   c) must have checked d) didn't have to check
3. We have already cleaned the house. You .... clean it again.
   a) need to b) don't need to c) mustn't d) needed
4. You .... drive over 100 km an hour on this road. It is against the law.
   a) might b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) must
5. Yesterday, I .... to school as it was a national holiday. I was watching TV all day.
   a) had to go b) needn't have gone
   c) didn't have to go d) went
6. You .... repair the machine while it is connected to the electricity.
   a) don't have to b) needn't c) mustn't d) don't need to
7. You .... drive the car. You are only thirteen and this is illegal.
   a) should b) must c) shouldn't d) mustn't
8. I ran fast to catch the train, which was late, and I waited for long. I ....
   a) didn't have to hurry b) needn't hurry
   c) should have hurried d) needn't have hurried
9. You .... shouted at my little son. I will never forgive you.
   a) can't have b) should have c) may have d) shouldn't have
10. Young men in Egypt .... do their military service الخدمة العسكرية. It is their duty.
    a) has to b) must c) should d) may
11. Never mind, my dear. You really .... more bread as we already have enough.
    a) needn't have bought b) didn't have to buy
    c) had to buy d) mustn't buy
12. I felt a lot better yesterday, so I .... to see a doctor.
    a) needn't b) mustn't c) needn't have d) didn't have
13. I can do my work on my own. I .... get help.
    a) needn't b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) don't need
14. My daughter got a very low mark in the exam. She .... more and it was wrong of her.
    a) must have studied b) ought to have studied
    c) shouldn't have studied d) needn't study
15. You .... buy a new suit for the wedding. I can give you mine.
    a) don't have to b) needn't to c) mustn't d) aren't allowed

16 You .... eat this food. It is poisonous مسمم and you will be ill or dead.
a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) don't have to d) needn't

17 I .... to buy my daughter a present as it was her birthday.
a) ought to remember b) should remember
c) should have remembered d) shouldn't have remembered

18 Smoking in public places and public transport is not ....
a) allowed b) banned c) necessary d) advisable

19 You .... swim in this area because there are sharks.
a) must b) needn't c) can d) mustn't

20 I think the accident is your own mistake. It's a residential سكنية area; you .... driven slowly.
a) should have b) shouldn't have c) must have d) mustn't have

21 I really .... out yesterday. It was raining heavily and I got wet.
a) didn't have to go b) needn't go
c) can't have gone d) shouldn't have gone

22 Which of the following doesn't show necessity? (Longman)
a) It's necessary to hurry to catch the train.
b) You should work hard to achieve more progress.
c) The teacher orders us to follow school rules.
d) It's a must to take the medicine on time.

23 Which of the following isn't structurally correct? (Longman)
a) You ought to not neglect your work.
b) What should I do to improve my language skills?
c) Do I have to finish the task before Monday?
d) You mustn't smoke in a public place.

24 Which of the following doesn't show prohibition? (Longman)
a) You mustn't lean against the door of the metro.
b) You're not allowed to take photographs here.
c) You shouldn't smoke for your health.
d) You aren't permitted to drive your car without wearing a seat belt.

25 It .... for all of our students to come to school last week to share in the fun day.
a) had to b) was necessary c) is necessary d) was must

26 It was .... of you to sleep late. You should have slept early.
a) forbidden b) necessary c) advisable d) wrong

27 We .... umbrellas yesterday. It didn't rain at all and they cost too much money.
a) needn't have bought b) didn't have to buy
c) mustn't buy d) had to buy

28 You had a lot of problems as I told you. You .... to my advice.
a) have listened b) ought not to have listened
c) should have listened d) mustn't have listened

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 You can't come onto the building site unless you are wearing a ....
a) shirt b) blanket c) helmet d) heading

2 Crime is an increasingly .... problem in our society.
a) series b) serious c) pleasant d) terrific

3 I owe you a/an .... as I forgot to send the report. I am so sorry.
a) apology b) complement c) complaint d) agreement

4 He came downstairs after his shower; he was .... in a towel منشفة.
a) realised b) stopped c) wrapped d) helmeted

5 Put a/an .... on the wound so that it doesn't get infected.
a) blanket b) bedding c) oyster d) plaster

6 We never .... unknown websites while shopping online.
a) trust b) doubt c) forgive d) predict

7 We should put cool tap water on burns ....
a) surprisingly b) differently c) immediately d) difficultly

8 The teacher asked the students to .... the poem.
a) separate b) interpret c) remove d) breathe

9 The earthquake caused .... to the country estimated at 1,000,000 pounds.
a) danger b) adventure c) break d) damage

10 There was a/an .... between my parents about our expenses. They had two different opinions.
a) agreement b) apology c) complaint d) argument

11 I tried to .... calm during the funeral of my dad despite my great sorrow.
a) pay b) stay c) make d) do

12 Please, don't .... angry with me. It wasn't my fault.
a) get b) make c) have d) keep

13 I can't decide .... who to invite to my wedding party next week.
a) at b) on c) out d) in

14 My mother got some .... while putting out the fire in the kitchen.
a) burns b) fires c) burners d) lights

15 Have you ever seen a building .... fire? I think it is very scary.
a) in b) at c) with d) on

16 It is .... to eat healthy food to keep fit.
a) necessity b) necessary c) must d) forbidden

17 I think you .... do some sports to be healthy. I only advise you.
a) ought b) can't c) might d) had better

18 You .... go into this building. It is impossible as it is a military building.
a) needn't b) can't c) should d) must

19 I .... to school yesterday as it was Friday. I stayed in bed all day.
a) needn't have gone b) didn't have to go
c) must go d) had to go

20 You .... study history at school this year. It is a basic subject.
a) should b) have to c) mustn't d) need

21 I'm sorry I couldn't come yesterday. I .... travel as my brother was ill.
a) had to b) must c) need to d) have to

22 You .... take that bus. There's another one in ten minutes.
a) don't have to b) mustn't c) can't d) don't need

23 I was very nervous before the interview, though I .... Everyone was so friendly and I got the job.
a) shouldn't have worried b) didn't have to worry
c) can't have worried d) could have worry

24 We have a ten-day holiday. I .... wake up early for ten days!
a) needn't b) must c) have to d) need to

25 I travelled by train, but I .... by car.
a) might have travelled b) could travel
c) could have travelled d) can travel

26 You .... your lessons well for the next exam to get the best marks.
a) should study b) shouldn't study
c) should have studied d) shouldn't have studies

27 In the winter, you .... use the air conditioner.
a) needn't b) must c) have to d) don't need

28 Dad worked very late last night. You .... wake him up early today.
a) needn't b) must c) mustn't d) need to

29 Tomorrow, I .... travel to Cairo to meet my boss.
a) will need b) will have to c) had to d) could have

30 A timetable .... be set for finishing our work. This is necessary.
a) mustn't b) can't c) should d) must





للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات

Writing tips

What to do if there is a fire:

- **There are some tips you will need during a house fire.**

1. Get the fire extinguisher طفاية الحريق.
2. Raise an alarm to inform others in the house.
3. Call the fire department.
4. Leave valuables behind and never delay to find them.
5. Always crawl and keep yourself close to the ground.
6. Cover your nose with a damp towel فوطة مبللة.
7. Close the doors behind you once you leave the house.
8. Once you leave the burning house, stay out and don't return again.

Model Essay

An essay about what to do in a fire

Introduction

Fires are very dangerous and scary. They cause a lot of damage and destruction, as well as injuries and deaths. Always remember to stay calm to be able to call for help. You have to know how to stay safe if a fire breaks out in your house. And to prevent a house fire from causing severe damage, you need some tips which can help you stay safe.

Main body

So, here are some tips that you will need if there is a fire in your house; firstly, you should go for your fire extinguisher if you hear the sound of the fire alarm and don't ignore it. Secondly, you should do anything to inform others in the house that there is a fire; by screaming or using the alarm. Thirdly, you must then pick up your phone and call the fire department to come immediately. Fourthly, you mustn't wait to find the valuable things; you must escape at once. Above all, you should cover your nose with a shirt or a damp towel to prevent smoke from entering your lungs. Once you get out of the house, you should close the doors to prevent fire from spreading outside the house.

Conclusion

In conclusion, you should behave sensibly and fast at the same time. You may get suffocated by the smoke and endanger your life unless you keep away and wait for the firefighters until they reach to put out the fire and save whatever you left behind.



Practice — Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

How often do you use the internet for school projects and to help with your homework? Some students don't think about where information comes from online. This can be risky[1] because there is a lot of false[2] information on the internet. It is important to remember to use websites that you can trust.

You should also think about when the information on the website was written. When you are researching history, the information can be old, but it can still be <u>accurate</u>. However, if you are looking for something about science and technology or the latest news, you should check the date on the website.

It is important to look for the most recent[3] information. Paying attention to the website address is also helpful. If the site is from the government or somewhere like a university, the address ends with "gov" or "edu". You can trust these sites. Finally, good websites usually include links to other sites on similar topics. This means you can check the information in more than one place.

The most important thing to remember is to think critically[4]. Don't believe everything you read; don't stop at the first website you find, and always search for more websites until you make sure that the information has been approved by many people. It's important not to spread false information as well.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Trusted websites don't ....
   a) provide links to related websites
   b) include the symbol of an organisation
   c) ask you to provide personal information
   d) provide information from different sources
2. Links to other sites are helpful because ....
   a) you can find more information
   b) other sites are usually better
   c) comparing the information is a good way to check
   d) both a & c
3. The antonym of the underlined word "<u>accurate</u>" is by adding the prefix "..............".
   a) un- b) dis- c) mis- d) in-



(1) خطير (2) زائف (3) حديث (4) بشكل نقدي

4. Which of the following sentences is not true?
   a) Don't use untrusted websites. b) Always look for recent information.
   c) All the information is fake. d) Always check the information.
5. The main idea of the passage is "..............".
   a) The pros and cons of the internet
   b) Information helps us to think
   c) Technology in education
   d) How to get trusted information on the internet
6. It is important to check the information on the internet because ....
   a) a lot of it is accurate b) a lot of it is false
   c) we want to get high marks d) it is trusted
7. It is important to check the date of the information as it tells you about ....
   a) the accuracy of the information b) the quality of the author
   c) the security of the website d) the scam of the internet

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. We have to take great care of trees as they help to keep the balance of nature and as scientists say, "Trees help the earth to breathe".
   a) يجب علينا أن نهتم كثيرًا بالنباتات لأنها تساعد على اختلال الطبيعة ولأن العلماء يقولون «تساعد الأشجار الأرض على التنفس».
   b) يجب علينا ألا نهتم كثيرًا بالأشجار لأنها تساعد على توازن الطبيعة ولأن العلم يقول «تساعد الأشجار الأرض على التنفس».
   c) يجب علينا أن نهتم كثيرًا بالأشجار لأنها تساعد على توازن الطبيعة ولأن العلماء يقولون «تساعد الأشجار الأرض على التنفس».
   d) يجب علينا أن نهتم كثيرًا بالأشجار لأنها تساعد على توازن الحياة ولأن العلماء يقولون «تساعد الأشجار الأرض على التنفس».
2. We all have always dreamed of living in a modern and advanced country where people are respected and tolerant to each other.
   a) جميعنا يحلم عادة بالعيش فى دولة حديثة متقدمة حيث يكون الناس محترمين وغير متسامحين مع بعضهم البعض.
   b) جميعنا دائما يتمنى أن يعيش فى دولة حديثة متقدمة حيث يكون الناس محترمين ومتسامحين مع بعضهم البعض.
   c) جميعنا يتمنى عادة العيش فى دولة تقليدية متأخرة حيث يكون الناس محترمين ومتسامحين مع بعضهم البعض.
   d) جميعنا يحلم عادة بالعيش فى دولة حديثة متقدمة حيث يكون الناس قساة وغير متسامحين مع بعضهم البعض.
3. Television is thought to show a variety of programmes that appeal to people of different ages. Also, it helps students by presenting some useful educational programmes.
   a) من المعتقد أن يعرض التليفزيون مجموعة متنوعة من البرامج التى تروق للأشخاص من مختلف الأعمار وأيضًا يساعد الطلبة عن طريق تقديم بعض البرامج التعليمية المفيدة.
   b) يُعتقد أن يعرض التليفزيون مجموعة متنوعة من البرامج التى يمقتها الأشخاص من مختلف الأعمار وأيضًا يساعد الطلبة عن طريق تقديم بعض البرامج التعليمية المفيدة.
   c) يُعتقد أن التلفاز يعرض مجموعة متنوعة من البرامج التى تروق للأشخاص من أعمار متشابهة وأيضًا يساعد الطلبة عن طريق تقديم بعض البرامج التعليمية المفيدة.
   d) من المعتقد أن يعرض التليفزيون سلسلة من البرامج التى تروق للأشخاص من مختلف الأعمار وأيضًا يساعد الطلبة عن طريق تقديم بعض البرامج التعليمية المسلية.

4 Electricity has become a main part of our life. People can't do without it. We depend on electricity in almost all aspects of life.

a) لقد أصبحت الكهرباء جزءًا أساسيًا من حياتنا والناس لا تستطيع الاستغناء عنها ولا نعتمد عليها تقريبًا فى كل مجالات الحياة.

b) قد تصبح الكهرباء جزءًا أساسيًا من حياتنا فنحن لا نستطيع الاستغناء عنها ونعتمد عليها تقريبًا فى كل مجالات الحياة.

c) لقد أصبحت الكهرباء جزءًا أساسيًا من حياتنا والناس لا تستطيع الاستغناء عنها ونعتمد عليها تقريبًا فى كل مجالات الحياة.

d) لقد أصبحت الإلكترونيات جزءًا أساسيًا من حياتنا فنحن لا نستطيع الاستغناء عنها ونعتمد عليها تقريبًا فى كل مجالات الحياة.

5 It is known that energy and water are the basis and the arteries of life. All living things and machines can't live or work without them.

a) من المعروف أن الطاقة والمياه هما أساس وأوردة الحياة فكل الكائنات الحية والآلات لا تستطيع العيش أو العمل بدونهما.

b) من المعروف أن الطاقة والمياه هما أساس وشرايين الحياة فكل الكائنات الحية والآلات لا تستطيع العيش أو العمل بدونهما.

c) من المعروف أن الطاقة والمياه هما أساس وشرايين الحياة فكل الكائنات الحية والميكانيكا لا تستطيع العيش أو العمل بدونهما.

d) من الغريب أن الطاقة والمياه هما أساس وشرايين الحياة فكل الكائنات الحية والآلات لا تستطيع العيش أو العمل بدونهما.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 لابد أن يكون للوالدين العادات الصحية السليمة وقواعد النظافة الشخصية حتى يتعلم الأطفال هذه العادات حيث إن الأطفال يقلدون آباءهم.

a) Parents must have good healthy habits and the rules of personal clean so that children can learn these habits as they imitate their parents.

b) Parents should to have sound healthy habits and the roles of personal cleanliness so that children can learn these habits as children imitate their parents.

c) Parents should have good healthy habits and the rules of personnel cleanliness so that children might learn these habits as children imitate their parents.

d) Parents must have proper, healthy habits and personal hygiene rules in order for the children to learn them as they imitate their parents.

7 لابد أن نتحمل جميعا مسئولية الحفاظ على نظافة مياه النيل وكذلك الحفاظ على كل قطرة مياه لأن نهر النيل يعتبر شريان الحياة فى مصر.

a) We all should afford the responsibility of keeping the Nile water cleaning and saving every drop of water as the Nile is considered the source of life in Egypt.

b) We all should bear the responsibility of keeping the Nile water clean and saving every crop of water as the Nile is considers the artery of life in Egypt.

c) We all should bear the responsibility of keeping the Nile water clean and saving every drop of water as the Nile is considered the artery of life in Egypt.

d) We all have to bear the ability of keeping Nile water clean and saving every drop of water as the Nile is considered the street of life in Egypt.

8 عادة ما تبذل الحكومة جهدًا كبيرًا وقت الأزمات خاصة عند تعرض البلاد للكوارث الصحية مثل انتشار الفيروسات الخطيرة مثل فيروس كورونا.

a) The government usually exerts great effort at times of crises especially when the country is exposed to health disasters such as the spread of dangerous viruses like COVID-19.

b) The government usually exert great efforts at times of crises especial when countries expose to health disasters such as the spread of dangerous viruses as COVID-19.

c) The government usually exerts great efforts at times of crises especially when countries expose to health disasters such as the spread of dangerous viruses like COVID-19.

d) The government usually exerts great efforts at times of crises especially when the country is exposed to healthy disasters such as the spread of dangerous viruses as COVID-19.

9 من الضرورى لأى إنسان أن يحافظ على نظافة البيئة المحيطة به وكذلك النظافة الشخصية حتى لا يتعرض للكثير من الأمراض المعدية.

a) It is necessary for any man to keep his surroundings clean and also their hygiene so as not to catch a lot of infectious diseases.

b) It is unnecessary for any person to keep their surroundings clean and also their hygiene so as not to catch a lot of infectious diseases.

c) It is necessary for any person to keep their surroundings clean and also their hygiene so as not to catch a lot of infectious diseases.

d) It is must for any person to keep their surroundings clean and also their hygiene so as not to catch a lot of infected diseases.

10 تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا بارزًا ومهمًا فى حياتنا فنحن لا نستطيع أن نتخيل الحياة بدون وسائل الاتصالات ووسائل النقل الحديثة.

a) Modern technology plays an outstanding and important role in our life as we can't imagine our life without modern means of communication and transport.

b) Modern technology plays an outstanding and important roll in our life as we can't imagine our life unless modern means of communication and transport.

c) Modern technology plays an outstanding and important role in our life as we can imagine our life without modern means of connection and transport.

d) Ancient technology plays an outstanding and important role in our life as we can't image our life without modern means of communication and transport.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"How to avoid illnesses and infectious diseases"

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 My daughter's teacher can explain the lessons .... to the kids.
a) easily b) simply c) hard d) difficulty e) safely

2 She found the keys at the bottom of her handbag. The antonyms of the word "bottom" are ....
a) back b) rule c) base d) peak e) top

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 I have a/an .... to certain foods, so I can't eat any of them.
a) emergency b) sense c) allergy d) experience

4 During the operation, his .... stopped three times before his death.
a) blood b) breathing c) thinking d) moving

5 Follow your doctor's important ...., and you will stay away from infections.
a) description b) advice c) rule d) operation

6 Mountain climbers need special .... in order to complete their mission properly.
a) equalities b) quantities c) equipment d) relation

7 We can't make a cake without sugar. It is an important ....
a) compound b) ingredient c) factor d) tool

8 Physical exercise can protect you .... heart disease.
a) against b) with c) by d) for

9 Old people are always in need of special .... care.
a) medicine b) tropical c) medical d) electrical

10 We .... cooperate to reduce pollution. It would be a good idea for us.
a) must to b) mustn't c) ought d) should

11 They .... the meeting as the manager was very angry about their absence.
a) must have attended b) might have attended
c) should have attended d) shouldn't have attended

12 We .... have a licence to drive a car.
a) should b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to

13 You .... eat so much fat; you'll be sick.
a) must b) mustn't
c) don't have to d) ought to

14 I .... my friend in a hospital before returning home last night.
a) had to visit b) have to visit
c) must be visited d) had to be visited

15 He didn't pass his exams. He .... hard for them.
a) should study b) had to study
c) should have studied d) can't study

16 I .... phone my father more often as he is very ill and it is very important for him.
a) can b) need c) must d) might

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

As I put my key into the keyhole, the door slid open. I left my house at about ten that morning after I had locked the door well. It immediately dawned on me that someone had broken into the house and the first thing I thought of doing was calling on my neighbour, Mr Hassan.

As soon as we got into the hall, we found that everything was in a terrible mess. There could be no doubt that the burglar had left nothing untouched. Before going on to inspect the rest of the house, I called the police.

Then we went into my bedroom. All my clothes were thrown all over the bed and the floor. The police officers arrived a few minutes later and made a thorough search and declared that the burglar must have been quite experienced for he had even ransacked the kitchen cupboards. It would take me at least two days of hard work to find out whether anything had been stolen. Fortunately, I never used to leave money in the house and the only thing that they could have taken would be my watch, which I had left in the bathroom. We all went to the bathroom, only to find the watch there. Mr Hassan remarked that burglars never imagined they could possibly find anything valuable in a bathroom.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 When the writer reached his house, he found the door ....
a) bolted b) open c) locked d) unfastened

18 The underlined pronoun "we" refers to ....
a) the police officers
b) Mr Hassan and the writer
c) Mr Hassan and the police officer
d) Mr Hassan, the writer and the police officers

19 Burglars never imagined they could find .... things in a bathroom.
a) cheap b) inexpensive c) workless d) precious

20 What does the word "declared" in the last paragraph mean?
a) Guessed. b) Announced.
c) Refused. d) Denied.

21 The police officers thought that the burglar was ....
a) foolish b) clever c) inexperienced d) rash

22 The writer left the house ....
a) in the morning b) at noon
c) in the evening d) in the afternoon

23 The writer and his neighbour called the police .... inspecting the house.
a) before
b) after
c) at the same time of
d) not mentioned

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- لقد أصبح الحفاظ على نظافة البيئة ضرورة ولذلك يجب على كل الأفراد والحكومات أن يتعاونوا لخلق بيئة صحية ونظيفة خالية من الأوبئة والأمراض.

a) Keeping the environment cleaning has become necessary, so all individuals and governments should cooperate to create a healthy and clean environment free of epidemics and diseases.
b) Keeping the environment clean has become necessary, so all individuals and governments needn't cooperate to create a health and clean environment free of epidemics and diseases.
c) Keep the environment clean has become must, so all individuals and governments should cooperate to create a healthy and clean environment full of epidemics and diseases.
d) Keeping the environment clean has become a must, so all individuals and governments should cooperate to create a healthy and clean environment free of epidemics and diseases.

25 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

Vitamins are very necessary for good health. It is known that their absence may cause serious diseases. Foods that contain vitamins are called protective foods.

a) إن الفيتامينات ضرورية جدًا للحصول على صحة جيدة ومن المعروف أن حضورها قد يسبب أمراضًا خطيرة. والطعام الذى يحتوى على فيتامينات يسمى أطعمة وقائية.
b) إن الفيتامينات ضرورية جدًا من أجل صحة جيدة ومن المعروف أن نقصها قد يسبب أمراضًا خطيرة. والأطعمة التى تحتوى على فيتامينات تسمى بالأطعمة الوقائية.
c) إن الفيتامينات ضرورية جدًا من أجل صحة جيدة ومن المعروف أن نقصها قد يسبب أمراضًا معدية. والغذاء الذى يحتوى على فيتامينات يسمى أطعمة وقائية.
d) إن الفيتامينات ضرورية جدًا للحصول على صحة جيدة ومن المعروف أن نقصها قد يسبب أمراضًا خطيرة. والطعام الذى يحتوى على فيتامينات يسمى أطعمة إنتاجية.

26 **Answer the following questions:**
1. Do you think that Jim was careful or not? How do you know?
2. Silver, himself, thought that he wasn't an honest man. Illustrate this!
3. Do you think that Dr Livesy was a good man? Why?

27 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**
"Keeping the water of the Nile clean"

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 337



Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Robots

Unit 8

Objectives



- **Reading** : Online posts about the advantages of new technology
- **Writing** : An essay about the advantages and disadvantages of having technology in the house
- **Listening** : Discussion on how technology can improve learning
- **Speaking** : Discussing consequences
- **Language** : Zero, first and second conditionals
- **Critical thinking** : Is technology always good?
- **Respect for diversity** : People have different views related to technology



Part (1)
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

benefit (v) – ed (n)	يستفيد/فائدة	hybrid vehicle (n)	مركبة تعمل بمصدرين للوقود
click (n)	نقرة/ضغطة (على الماوس)	internet (n)	الإنترنت
familiar (adj)	مألوف	invention (n)	اختراع
* find out (v)	يكتشف	navigate (v) – d	يوجه/يتنقل
get around (v)	يتجول/يتنقل من مكان لمكان	robot (n)	إنسان آلي
go out (v)	يخرج	vehicle (n)	مركبة (وسيلة نقل)
GPS (Global Positioning System)	نظام تحديد المواقع		

My son **found out** that English is easier than German.

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

abroad (adv)	بالخارج	easily (adv)	بسهولة
air-conditioning (n)	نظام تكييف الهواء	engine (n)	محرك
cause (n) (v) – d	سبب/يسبب	exactly (adv)	بالضبط
communication (n)	اتصال	fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
concentrate (v) – d	يركز	free time (n)	وقت الفراغ
consequences (n)	نتائج/عواقب	global (adj)	عالمي
control (v) – led	يتحكم	lead (n) (v)	قيادة/يدير
discuss (v) – ed	يناقش	luxurious (adj)	فخم/فاخر
distance (n)	مسافة	luxury (n)	رفاهية/ترف

machine (n)	ماكينة/آلة	relax (v) – ed	يستريح/يسترخي
petrol (n)	بنزين	result (n)	نتيجة
position (n)	موقع/مكانة/ وضع	statement (n)	بيان
positioning (n)	ملاحة (تحديد موقع)	system (n)	نظام
project (n)	مشروع	useful (adj)	مفيد
reason (n)	سبب/مبرر		

Workbook Vocabulary

annoying (adj)	مزعج	lose (v)	يخسر
charge (v) – d	يشحن	memory (n)	ذاكرة
culture (n)	ثقافة	shopping list (n)	قائمة التسوق
direction (n)	اتجاه	stressful (adj)	مُجهد
discover (v) – ed	يكتشف	stressed (adj)	متوتر/مضغوط
fail (v) – ed	يفشل	terrible (adj)	فظيع/رهيب
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	wheel (n)	عجلة (سيارة مثلًا)

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Teaching is considered a very .... job. It is really hard.
   a) stressed b) relaxing c) interesting d) stressful
2. The current financial .... of the company is not very good.
   a) location b) vehicle c) position d) globalisation
3. The trip to the beach helped me to .... and spend a good time.
   a) annoy b) relax c) fail d) lose
4. You need to .... on this file twice to open it.
   a) ride b) knock c) clink d) click
5. Many people can't afford .... life such as music lessons and fun tours.
   a) basic b) potential c) familiar d) luxurious
6. Egypt has always been a centre of .... whether ancient or modern.
   a) statement b) direction c) culture d) structure

7 This smell is very .... to everyone who lives near a bakery. They are used to it.
a) familiar b) useful c) cultural d) similar

8 The most .... habit of my friend is lying. He cooks up excuses يختلق اعذار.
a) cultural b) wonderful c) annoying d) useful

9 My daughter's exam .... made me so happy and proud.
a) cause b) result c) reason d) benefit

10 It is known that a bike has two ....
a) whales b) wholes c) circles d) wheels

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a click of a button	ضغطة زر	get nervous/stressed	يتوتر
cycle around town	يتجول بالدراجة حول المدينة	give directions	يعطى اتجاهات
do exercise	يؤدى تدريبًا	give an opinion	يعطى رأيًا
do things	يقوم بعمل أشياء	go abroad	يسافر للخارج
drive the engine	يشغل المحرك	go down	يقل
do homework	يعمل الواجب المدرسى	communicate with	يتواصل مع
even if	حتى لو	connect to	يتصل بـ
for this reason	لأجل هذا السبب	concentrate on	يركز فى
from one place to another	من مكان لآخر	familiar with	على دراية بـ
feel like	يشعر وكأنه	interested in	مهتم بـ
get answers to	يحصل على إجابات لـ	putting parts together	تجميع أجزاء معًا
get lost	يتوه/يضل الطريق	agree with	يتفق مع
in charge of	مسئول عن	lead to	يؤدى إلى
familiar to	مألوف لـ	ride on	يركب على
go long distances	يذهب مسافات بعيدة	useful to	مفيد لـ
go online	يتصل بالإنترنت	walk around	يتجول
have fun	يحصل على المتعة		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
annoy*	يضايق	annoyance	ضيق	annoyed annoying	منزعج مزعج
benefit	يستفيد	benefit beneficiary	فائدة منتفع/مستفيد	beneficial	مفيد
communicate	يتصل	communication	اتصال	communicative	اتصالى
concentrate	يركز	concentration	تركيز	concentrated	مُركز
------------------------		culture	ثقافة	cultural cultured	ثقافى مثقف
------------------------		distance	مسافة	distant	بعيد
familiarise	يجعل الأمر مألوفًا	familiarity	معرفة/دراية	familiar	مألوف
globalise	يعولم	globalisation	العولمة	global globalised	عالمى خاضع للعولمة
invent	يخترع	invention inventor	اختراع مخترع	inventive	ابتكارى/مبدع
luxuriate	يترفه	luxury	ترف/رفاهية	luxurious	فَخم/فاخر
navigate	يوجه/يتنقل	navigation navigator	الملاحة/التنقل ضابط الملاحة (ربان/ملاح/بحار)	navigational	ملاحى/انتقالى
relax	يسترخى	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxed relaxing	مسترخ مريح

- It's not good to annoy your neighbours with loud music.
- The girl looked at me in annoyance.
- I'm annoyed because your behaviour is annoying.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
annoying	مزعج	disturbing/troublesome	pleasant/agreeable	سار/مقبول
easily	بسهولة	simply/smoothly	difficultly/hard	بصعوبة
entertainment	تسلية	amusement/enjoyment	boredom/dissatisfaction	عدم رضا/الملل
exactly	بالضبط	absolutely/completely	nearly/doubtfully	تقريبًا

fail	يفشل	break down/decline	succeed/pass	ينجح
familiar	مألوف	common/usual	uncommon/unfamiliar	غير شائع/غير مألوف
stressful	مجهد	exhausting/annoying/ disturbing	relaxing/comfortable	مريح
terrible	فظيع/رهيب	horrible/awful	wonderful/amazing	رائع
useful	مفيد	beneficial/fruitful	harmful/hurtful	مؤذٍ

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When John visited Morocco, he couldn't .... in its streets at all.
   a) navigate b) navigation c) navigator d) navigational
2. My temperature went ...., and I felt better after an hour.
   a) down b) on c) away d) out
3. A: Please, can you .... me directions to the station?
   B: I don't know the way to it.
   a) give b) make c) say d) do
4. We are going .... for a meal. How about joining us?
   a) down b) abroad c) out d) on
5. Be quiet, please. Let me concentrate .... my homework.
   a) with b) by c) at d) on
6. The village where my friend lives is very ...., so I don't visit him very often.
   a) distant b) distance c) distancing d) distantly
7. Akram always .... stressed whenever he has a final exam at school.
   a) makes b) has c) gets d) does
8. Doing exercise is something very useful. The synonym of the word "useful" is "..............".
   a) fruit b) harmful c) creative d) beneficial
9. He was very sad as he failed the final exam. The synonym of the word "fail" is "..............".
   a) succeed b) pass c) decline d) get through
10. A lot of people were injured in the terrible accident that happened yesterday. The antonym of "terrible" is "..............".
    a) wonderful b) horrible c) frightening d) awful

Reading Text

What is the best invention[1] that we have today and why is it so great? Please leave your comments[2] below.

Baher 12 minutes ago

The internet is the best invention that we have today. You can find information about anything you're interested in[3]. It's really useful if you need to find out something for a school project[4], for example.
I'd never be able to do my homework without it! The internet also makes life easier in your free time. You can buy anything you want online with a click[5] of a button. You can also communicate with your friends easily, even if they live abroad.

Khadeeja 23 minutes ago

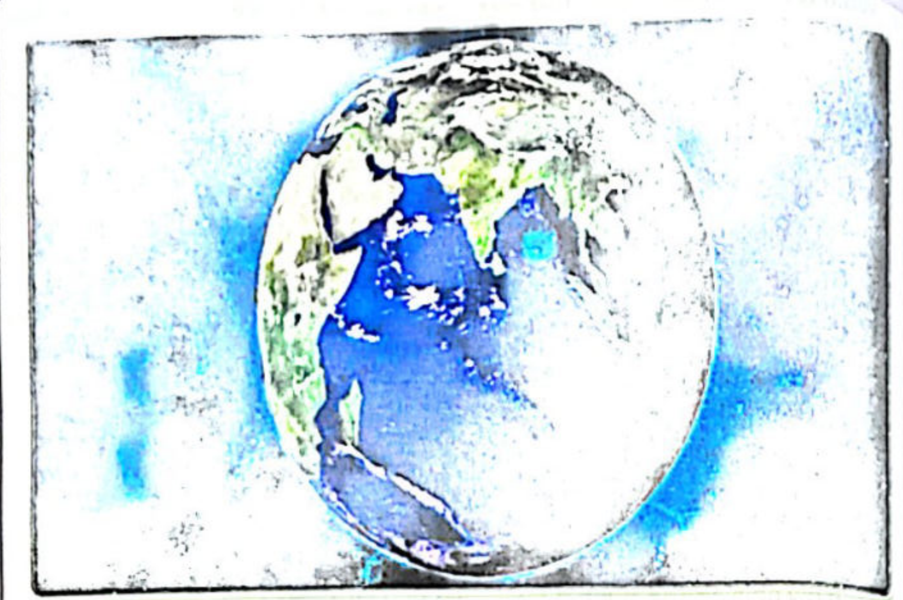
In my opinion, GPS (Global Positioning System) is the best invention. GPS helps you to navigate[6] your journey from one place to another. You can use it when you visit a town that you aren't familiar with[7].
In the past, people needed maps to get around[8], but GPS is more useful because it just tells you what to do. If you don't know how to get somewhere, the technology will tell you exactly where to go.

Most cars, buses and other vehicles[9] need petrol, but petrol is becoming more expensive. What would we do if we didn't have petrol? Fortunately[10], we now have hybrid vehicles[11]. Hybrid vehicles use both petrol and electricity to drive the engine. For this reason, the vehicle uses a lot less[12] petrol. There are also cars that are only electric. At the moment, they cannot go long distances[13], although they are useful to travel short distances, like to school or to the shops.

(1) اختراع
(2) تعليقات
(3) مهتم بـ
(4) مشروع
(5) نقرة
(6) يقود/يوجه
(7) مألوف لدى
(8) يتجول
(9) مركبات
(10) لحسن الحظ
(11) مركبات تعمل بمصدرين للوقود
(12) أقل بكثير
(13) مسافات

Listening Text





Ahmed : Well, the reason that we have the internet is so that people in different(1) countries can talk to each other very easily and get answers to their questions very quickly. Although we need this fast and easy communication(2), it can lead to problems if people spend too much time talking online and don't work or study enough. I wouldn't say that the internet has caused a lot of problems, but I think it has caused(3) some.

Mustafa : The problem with the internet is that it makes people feel like they aren't good enough. If you go online, you see all these photos of beautiful people on luxury holidays(4) and you think 'Why isn't my life like that?' This makes some people really unhappy. Perhaps we should all concentrate(5) on our own lives and our own friends and not use the internet anymore.

(1) مختلف
(2) اتصال
(3) سببت
(4) إجازات ترفيهية
(5) يركز

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

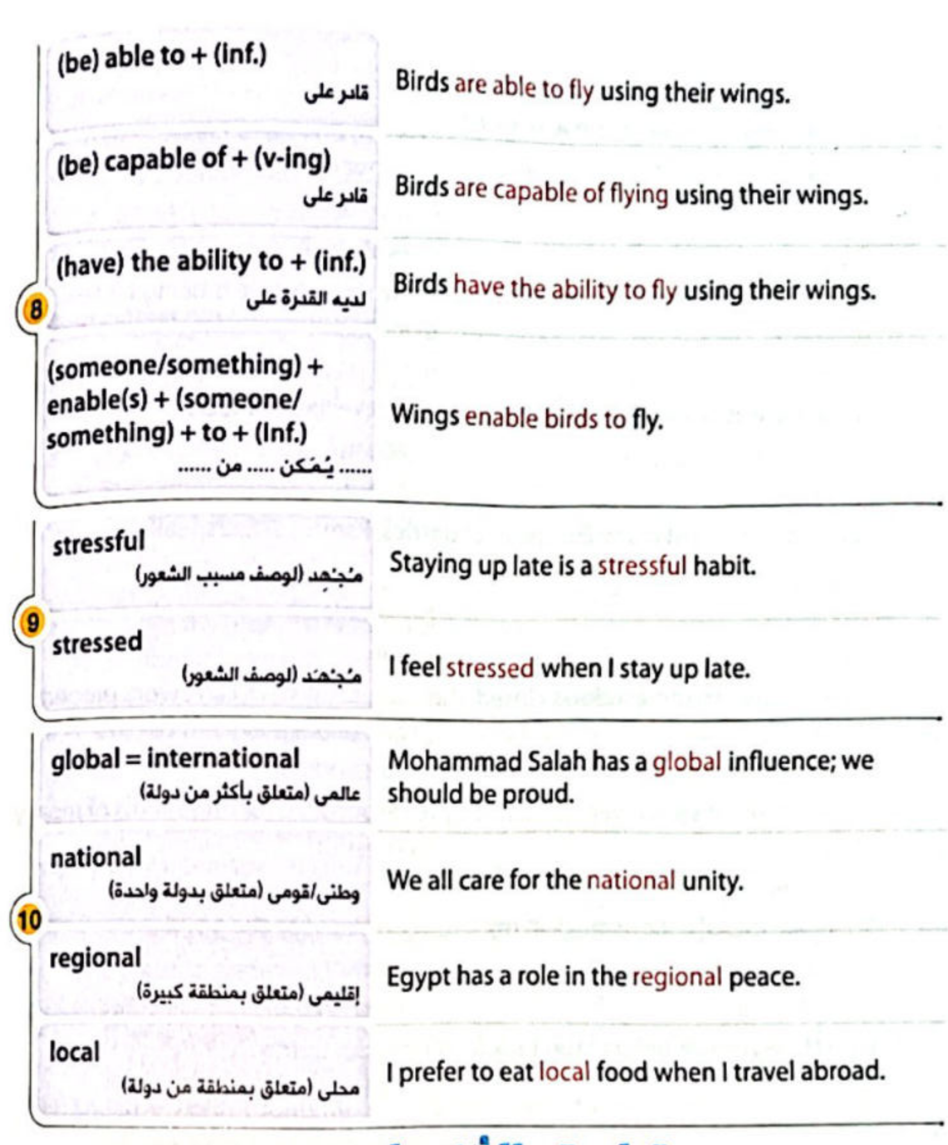
No.	Word	Example
1	**position** موضع (مثل الوقوف أو الجلوس)/مكانة/ وظيفة/مركز فى الملعب/وضع/موقف)	- First, get yourself into a comfortable position. - I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your position.
	location موقع/مكان (للتصوير)	- We have not found a suitable location for the new offices. - Most of the film was shot on a location in Africa.
	destination جهة الوصول	The driver asked me about our destination, then he cancelled the trip.
2	**air-conditioning** (n) نظام تكييف الهواء	We all think that air-conditioning makes life easier.
	air-conditioner (n) جهاز تكييف الهواء	The technician told me that I should clean the filters of the air-conditioner regularly.
	air-conditioned (adj) مكيف الهواء	I prefer going to this restaurant as it is fully air-conditioned.
3	**journey** رحلة/سفر: السفر من مكان إلى آخر (وخاصة السفر الطويل)	It was a long and difficult journey across the mountains.
	trip رحلة قصيرة لغرض معين	My father came back from a business trip to China.
	voyage رحلة بحرية	The ship *Titanic* sank on its first voyage.
	flight رحلة جوية	What was the direction of the flight when the plane crashed?
	hike رحلة فى الريف/الجبال - يتجول فى الريف/ الجبال خاصة سيرًا على الأقدام	I like to go for a hike every spring. It makes me relaxed.
	picnic نزهة خلوية فى الهواء الطلق وعادة مصحوبة بالطعام	We had a picnic on the beach.

	abroad الخارج (خارج حدود بلد ما)	He worked abroad for five years.
	broad فسيح/عريض	The room is broad.
4	board لوحة (إعلانات/السبورة)	The exam results went up on the board.
	aboard = on board على متن السفينة/الطائرة/القطار	The plane had an accident, but luckily all the passengers aboard were safe.
	border حد بين دولتين	There is a national park on the border between Kenya and Tanzania.

	memory الذاكرة	My mobile has a 64 GB internal memory.
5	memory ذكرى	We have good and bad memories.
	memorial نصب تذكاري	The wall was built as a memorial to soldiers who died in the Second World War.

6	familiar with على دراية بـ	Are you familiar with this type of computer?
	familiar to معروف لدى	This street was familiar to me when I was young.

7	result نتيجة (شيء يحدث بسبب شيء آخر)	The traffic was very heavy and as a result I arrived late.
	consequence عاقبة (تأثير لحدوث شيء آخر)	That bad error had some tragic consequences.



	(be) able to + (inf.) قادر على	Birds are able to fly using their wings.
	(be) capable of + (v-ing) قادر على	Birds are capable of flying using their wings.
8	(have) the ability to + (inf.) لديه القدرة على	Birds have the ability to fly using their wings.
	(someone/something) + enable(s) + (someone/something) + to + (inf.) ...... يُمَكن ..... من	Wings enable birds to fly.

9	stressful مُجْهِد (لوصف مسبب الشعور)	Staying up late is a stressful habit.
	stressed مُجْهَد (لوصف الشعور)	I feel stressed when I stay up late.

	global = international عالمي (متعلق بأكثر من دولة)	Mohammad Salah has a global influence; we should be proud.
10	national وطني/قومي (متعلق بدولة واحدة)	We all care for the national unity.
	regional إقليمي (متعلق بمنطقة كبيرة)	Egypt has a role in the regional peace.
	local محلي (متعلق بمنطقة من دولة)	I prefer to eat local food when I travel abroad.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went on a wonderful .... on a very nice boat.
   a) flight b) journey
   c) voyage d) expedition
2. There are many people around the .... where a movie is being filmed.
   a) position b) location
   c) destination d) navigation
3. My father was seasick while he was .... travelling to Mecca.
   a) abroad b) aboard
   c) broad d) board
4. Because of living in many European countries, I am .... speak different languages.
   a) able to b) capable of
   c) enable d) can
5. Unless you keep the windows closed, the .... system can't work properly.
   a) air-conditioned b) air-conditioning
   c) air-conditional d) air-condition
6. The accountant's job is very .... They're responsible for huge sums of money.
   a) stress b) stressful
   c) stresses d) stressed
7. There are lots of actions stuck in my .... related to the accident.
   a) memorial b) memory
   c) reminding d) memorising
8. Hey! Have we met before? You look familiar .... me.
   a) to b) with
   c) by d) for
9. You should study hard this year. Failing again will have bad ....
   a) sequences b) cures
   c) positions d) consequences
10. Nobody can cross the .... without an official permission.
    a) aboard b) broad
    c) border d) board





Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... vehicles are clean and save energy on a big scale.
   a) Hybrid b) Used c) Combined d) Ancient
2. The villa is provided with a/an .... system, so you won't need fans.
   a) air-conditioning b) robot c) engine d) wind
3. My father has an important .... in our area. All the neighbours respect him.
   a) location b) position c) site d) invention
4. The abbreviation "GPS" is short for Global .... System.
   a) Populating b) Positioning c) Pressing d) Project
5. The world has changed quickly since the .... of the internet.
   a) foundation b) navigation c) discovery d) invention
6. I waved to the taxi, but the driver couldn't stop as he was going in the opposite ....
   a) destination b) location c) direction d) situation
7. Although my grandfather is over 80 years old, his .... is still strong. He can remember things well.
   a) health b) hearing c) familiarity d) memory
8. There has been a conference in Egypt to discuss .... environmental issues.
   a) distant b) global c) national d) communicative
9. I bought my son a tricycle. It's easy-to-use with its three ....
   a) legs b) feet c) wheels d) directions
10. I'm very interested in your idea - Shall we .... it over lunch?
    a) argue b) discuss c) avoid d) refuse
11. A long time ago, trains with steam .... were used by people to travel from one place to another.
    a) battery b) engine c) robot d) instrument
12. I fell off my chair, but .... nobody noticed that.
    a) easily b) fortunately c) sadly d) unfortunately
13. The safety procedures إجراءات had been ignored and led to some tragic ....
    a) reasons b) consequences c) benefits d) constants
14. There appears to be a problem with the patient respiratory .... He can't breathe well.
    a) system b) way c) method d) organisation
15. A .... is a machine that is controlled by a computer. *(Longman)*
    a) raise b) radio c) robot d) rabbit
16. GPS provides the fastest and most accurate method for mariners بحارة to ....
    a) communicate b) navigate c) connect d) negotiate

17 My mobile is not working. I don't think the battery is ....
a) charging b) connecting c) communicating d) positioning

18 The internet makes life easier. You can buy things online with a/an .... of a button. (Longman)
a) attack b) push c) click d) delete

19 Can the .... get into the deep rooms of the Pyramids to explore them?
a) technology b) discovery c) internet d) robot

20 Amany is .... speak three languages.
a) able b) capable c) able to d) capable of

21 From our point of view, we don't see how these changes will be .... to our country.
a) stressful b) familiar b) beneficial d) boring

22 I was shocked when I saw the .... on the post. Many people didn't like my opinion.
a) movements b) communications c) comments d) directions

23 Is there a nearby .... station? I want to fuel my car.
a) petrol b) water c) electric d) electrical

24 There are a lot of .... of having healthy food and doing exercises.
a) tickets b) benefits c) machines d) reasons

25 Uncle Omar has many .... on his farm. He uses them in moving and farming.
a) vehicles b) instruments c) tools d) connections

26 Would you like to go .... through the mountains of Sinai?
a) missing b) wrong c) hiking d) fighting

27 You look .... I think you are the organiser of the last party, aren't you?
a) strange b) terrible c) unfamiliar d) familiar

28 When you go around by using a bike, it means that you .... around the town.
a) drive b) cycle c) walk d) recycle

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

29 Hopefully, I will .... my exams and get a scholarship منحة دراسية abroad.
a) lose b) pass c) succeed d) pass in e) succeed in

30 The television was his only source of entertainment. The synonyms of the word "entertainment" are "..............".
a) punishment b) development c) amusement d) enjoyment e) boredom

31 The crew .... are very worried about the coming storm.
a) abroad b) on abroad c) aboard d) on board e) broad

32 You shouldn't .... nervous quickly as it really affects health badly.
a) become b) go c) make d) do e) get

33 The voice on the phone sounded familiar. The antonyms of familiar are "..............". (Longman)
a) unknown b) clear c) beloved d) strong e) strange

B Language

If Conditionals (zero – first – second) حالات If الشرطية

Note these sentences. Can you get the rule?

- If you heat ice, it melts. (It is a fact.) حقيقة
- If you come early, you will meet the manager. (It is probable.) محتمل
- If he arrived early, he would catch the bus. (It is not possible.) غير محتمل

1 Zero Conditional الحالة الصفرية

If + Present Simple مضارع بسيط + Present Simple مضارع بسيط

- تستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق والأشياء المنطقية والعادات الشخصية:

- If we freeze water, it turns into ice.
- If wood is burnt, it gives off much smoke.
- If I wake up early, I feel more energetic.

لاحظ

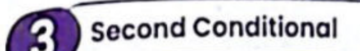
- من الممكن استخدام When بدلًا من If في الحالة الصفرية.
- When you heat ice, it melts.
- تستخدم الحالة الصفرية في حالة وجود ظروف التكرار مثل: (always/usually/sometimes/often/...) في جملة جواب الشرط.
- If I feel hungry, I usually eat something till I arrive home.

2 First Conditional الحالة الأولى

If + Present Simple مضارع بسيط + will/can/may + inf.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث من الممكن أو المحتمل حدوثه في المستقبل.

- If you study hard, you will get high marks.
- Dalia is ill. If she is better tomorrow, she will come to school.



لاحظ

- فى الحالة الأولى من الممكن أن يأتى جواب الشرط على هيئة:

١) فعل أمر (فى حالة عدم وجود فاعل).

▸ If you meet Noha, give her the money.

٢) طلب.

▸ If there is a doctor on the train, could he come to the front, please?

٣) نصيحة (should + inf).

▸ If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.

- إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة أو شىء منطقى ولكن تم الإشارة إلى موقف معين بها (عن طريق تحديد وقت/وجود اسم إشارة/صفة ملكية) نستخدم الحالة الأولى ليست الصفرية.

▸ If we add olives to pasta, it tastes delicious. (I always do so.)

▸ If we add olives to your pasta, it will taste salty. (I think so.)

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you put water in the freezer, it .... into ice.
   a) turned　　b) turns
   c) would turn　　d) would have turned
2. If you watch too much television, you .... your eyes.
   a) will damage　　b) would damage
   c) won't damage　　d) would have damaged
3. If you .... all night, you will be exhausted at the time of the test.
   a) had studied　　b) study
   c) studied　　d) have studied
4. I always .... a severe headache if I spend much time on the computer.
   a) will get　　b) got
   c) am getting　　d) get
5. If we heat the milk you bought today, ...?
   a) will it boil　　b) has it boiled
   c) does it boil　　d) could it boil

3 Second Conditional الحالة الثانية

If	+	Past Simple ماض بسيط	+	would/could/might + inf.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن مواقف غير محتملة الحدوث فى الحاضر أو المستقبل.

▸ If she treated her students well, they would love her.
This means: She doesn't treat her students well, so they don't love her.

▸ If he slept early, he could get up early.
This means: He doesn't sleep early, so he doesn't get up early.

- تستخدم أيضًا للتعبير عن النصيحة.

If I were you, I would (n't) + inf. = You should + inf.

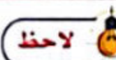
▸ If I were you, I would accept the job.
This means: You should accept the job.

▸ If I were you, I wouldn't waste my money like that.
This means: You shouldn't waste your money like that.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن المواقف التخيلية.

▸ If I were a superman, I would fly to Europe to attend the final match.

▸ If you found one million pound in the street, dad, what would you do?



لاحظ فى الحالة الثانية يمكن استخدام were مع جميع الضمائر (المفرد والجمع).

▸ If she were a princess, she would be much happier.
This means: She isn't a princess, so she won't be much happier.

▸ If I were rich, I would build a palace.
This means: I am not rich, so I won't build a palace.

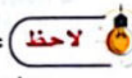
4 Third Conditional الحالة الثالثة

If	+	Past Perfect ماض تام	+	would/could/might + have + P.P.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن مواقف حدثت/لم تحدث فى الماضى. (الندم/اللوم)

▸ If you had gone to the cinema with us, you would have enjoyed your time.
This means: You didn't go to the cinema, so you didn't enjoy the film.

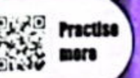
▸ If she hadn't passed the exam, she wouldn't have gone to university.
This means: She passed the exam, so she went to university.



لاحظ عند وجود كلمة تدل على الماضى لابد من استخدام الحالة الثالثة حتى وإن كانت الجملة فيها حقيقة.

▸ If you had put water in the freezer yesterday, it would have turned into ice.





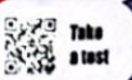
Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you mix yellow and blue, you .... green.
   a) get b) would get c) got d) would have got
2. If we .... hard, we will win next week's match.
   a) train b) will train c) trained d) had trained
3. When I am shy, I usually ....
   a) smile b) smiles c) will smile d) would smile
4. If she comes early, she .... her boss before leaving.
   a) is meeting b) will meet c) had to meet d) would meet
5. What .... if you don't find your dictionary?
   a) do you do b) would you do c) will you do d) did you do
6. If Wafaa .... a baby girl, she will call her Mariam.
   a) have b) will have c) had d) has
7. I would be working in Italy if I .... Italian well. *(Longman)*
   a) have spoken b) speak c) would speak d) spoke
8. If you .... smoking, you might feel healthier.
   a) stop b) stopped c) didn't stop d) had stopped
9. If you are hungry, ... another sandwich.
   a) will take b) take c) don't take d) taking
10. If Noha .... the game, she would be happy.
    a) was winning b) won c) wins d) has won
11. If you .... earlier, you would have caught the train.
    a) had left b) leave c) left d) would leave
12. If you see an accident, ... the police at once. *(Longman)*
    a) telephone b) will telephone c) should telephone d) must telephone
13. If you reached your goals, ... very happy?
    a) you would be b) you will be c) would you have been d) would you be
14. If water comes into contact with electricity, there .... a shock.
    a) will be b) would be c) is d) may be
15. She .... to the party if we had invited her.
    a) will come b) might come c) might have come d) comes
16. Maha wouldn't come with us if her mother .... well.
    a) didn't feel b) felt c) hadn't felt d) doesn't feel
17. If I were you, I .... in a different way. *(Longman)*
    a) have behaved b) would behave c) behaved d) will behave
18. If I had known more about computers, I .... you with your problem.
    a) help b) will help c) would help d) would have helped

19. If they .... another chance, they would get the first prize.
    a) gave b) are given c) had given d) were given
20. If I .... they were honest, I would gladly lend them the money.
    a) had known b) have known c) know d) knew
21. I .... angry if it turns out that you are wrong.
    a) will be b) am c) would be d) was
22. If she beat her friend at chess, she .... very happy.
    a) is b) will be c) would be d) would have been
23. I wouldn't achieve my dreams if she .... me.
    a) had helped b) helped c) hadn't helped d) didn't help
24. If he cut his finger with that knife, it .... terribly. *(Longman)*
    a) hurts b) will hurt c) would hurt d) hurt
25. If he .... at the meeting early, he would have the chance to meet the boss.
    a) had arrived b) has arrived c) arrives d) arrived
26. If he hadn't driven his car madly, he .... such an accident.
    a) wouldn't have b) didn't have c) wouldn't have had d) would have
27. Ramy would have been better if he .... his medicine regularly.
    a) has taken b) took c) had taken d) hadn't taken
28. What .... if he had left the meeting?
    a) will happen b) would happen c) had happened d) would have happened
29. If you had an invitation to the party, you .... to attend easily.
    a) would allow b) would have been allowed c) would be allowed d) would have been allowing
30. Would Rania understand the lesson if she .... the summary?
    a) reads b) read c) had read d) will read
31. If I wasn't busy, I would come to your party. This means that I .... busy. *(Longman)*
    a) am not b) am c) was not d) was
32. If I were rich, I would give money to charities. This means ....
    a) I am rich, so I will give them money
    b) I am rich, and I won't give them money
    c) I am not rich, so I won't give them money
    d) I am poor, and I will give them money
33. I will do the homework tomorrow if I have time. This means ....
    a) there is a possibility to do the homework
    b) I am busy, so I will do the homework
    c) I won't do the homework because I don't have time
    d) it is impossible to do the homework
34. He isn't a good player because he doesn't train well. This means that if he trained well, ...
    a) he would be a good player b) he will be a good player
    c) he is a good player d) he should be a good player
35. If I had won the match, I would have won the prize money. This means ....
    a) it is impossible to win the match b) it is possible to win the match
    c) I lost the match d) I will probably win the match

Test yourself



Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 I think Ali was the right person to .... the discussion of that project.
a) say b) lead c) annoy d) argue

2 The government is expected to make a/an .... about the crime to the press.
a) consequence b) direction c) statement d) cause

3 Can you ....in the new cities using Google Maps?
a) interact b) navigate c) create d) build

4 The drivers had to drive in the opposite .... as the right one was blocked.
a) position b) location c) method d) direction

5 My father sold our car, so we had to use public transport to get ....
a) around b) across c) better d) over

6 The cause of the accident was that I lost control over the ....
a) vehicle b) internet c) link d) map

7 My father used to .... a bicycle to work every day.
a) control b) navigate c) drive d) ride

8 If you want to watch the new film, just .... on this link.
a) concentrate b) keen c) stand d) click

9 Wafaa says that the dishwasher is the most wonderful .... as it helps her a lot.
a) navigation b) invention c) research d) design

10 If you want to know more information about the museum, you can use the ....
a) navigator b) position c) internet d) entertainment

11 My father's disease was a .... experience for the whole family.
a) careful b) stressful c) personal d) relaxing

12 Many believe that poverty is one of the .... of overpopulation.
a) inquiries b) requirements c) consequences d) qualities

13 Our school team are meeting today to .... our school projects.
a) navigate b) think c) discuss d) argue

14 We certainly don't lead a life of .... but we are not poor either.
a) luxury b) poverty c) familiarity d) extremes

15 I hope the prices of important goods will go .... soon.
a) up b) away c) ahead d) down

Language

16 If you add six to eight, you .... fourteen.
a) would get b) might get c) get d) got

17 If they had had another chance, they .... the first prize.
a) would get b) will get c) may get d) would have got

18 What will you do if you .... by a snake?
a) bite b) will bite c) are bitten d) were bitten

19 If a plant .... regularly, it dies.
a) doesn't water b) isn't watered c) wasn't watered d) don't water

20 If I spend too long on the computer, I usually .... a headache.
a) will get b) would get c) got d) get

21 If you .... the bill before Friday, we will disconnect the service.
a) paid b) don't pay c) didn't pay d) pay

22 If you .... Ali, could you tell him to come to the wedding party?
a) ring b) rang c) had rung d) rings

23 If you throw that stone into water, it ....
a) should sink b) would sink c) will sink d) would have sunk

24 What .... if he had told them about our problems?
a) will happen b) would happen c) has happened d) would have happened

25 If he hadn't helped me with some money, I .... able to buy a new flat.
a) wouldn't be b) will be c) would have been d) wouldn't have been

26 If I .... ill, I would join you to the club.
a) were b) hadn't been c) weren't d) had been

27 If I .... him yesterday, I would have asked him to come with me.
a) have seen b) saw c) was seeing d) had seen

28 If you see our teacher, ... to ask him about the date of the exam.
a) will remember b) remembered c) remembers d) remember

29 If she .... a child, she wouldn't have to adopt one.
a) has b) had had c) had d) has had

30 If it went on raining for much longer, the river ....
a) would flood b) will flood c) floods d) flooded

Study — Watch a video — Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

app (application) (n)	تطبيق على التليفون المحمول	quiz (n)	اختبار قصير
chat (v) – ted (n)	يدردش/دردشة	translation (n)	ترجمة
*feedback (n)	التغذية الراجعة (رد الفعل لشيء ما)		

★ Can I know the feedback of my homework, teacher?

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

advantages (n)	مزايا	negative (adj)	سلبى
comment (n)	تعليق	notebook (n)	مُفَكِّرَة
completely (adv)	تماماً	positive (adj)	إيجابى
cost (v) (n)	يتكلف/تكلفة	remember (v) (ed)	يتذكر
device (n)	جهاز/أداة	smartphone (n)	الهاتف الذكى
disadvantages (n)	عيوب	software (n)	برامج الكمبيوتر
exact (adj)	مضبوط	stress (n)	ضغط عصبى
human being (n)	إنسان	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
improve (v) – d	يتحسن	understanding (n)	فهم

Workbook Vocabulary

admit (v) – ted	يعترف بـ	details (n)	بيانات/تفاصيل
argue (v) – d	يجادل	documentary (n)	فيلم/برنامج وثائقى
careful (adj)	حريص	download (v) – ed (n)	يحمل/تحميل
carefully (adv)	بعناية/بحرص	extreme (adj)	مبالغ فيه/شديد
century (n)	قرن (مائة عام)	guess (v) – ed	يخمن
collect (v) – ed	يجمع	imagine (v) – d	يتخيل
memories (n)	ذكريات	share (v) – d	يشارك
personal (adj)	شخصى	studies (n)	دراسات
printing press (n)	آلة طباعة	surprising (adj)	مدهش
progress (n) (v) – ed	تقدم/يتقدم	worried (adj)	قلق

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have lots of good .... about my childhood on grandpa's farm.
   a) memories b) memorials c) monuments d) souvenirs
2. My new car .... me a lot of money. It is really modern with many options.
   a) led b) cashed c) paid d) cost
3. I like to write everything my teacher says in my ....
   a) card b) notebook c) noticeboard d) cardboard
4. Nearly all people around the world have .... to go online which made the globe a small village.
   a) smartphones b) smart labs c) smart cars d) smart robots
5. My students are always given a four-question .... at the beginning of the lesson.
   a) app b) quiz c) chat d) feedback
6. During my last stay in Switzerland, I .... a room with a respected doctor.
   a) divided b) parted c) cheered d) shared
7. The police want to know when you left the building ....
   a) extremely b) absolutely c) doubtfully d) exactly
8. I study English and Arabic hard; I'd like to work in the .... field.
   a) translation b) application c) feedback d) progress
9. When I lost my phone, I couldn't restore the old .... with my close friends.
   a) information b) chat c) medicine d) press
10. Try to give positive .... to your team members to get the best of them.
    a) punishment b) progress c) exam d) feedback

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

for or against	مع أو ضد	do a quiz	يجيب عن اختبار قصير
change into	يتغير إلى	smile at	يبتسم لـ
effect on	تأثير على	social network accounts	حسابات مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
feel about	يشعر بشأن	turn on his phone	يشغل هاتفه
in conclusion	في الختام/وخلاصة القول	think about	يفكر في
summary of	ملخص لـ	travel from ... to ...	يسافر من ... إلى ...
lose interest in	يفقد الاهتمام في	type of	نوع من
make comments	يعقب/يعلق	useful for	مفيد لـ
make notes	يدون ملاحظات	worried about	قلق بشأن
in detail	بالتفصيل		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
admit	يعترف	admission	اعتراف	------------------	
argue*	يجادل	argument	جدال	argumentative	جدلي
care	يهتم	care	اهتمام	careful	حريص
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جماعي
comment	يعلق	comment commentary	تعليق تعليق	------------------	
complete	يكمل	completion	تكملة	complete	كامل
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative	خيالي
surprise	يدهش	surprise	دهشة	surprising surprised	مدهش مندهش
understand	يفهم	understanding	فهم	understandable understanding	معقول/مفهوم متفهم/متجاوب
worry	يقلق	worry	قلق	worried	قلق

- Sam always **argues** with his little brother.
- The **argument** about choosing a film lasted for hours.
- The **argumentative** essay has two different opinions. ★

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
admit	يعترف	confess/acknowledge	deny/conceal	ينكر
advantages	مزايا	merits/profits	disadvantages/demerits	عيوب
argue	يجادل	debate/discuss/dispute	agree/harmonise	يتفق
careful	حريص	cautious/attentive	careless/reckless	مهمل/متهور
completely	تمامًا	totally/entirely	incompletely/partially	جزئيًا/غير كامل
extreme	مبالغ فيه/شديد	severe/acute	moderate/mild	معتدل
personal	شخصي	private/individual	public/common	عام
surprising	مدهش	astonishing/amazing/unexpected	usual/expected	معتاد/متوقع
understanding	فهم	grasping/comprehension	misunderstanding/misinterpretation	إساءة الفهم
worried	قلق	anxious/upset	calm/relaxed	هادئ/مريح

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I asked my father if he was .... the new educational system. He said he liked it.
   a) with or without b) for or about c) against and for d) for or against
2. Never tell anyone about your .... information on the internet.
   a) personnel b) personality c) personalise d) personal
3. Our teacher wanted us to .... a quiz about the last lesson.
   a) make b) do c) give d) design
4. The group publishes a monthly summary .... their research.
   a) of b) for c) at d) with
5. We all know that smoking has a bad .... on our health.
   a) affect b) effect c) effective d) affection
6. The thieves were taken to prison after they had admitted robbing the bank. The synonym of "admitted" is ....
   a) denied b) refused c) confessed d) concealed
7. I don't like those who argue with other people for nothing important. The opposite of "argue" is ....
   a) agree b) debate c) discuss d) dispute
8. I want you to read this article and .... notes, and we'll discuss them together.
   a) make b) do c) build d) discover

9 Befriending your children makes it easier to understand them. The synonym of the word "understanding" is ....

a) misunderstanding b) misinterpretation
c) raising d) grasping

10 Vegetables are useful .... our health.

a) for b) in c) of d) with

Reading Text

I like technology a lot and I use it every day. It helps me find information for my school work and I can buy things easily online. But technology isn't always a good thing. It can lead to[1] a lot of stress[2] and it can stop people enjoying their free time.

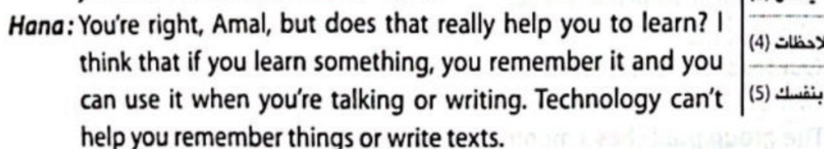
Karim

I don't know what I would do without[3] technology! It makes life easier[4] and you can do things so much faster. And how would we travel without technology? You can travel from Cairo to London in just five hours in a plane!

Dina

(1) يؤدي إلى
(2) ضغط/توتر
(3) بدون
(4) أسهل

Listening Text



Amal: Technology is so useful when you're learning something, Hana! You can find the information you need really quickly. If you don't understand a word when you're reading a text[1], you can find the translation[2] for it.

Hana: You're right, Amal, but does that really help you to learn? I think that if you learn something, you remember it and you can use it when you're talking or writing. Technology can't help you remember things or write texts.

Amal: Well, not exactly, but if you use a language app, for example, you can do quizzes about new words to help you remember them. And there are apps that give you feedback on your writing so you can do it better next time.

Hana: I understand what you're saying. That's just not the way I learn. I prefer[3] using a pen and paper and making notes[4] in my notebook. I don't need a smartphone.

Amal: That's OK. Everyone's different. For me, the best thing about using technology to learn is that you can chat to people from all over the world online. That's really nice when you're doing your homework on your own[5]. If you have questions, they'll help you.

(1) نص القراءة
(2) ترجمة
(3) يفضل
(4) يدون ملاحظات
(5) بنفسك

Workbook Text

Is technology always a good thing?

This question has been asked for many years but has anyone found an answer? On the one hand[1], there are always dangers with new technology. More than two thousand years ago, a Greek philosopher[2] called Socrates was worried that writing things down would stop students using their memories[3]. In the 16th century[4], following the invention of the printing press[5], a Swiss philosopher called Conrad Gessner thought that books would give people too much information. And in the 20th century, many people thought that the radio would make it difficult for students to think about their studies[6].

On the other hand, technology usually offers[7] some advantages[8].

Books and writing are seen as positive[9] things today and most people think that their advantages are more important than any disadvantages[10].

In conclusion[11], perhaps it takes many years before we can see clearly whether new technology is good or bad.

(1) من ناحية
(2) فيلسوف
(3) ذكريات
(4) قرن (مائة عام)
(5) آلة طابعة
(6) دراسات
(7) يعرض
(8) مزايا
(9) إيجابي
(10) سلبيات
(11) في الختام

Video Script

Will people need to learn foreign languages in the future? Or will technology speak them for us? Some people think that if apps and translation software[1] continue to improve[2] over the next ten to twenty years, language lessons will become a thing of the past. But can an app or a piece of software really communicate like a person can?

They can definitely[3] translate words, or even whole sentences, from one language to another. But they can't smile[4] at the person you're talking to and show them that you really mean what you're saying.

When you speak in a foreign[5] language, you speak to another human being and human beings find it difficult to become friends with smartphones or computers – we are programmed[6] to prefer other human beings. That's why we can feel sure that learning languages still has a future.

0:00

(1) برنامج ترجمة
(2) يحسن
(3) بالتأكيد
(4) يبتسم
(5) أجنبي
(6) مبرمج على

Notes on Vocabulary

Can we say, "I go home by my car"?

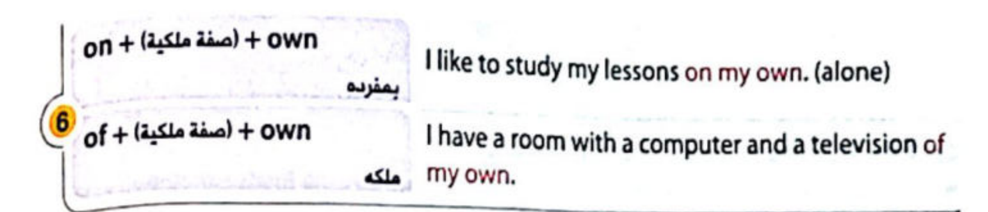
everyday (adj.) يومى (صفة/يأتى بعدها اسم)	We all suffer from the problems of everyday life.
1 **every day** (adv.) يوميًا (حال)	Ali travels to Alexandria to work every day.

by مع كل وسائل المواصلات بدون فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية)	- I travelled abroad by plane. - He went to work by car.
2 **on** مع وسائل المواصلات (التى يمكن الحركة داخلها) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية)	- I went to Tanta on a train. - I go to school on foot. لاحظ استخدام كلمة on مع foot
in مع وسائل المواصلات (التى لا يمكن الحركة داخلها) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية)	- I go to school in my car. - She goes to Luxor in a taxi.

3 **number + hundred/ thousand/ million** لا تضاف s الجمع	Buying a villa costs 5 million pounds.

decade (10 years) العقد	We all think that air-conditioning makes life easier.
4 **century (100 years)** القرن	Every century we have a lot of inventions which changes the future.
millennium (1000 years) الألفية	The generation in the third millennium are totally remarkable.

(have) the right to + inf. لديه الحق فى	We have the right to live well in a clean environment.
5 **(be) right to + inf.** يكون محقًا فى	We are right to think that he is very clever.



on + (صفة ملكية) + own بمفرده	I like to study my lessons on my own. (alone)
6 **of + (صفة ملكية) + own** ملكه	I have a room with a computer and a television of my own.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I usually go to big markets to get my .... needs.
   a) every day b) day
   c) every days d) everyday
2. Children .... the right to enjoy their lives.
   a) are b) have
   c) do d) make
3. I collected ten .... pounds from my relatives for Omar's operation.
   a) thousands b) thousand
   c) thousand's d) thousands'
4. Wael always goes to university .... the bus.
   a) on b) in
   c) by d) with
5. There has been much technology in the 21st ....
   a) millennium b) decade
   c) century d) period
6. Mazen does his homework .... his own.
   a) at b) by
   c) on d) of
7. I dream of having a business .... my own. I no longer want to be an employee.
   a) at b) by
   c) on d) of



Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Spending time on the phone .... with friends is my favourite activity.
   a) commenting b) understanding c) chatting d) penning
2. The new phone .... me a lot of money because I bought it from abroad.
   a) priced b) lost c) cost d) estimated
3. My brother is specialised in .... from French into English.
   a) translation b) argument c) imagination d) documentary
4. There have been major new developments in satellite ....
   a) technology b) sociology c) psychology d) phonology
5. Doing exercises and having healthy food have a positive .... on our health.
   a) affect b) effect c) account d) argument
6. Some people prefer to .... files from trusted websites only.
   a) download b) load c) upload d) collect
7. Do you agree that the internet is the best ....?
   a) recovery b) discovery c) invention d) exploration
8. Ali was anxious متوتر while doing the weekly ...., although there were only 5 questions.
   a) app b) quiz c) notebook d) feedback
9. The employee got great .... from his boss as he was very active.
   a) stress b) argument c) admission d) feedback
10. Do you have any .... to make about the cause of the disaster?
    a) review b) chat c) documentary d) comment
11. There is a link between the website and the ...., so you can use your smartphone.
    a) chat b) app c) capital d) click
12. Most students are usually under a lot of .... during their exams.
    a) stressful b) stress c) stressed d) treasure
13. Most students are usually .... during their exams.
    a) stressful b) stress c) stressed d) treasure
14. Exams are usually .... for most students.
    a) stressful b) stress c) stressed d) treasure
15. To .... your English pronunciation نطق, you could do a course.
    a) prove b) improve c) remove d) progress
16. I have some important educational .... on my mobile. They help me a lot in my work.
    a) pros b) apps c) hardware d) labs

17. I was very happy when I received many positive .... on my new video.
    a) passages b) dialogues c) comments d) chats
18. It is a good thing to .... your mistakes and try to correct them.
    a) admit b) share c) deny d) argue
19. The temperature was 45 degrees and I couldn't bear that .... heat.
    a) pleasing b) extreme c) imaginative d) extremely
20. A: Dad, how many years are there in a ....? B: 10 years.
    a) millennium b) decade c) century d) fortnight
21. Watching .... about volcanoes and earthquakes is my favourite hobby.
    a) documentaries b) memories c) plays d) documents
22. The research may lead to a better .... of how the disease develops.
    a) understanding b) comment c) translation d) imagination
23. I'm sure you will solve this problem .... your own. *(Longman)*
    a) on b) from c) with d) by
24. I asked my daughter to smile .... the camera while taking the photo.
    a) on b) with c) about d) at
25. Having healthy food and enough sleep is very useful .... health.
    a) with b) at c) with d) of
26. I prefer using a pen and paper to .... notes while I'm studying so I don't get distracted. *(Longman)*
    a) look b) do c) read d) make
27. Being a father and a family supporter made me .... interest in going with my friends for holidays.
    a) gain b) lose c) do d) make
28. When we change words of a language .... another one, this means we translate them.
    a) for b) with c) into d) by

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

29. Can you tell me what happened ....? I want to know everything.
    a) in brief b) briefly c) in detail d) in short e) accurately
30. Technology helps us .... about everything easily and quickly.
    a) learning b) learn c) to learning d) with learn e) to learn
31. The accused man admitted to stealing the car. The synonyms of the word "admitted" are "..............".
    a) denied b) confused c) disagreed d) confessed e) acknowledged
32. I completely forgot that it was his birthday yesterday. The antonyms of the word "completely" are "..............".
    a) totally b) incompletely c) usually d) partially e) calmly

B Language

"If" Alternatives بدائل "If"

1. Unless لو لم + جملة مثبتة = If + جملة منفية

▸ Unless he ran fast, he would miss the bus. = If he didn't run fast, he would miss the bus.

2. Without بدون + noun/v-ing = But for لولا + noun

▸ Without studying hard, you will fail.

▸ Without/But for his cleverness, he wouldn't succeed.

3. In case of/In the event of فى حالة + noun

▸ In case of emergency, call 122.

4. If = Provided (that) بشرط أن = Providing بشرط = As long as طالما = On condition that بشرط أن

▸ I will get high marks (provided/as long as/if) I study hard.

5. If it weren't for + noun , subj. + would + inf.

▸ If it weren't for doctors, many people would die. (الحالة الثانية)

= Without doctors, many people would die.

6. If it hadn't been for + noun , subj. + would + have + P.P.

▸ If it hadn't been for his help, I would have failed the exam. (الحالة الثالثة)

= Without his help, I would have failed the exam.

7. Suppose that افترض أن / Supposing that افترض أن / Imagine that تخيل أن , past simple ماض بسيط , would + inf.

▸ (Suppose/Supposing/Imagine) that you won the prize, what would you do?

Important Notes

• من الممكن استخدام Should بدلاً من If فى بداية الجملة فى الحالتين الأولى والثانية، وتكون القاعدة كالآتى:

Should + subj. + inf. ...., subj. + will/can/may + inf.

▸ Should Mona come early, I will tell her the news.

= If Mona comes early, I will tell her the news.

Should + subj. + inf. ...., subj. + would/could/might + inf.

▸ Should Sara sleep early, she would get up early.

= If Sara slept early, she would get up early.

• من الممكن استخدام Were بدلاً من If فى بداية الجملة فى الحالة الثانية، وتكون القاعدة كالآتى:

Were + subj. + to + inf. ...., subj. + would/could/might + inf.

▸ Were Rania to run faster, she would catch the bus.

= If Rania ran faster, she would catch the bus.

Were + subj. + adj./n. ...., subj. + would/could/might + inf.

▸ Were he clever, he would get high marks.

= If he were clever, he would get high marks.

▸ Were I a doctor, I could save my mother's life. = If I were a doctor, ...

• من الممكن استخدام Had بدلاً من If فى بداية الجملة فى الحالة الثالثة، وتكون القاعدة كالآتى:

Had + subj. + (not) P.P. ...., subj. + would/could/might + have + P.P.

▸ Had I trained hard, I would have won the cup.

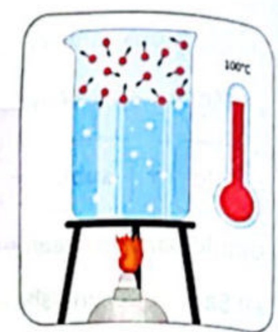
= If I had trained hard, I would have won the cup.







If we heat water, it boils.





If you come early, you will get a reward.





If I were a superhero, I would help people in need.





If I had studied hard, I would have succeeded.



Practice



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They will lose the match .... they train hard.
   a) unless b) as long as c) without d) in case of
2. Without .... our best, we wouldn't pass our exams with high marks.
   a) we did b) doing c) to do d) we have done
3. If it .... for your help, I wouldn't have succeeded.
   a) hadn't b) isn't c) hadn't been d) weren't
4. Marwa would have been fatter .... she had eaten much.
   a) if b) unless c) but for d) in case of
5. .... they had the required qualities, they wouldn't get the job.
   a) Unless b) Provide c) As long as d) Supposed
6. You will miss the lecture .... you come on time. *(Longman)*
   a) if b) unless c) because d) in case of
7. .... you had finished the project, you wouldn't have been free to travel.
   a) If b) Without c) Unless d) Provided that
8. .... we gone to the club, we would have been happier.
   a) If b) Unless c) Were d) Had
9. We are going to start painting the house tomorrow .... it doesn't rain.
   a) unless b) provided c) without d) when
10. .... for the Nile, Egypt would be a desert land.
    a) If it were b) If it had been c) If it hadn't been d) If it weren't
11. .... Rashed missed the bus, he would have taken a taxi.
    a) If b) Were c) Unless d) Had
12. .... Mr Sameh find a good job, he will move to a new flat.
    a) If b) Were c) Should d) When
13. .... your son a doctor, he could help us.
    a) If b) Should c) Had d) Were
14. .... Hana be clever, she would answer the question.
    a) Were b) Had c) Should d) If
15. Unless he had followed my advice, he .... all his money.
    a) would have lost b) wouldn't have lost
    c) wouldn't lose d) won't lose
16. Had they not taken Mona to hospital, she ....
    a) might have died b) might die
    c) will die d) could die
17. Radwa wouldn't have been a doctor .... she had studied hard.
    a) unless b) without c) in case of d) if
18. I'll swim in the sea today .... it's windy at the beach.
    a) in case b) provided c) in case of d) unless

19 .... he found the suitable place, he wouldn't have stayed in this city.
a) If b) Had c) Should d) Were

20 If you feel the car brakes aren't OK, don't move the car and .... your mechanic at once. (Longman)
a) call b) will call c) would call d) to call

21 Unless he had gone to university, he .... in the factory.
a) would work b) would have worked
c) will work d) had worked

22 Supposing you won the prize, how .... feel?
a) would you b) will you c) you would d) you will

23 Had he read yesterday's newspaper, he .... everything.
a) would know b) wouldn't know
c) would have known d) wouldn't have known

24 You won't be allowed to enter the club .... you hold your membership card. (Longman)
a) when b) if c) unless d) without

25 Should he study hard, he .... tomorrow's exam.
a) won't pass b) passes
c) would pass d) would have passed

26 Were my parents richer, I .... a foreign university.
a) can join b) join c) will join d) would join

27 Were Mona to be arrested, she .... any more.
a) wouldn't steal b) would steal
c) would have stolen d) wouldn't have stolen

28 I wouldn't have found my wallet without ....
a) helping b) being helped c) helped d) he helped me

29 .... as fast as they could, they wouldn't catch the train.
a) If they ran b) Were they to run
c) In case of running d) Unless they ran

30 .... hard, he would get high marks.
a) If he studies b) Is he to study
c) Were he to study d) Should he studies

31 Without Ahmed's help, I wouldn't have got the job. This means that ....
a) I got the job because Ahmed helped me
b) Ahmed refused to help me, so I didn't get the job
c) I got the job although Ahmed refused to help me
d) Ahmed helped me, but I didn't get the job

32 I will attend the party in case there is an invitation. This means that ....
a) I won't attend the party
b) I will attend the party when there is an invitation
c) I will attend the party and wait for the invitation
d) I won't wait for the invitation to attend the party

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 Having a lot of work and responsibilities is a true .... on all of us.
a) press b) mixture c) express d) stress

2 Receiving positive and negative .... from our customers is very important for our promotion.
a) stress b) argument c) admittance d) feedback

3 I think his scooter was .... destroyed after the accident.
a) complete b) completely c) carefully d) exact

4 My friend is an expert in the 15th .... Italian art.
a) decade b) millennium c) century d) technology

5 Please tell me what has happened in brief, there is no need for the ....
a) details b) studies c) shares d) stress

6 I and one of my close friends go to school .... my father's car.
a) by b) on c) at d) in

7 The poor in any country .... the right to live well.
a) are b) take c) have d) has

8 A/An .... number of teenagers finish school without being able to read and write.
a) imaginative b) personal c) surprising d) careful

9 They made a TV .... about Mount Fuji volcano.
a) summary b) documentary c) admittance d) details

10 Have you got a dictionary .... on your phone?
a) quiz b) app c) chat d) documentary

11 We spent the whole night .... about what we did last week.
a) looking b) chatting c) searching d) caring

12 The mobile is one of the .... that we can't do without nowadays.
a) vehicles b) machines c) devices d) apartments

13 All the current events all over the world can lead .... the start of a world war.
a) to b) at c) for d) with

14 Prof. Ahmed always uploads summaries .... his lectures on his Youtube channel.
a) with b) at c) for d) of

15 Befriending your children will create a better .... of the way they think.
a) agreement b) comment c) imagination d) understanding

Language

16 You can borrow this book .... as you look after it.
a) provided b) if c) as long d) on condition

17 You can't go into the museum without .... a ticket first.
a) buying b) you buy c) bought d) buy

18 Mother says we can watch TV on .... that we do our homework first.
a) condition b) provided c) long as d) if

19 .... that you lived by the sea, what would you do every day?
a) Condition b) As long c) Imagine d) Supposed

20 .... heat and light from the sun, there would be no life on earth.
a) But for b) With c) In case of d) Unless

21 If it .... for your help, I would find it difficult to understand my lessons.
a) had been b) hadn't been c) were d) weren't

22 You will be fired .... losing the following match.
a) unless b) without c) in case d) in case of

23 If it hadn't been for doing your best, you .... got the job.
a) won't have b) will have c) wouldn't have d) would have

24 .... you go now, you would catch the train.
a) Should b) If c) Unless d) In case

25 .... I a millionaire, I'd start projects to employ young people.
a) If b) Unless c) Were d) Had

26 If it .... for the crime he committed, he wouldn't have gone to prison.
a) weren't b) hadn't been c) wasn't d) isn't

27 .... you invest your capital رأس مال well, you won't make a profit.
a) If b) Without c) In case d) Unless

28 .... a car, he would have given me a lift.
a) Should he have b) Did he have c) Had he d) Had he had

29 .... she arrive early, she'll be able to meet the customers before the meeting.
a) Unless b) Should c) If d) In case

30 .... raining, we won't be able to finish the game.
a) If it didn't stop b) Unless it stops
c) Should it stop d) If it stopped





للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات

Writing tips

When we talk about the advantages and disadvantages of something:

1. We show the main ideas in the introduction.
2. One body paragraph contains the advantages and another one contains the disadvantages in details.
3. Give examples for your ideas as supporting sentences.
4. Use transition words like, on the one hand/ on the other hand / unlike/ although.
5. Conclude your essay by restating the main topic in brief.

Model Essay

How technology can improve learning

Introduction

Technology has affected different industries as a whole and education is one of them. From schools to colleges and universities, everyone can feel the impact of technology. Surely, there are advantages and some disadvantages for technology in the field of education.

Main body

On the one hand, technology has proved to be a helping hand for teachers who sometimes find it hard to explain certain things within normal classrooms. Teachers are able to prepare their lessons in a very good way by including different types of activities and interactive controls for students. Also, it helps students and teachers to communicate easily, whether at school or from their homes. In addition to that, technology could help students to do any kind of researches as they can find any information they want on the internet.

On the other hand, technology can cause distraction and lack of focus when students have access to social media and online gaming websites. Also, not all students have equal access to technology and good internet connections, so there will be inequality among students all over the country.

Conclusion

Finally, we can say that technology is going to stay and develop. We need to make a balance between its advantages and disadvantages. This balance aims at making the best use of technology and avoiding its demerits.

Practice



Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There is no longer any doubt that smoking is a fatal habit. Figures indicate that the number of victims of smoking is increasing. In fact, the number of those who have died from smoking-related diseases surpasses[1] the number of victims of epidemics, wars or accidents in our time.

When the World Health Organisation (WHO) in 1982, after a great deal of scientific research, announced that smoking is a primary cause of lung cancer, heart and chest diseases, countries like Britain and the U.S.A. immediately took action.

Media campaigns[2] were launched, explaining the dangers and encouraging smokers to stop smoking. They have succeeded and the percentage of smokers has gone down significantly among educated people in England.

However, the tobacco companies were naturally not very pleased with this and tried to make up for this loss by opening new markets in what is called the Third World Countries. So, they held festivals, had automobile[3] races, gave out prizes for different kinds of competitions, thus raising the rate of consumption in these countries by eight percent annually in the last few years.

The war between the tobacco companies and health organisations could be considered a war between good and evil, a vital and important war, a war to try and save our youth and our future. A war in which each person must take part for the sake of his own and his country's future.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The WHO ....
   a) encouraged a large number to stop smoking
   b) gave out prizes for different competitions
   c) took part in the war between good and evil
   d) tried to make up for its loss
2. The tobacco companies are to blame because ....
   a) the percentage of smokers has gone down
   b) media campaigns were launched
   c) they opened new markets in the Third World Countries
   d) smoking is a fatal habit



(1) يتخطى
(2) حملات
(3) سيارات

3. The pronoun "They" in "They have succeeded" refers to ....
   a) tobacco companies
   b) fatal diseases
   c) media companies
   d) world countries
4. There are .... kinds of diseases that are caused by smoking in the passage.
   a) two
   b) three
   c) four
   d) five
5. The tobacco companies were not pleased with the WHO's announcement because ....
   a) smoking is a fatal habit
   b) the victims of smoking are increasing
   c) smokers stopped smoking
   d) it would cause a big loss of wealth
6. The numbers of victims of smoking .... the numbers of victims of epidemics and wars.
   a) exceeded
   b) equalled
   c) increased
   d) decreased
7. The WHO announced that smoking is a primary cause of lung cancer .... years ago.
   a) 47
   b) 51
   c) 41
   d) 31

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. Some scientists have found that people are more likely to catch a cold when they are unhappy or under stress as the immune system is less efficient when we are worried.
   a) لقد اكتشف بعض العلماء أن هناك تشابهًا أكبر أن يصاب الناس بالبرد عندما يكونون تعساء أو تحت ضغط لأن الجهاز المناعى يكون أكثر كفاءة عندما نتعرض للقلق.
   b) لقد اكتشف بعض العلماء أن هناك احتمالاً أكبر أن يصاب الناس بالبرد عندما يكونون غير سعداء أو تحت ضغط لأن الجهاز المناعى يكون أقل كفاءة عندما نتعرض للقلق.
   c) قد يكتشف العلماء أن هناك احتمالاً أكبر أن يصاب الناس بالبرد عندما يكونون سعداء أو تحت ضغط لأن الجهاز المناعى يكون أقل كفاءة عندما نتعرض للقلق.
   d) لقد اكتشف بعض العلماء أن هناك احتمالاً أكبر أن يصطاد الناس البرد عندما يكونون غير سعداء أو تحت ضغط لأن الجهاز الهضمى يكون أقل كفاءة عندما نتعرض للقلق.
2. All religions respect democracy. They call for human rights and appreciate all the values that ensure peace and prosperity.
   a) تحترم كل الأديان الديمقراطية وتتصل بحقوق الإنسان وتقدر كل القيم التى تضمن السلام والرخاء.
   b) تحترم كل الأديان الديمقراطية وتطالب بحقوق الإنسان وتظهر كل القيم التى تؤكد السلام والرخاء.
   c) تحترم كل الأديان الديمقراطية وتطالب بحقوق الإنسان وتقدر كل القيم التى تضمن السلام والرخاء.
   d) تحترم بعض الأديان الديمقراطية وتسمى حقوق الإنسان وتقدر كل القيم التى تضمن السلام والرخاء.

3 Any country is in great need of persons of wisdom to modernise the educational system and raise awareness among young people.

a) إن أى دولة فى حاجة ماسة إلى أشخاص ذوى حكمة لتحديث النظام التعليمى وزيادة الوعى بين الشباب.

b) إن أى دولة فى حاجة ملحة إلى أشخاص ذوى خبرة لتحديث البرنامج التعليمى وزيادة الوعى بين الناس.

c) إن كل دولة فى حاجة ملحة إلى أشخاص ذوى حكمة لتحديث النظام التعليمى وزيادة الفضول بين الشباب.

d) إن أى دولة فى حاجة ملحة إلى أشخاص ذوى تجربة لتحديث المحتوى التعليمى وزيادة الفهم بين الشباب.

4 Smoking cigarettes and pollution are fearful enemies to man as they destroy health and bring about suffering and death.

a) يعتبر تدخين السجائر والتلوث أعداء مخيفة للإنسان فإنها تدمر الصحة وتحضر المعاناة والموت.

b) يعتبر تدخين السجائر والتلوث أعداء مخيفة للإنسان فإنها تدمر الرئة وتسبب المعاناة والموت.

c) إن تدخين السجائر والتلوث أعداء مخيفة للإنسان حيث إنها تدمر الصحة وتسبب المعاناة والموت.

d) إن تدخين السجائر والتكدس أعداء مخيفة للإنسان فإنها تدمر الصحة وتسبب المعاناة والموت.

5 Unlike other means of transport, the bicycle does not use petrol. This means that it keeps the air clean, and it does not need a big space to park.

a) على عكس وسائل التواصل الأخرى فإن الدراجة لا تستخدم البترول وهذا يعنى أنها تحافظ على نقاء الهواء ولا تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة لصفها.

b) على عكس وسائل المواصلات الأخرى فإن الدراجة لا تستخدم البنزين وهذا يعنى أنها تحافظ على نقاء الهواء ولا تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة للانتظار.

c) على عكس وسائل المواصلات الأخرى فإن الدراجة لا تستخدم البنزين وهذا يعنى أنها تحافظ على نقاء الهواء وتحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة للركن.

d) مثل وسائل المواصلات الأخرى فإن الدراجة لا تستخدم البنزين وهذا يعنى أنها تحافظ على نقاء الهواء ولا تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة للانتظار.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 يُعد مترو الانفاق واحدًا من الإنجازات الهامة للدولة المصرية فى السنوات الأخيرة وذلك لدوره الهام فى حل مشكلة التكدس المرورى وتقليل عدد الحوادث.

a) The underground considered one of the important achievements of the Egyptian State in recent years for its important role in solve the problem of traffic jam and reducing the number of accidents.

b) The underground is considered one of the important achievements of the Egyptian society in recently years for its importance role in solving the problem of traffic jam and reducing the number of accidents.

c) Metro is considered one of the important achievements of the Egyptian State in recent years for its important role in solving the problem of traffic crowds and reducing the amount of accidents.

d) The metro is considered one of the important achievements of the Egyptian State in recent years for its important role in solving the problem of traffic jam and reducing the number of accidents.

7 يجب علينا جميعا أفرادا وحكومات أن نبذل أقصى ما فى وسعنا لكى نتمكن من تحسين جودة منتجاتنا المحلية و بالتالى تحقيق النمو الاقتصادى.

a) We all, individual and government, should make our best to be able to improve the quality of our local products and thus achieve economic progress.

b) We all, individuals and governments, should do our best to be able to improve the quality of our local products and thus achieve economic progress.

c) We all, individuals and governments, should do our better to able to improve the quality of our local products and thus achieve economic progress.

d) We all, individuals and governments, should do our best to be able to prove the quality of our local produces and thus achieve economic progress.

8 الأم هى المدرسة الأولى للطفل فهى من تعلمه الأخلاق والقيم وكيفية التعامل مع من حوله قبل أن يتعلم القراءة والكتابة.

a) Grandmother is the first school for the child as she teaches them morals, values and dealing with people around them before learning how to read and write.

b) Mother is the first school for the child as she teaches her morals, values and how to deal with people around him before learning how to read and write.

c) Mum is the first school for the child as she is the one who teaches him morals, values and how to deal of people around him before learned how to read and write.

d) Mother is the first school for the child as she is the one who teaches them morals and values, and she teaches them how to deal with people around them before learning how to read and write.

9 لا توجد تفرقة فى مصر مبنية على الدين أو النوع أو اللون أو المكانة الاجتماعية أو الثروة. كلنا متساوون: الرجل والمرأة، المسيحى والمسلم.

a) In Egypt, there is no discount based on religion, gender, colour, social position or wealth. We are all equal: man and woman, Muslim and Christian.

b) In Egypt, there is no discrimination based on religious, gender, colour, sociable position or health. We are all equal: man and woman, Muslim and Christian.

c) In Egypt, there is no discrimination based in religion, gender, colour, social location or wealth. We are all equal: man and woman, Muslim and Christian.

d) In Egypt, there is no discrimination based on religion, gender, colour, social position or wealth. We are all equal: man and woman, Muslim and Christian.

10 إذا لم تضع أهدافا واضحة، فلا تلومن إلا نفسك على عدم تحقيقك لأى شىء.

a) If you set clear goals, you have only yourself to blame for not achieving anything.

b) In case of setting clear goals, you have only yourself to blame for not achieving anything.

c) Without you set clear goals, you have only yourself to blame for not achieving anything.

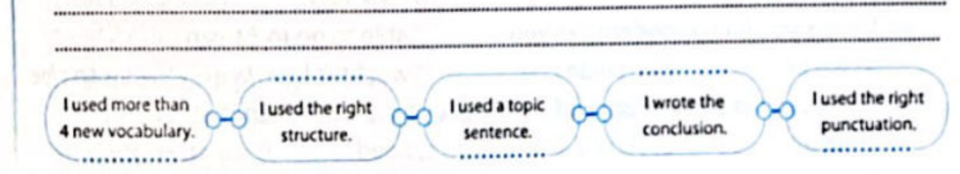
d) Unless you set clear goals, you have only yourself to blame for not achieving anything.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"From your own point of view, what is the most useful invention?"

....

....



  Question Bank **Al-Adwaa Test** 40

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 The words .... and .... have the same meaning as the word "annoying".
a) disturbing b) exciting c) common d) familiar e) troublesome

2 It is more useful to try doing your homework ....
a) lonely b) on your own c) of your own d) only e) alone

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 .... is a system that uses satellites to show your exact position on the Earth on a special piece of equipment.
a) CBC b) GPR c) CPR d) GPS

4 A lot of birds fly at night and .... with the help of the stars.
a) control b) negate c) navigate d) lead

5 We're glad to hear your .... on our presentation to improve it next time.
a) feedback b) navigation c) challenge d) document

6 A .... car is a vehicle with an engine that uses both petrol and electricity.
a) plant b) hybrid c) mixed d) hyphened

7 My father bought a .... because he likes to read e-books while on the bus.
a) smartphone b) smart laptop c) smart car d) smart TV

8 It's quite easy to .... Alexandria by car.
a) get around b) get on c) get better d) get over

9 Many .... are so helpful but somehow make people lazy.
a) discoveries b) explorations c) inventions d) memories

10 If he had the will, he .... his problems easily.
a) would solve b) will solve
c) solves d) would have solved

11 I would put on protective glasses if I .... you.
a) were b) will be c) had been d) am

12 I would have attended the meeting if I .... time.
a) would have had b) had had
c) had d) have had

13 Unless you had a modern car, you .... able to go to Aswan.
a) will be b) wouldn't be c) wouldn't have been d) won't be

14 If you can't impose your conditions شروط, you .... negotiate تتفاوض.
a) would b) should c) need d) ought

15 If he had a used car, he .... it.
a) would have sold b) would sell
c) will sell d) may sell

16 If I had used my car, I .... faster.
a) will go b) would have gone
c) might have been gone d) would go

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Have you ever heard that a wealthy person died of hunger? I was shocked when I read a very impressive story about a very rich man. That man had huge wealth and a vast palace. He used to leave this family in their usual house to spend a few days every month alone in his palace to plan for his coming businesses and count his increasing money. He used to keep his money in an enormous room in the palace. Once, he closed the room without realising that he had left the key out. After so many hours, he began to feel hungry and wanted to go out to have something to eat, but he found out his terrible mistake. That room had no handle to be opened from inside and the immense size of the palace prevented the man's cries from reaching anyone outside. He tried very hard to open the metal door, but in vain. Days and nights passed while he was starving. Finally, he became sure he would die, so he injured his finger and used his blood to write the moral of that awful situation on the wall. He wrote, "The richest man in the city died of starvation." I started to think differently about the benefits of being rich; having a family is far more important.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Why did the rich man use to spend a few days by himself?
a) To make decisions. b) To make plans.
c) To make sacrifices. d) To perform prayers.

18 Because of the end of the rich man, the writer decided that ....
a) having a family isn't important b) being rich is the best aim
c) it's better to have a family d) the family shouldn't have left home

19 How often does he leave family in their usual house?
a) Once a year. b) Three times a year.
c) Weekly. d) Monthly.

20 The man couldn't be heard ....
a) because he was weak b) because of the huge size of the palace
c) no one heard him d) he lost the key

21 Why did he injure himself?
a) To drink blood. b) To paint the wall.
c) To become rich. d) To write a message.

22 The best title for the passage is "..............".

a) Richness is a blessing
b) The Killer Wealth
c) The killer Family
d) The Rich Commit Suicide

23 The word "immense" means ....

a) very small
b) average
c) massive
d) tiny

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

يجب أن يتعاون الشعب مع الحكومة لزيادة الاستثمار من أجل مواجهة مشكلة البطالة وذلك عن طريق إنشاء المشروعات الصغيرة والتي تستوعب عددًا من العاملين.

a) The people should cooperate with the government to increase investment to face the problem of unemployment by setting up small projects that employ a number of workers.
b) The peoples should cooperate with the government to increase investment to face the problem of employment by setting up small projects that understand a number of workers.
c) The people should cooperate with the government to increase investment to face the problem of unemployment by setting down small projects where employ a number of workers.
d) The people ought to cooperate with the government to increase investment to face the problem of unemployment by setting up great projects that understand a number of workers.

25 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

Using the internet has become easier and the chance for individuals to obtain mass information at a great speed has become available.

a) لقد أصبح استخدام الإنترنت أسهل وتغيير الأفراد للحصول على كم هائل من المعلومات بسرعة كبيرة أصبح متاح.
b) لقد أصبح استخدام الإنترنت أسهل وفرصة الأفراد للحصول على تواصل كبير من المعلومات بسرعة كبيرة أصبحت متاحة.
c) لقد أصبح استخدام الإنترنت أسهل وفرصة الأفراد للحصول على كمية كبيرة من المعلومات بسرعة كبيرة أصبحت قيمة.
d) لقد أصبح استخدام الإنترنت أسهل وفرصة الأفراد للحصول على كم هائل من المعلومات بسرعة كبيرة أصبحت متاحة.

26 **Answer the following questions:**

1. Do you think that Captain Smollett is a good captain? Prove your answer.
2. Why do think that Jim wanted to be quick and find the boat as he said?
3. Do you think that Jim's plan was a good one? Why?

27 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"How important is the internet in society?"

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 337

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Units 7 & 8 — Al-Adwaa Test 40

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 Burning fossil fuels has a very bad .... on our environment and also our health.

a) affect
b) affection
c) impact
d) influential
e) effect

2 There is always an argument because of spending summer holidays. The synonyms of "argument" are "..............".

a) agreement
b) debate
c) harmony
d) disagreement
e) understanding

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 Driving at a breakneck speed puts people's lives in ....

a) dangerous
b) endangered
c) safety
d) danger

4 Having a healthy routine protects you .... some serious diseases.

a) about
b) against
c) of
d) to

5 The police demanded the inhabitants to .... the city immediately because of the coming earthquake.

a) inhabit
b) wrap
c) evacuate
d) damage

6 I have a/an .... to strawberries, so I can't drink this juice.

a) allergy
b) experience
c) argument
d) sense

7 Global .... System makes it easier to navigate than it was 20 years ago.

a) Position
b) Political
c) Production
d) Positioning

8 The child's temperature went .... and he felt better after taking the injection.

a) up
b) ahead
c) down
d) on

9 The internet has a lot of merits, but it also has some ....

a) pros
b) disadvantages
c) positives
d) advantages

10 If I .... with you yesterday, I would have given you the money you needed.

a) were
b) had been
c) would be
d) am

11 When you go to Rome, you .... visit the Colosseum. It's a fantastic monument!

a) needn't
b) must
c) have
d) need to

12 If you go out, ... you buy the newspaper for me, please?

a) should
b) do
c) would
d) could

13 I really .... lose some weight. My clothes hardly fit me anymore.

a) need to
b) must
c) have to
d) needn't

14 If anyone has a problem, they always .... nervous.

a) will feel
b) have felt
c) would feel
d) feel

15 If he put his toys away, his mother .... angry with him.

a) would be
b) wouldn't be
c) won't be
d) would have been

16 Dad is an English teacher, so I .... take private lessons.

a) needn't
b) must
c) have to
d) don't need

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I have a friend called Shady who always pretends to know everything. Whenever a name is mentioned, he says he knows the person who owns the name. I believed Shady until one day, when I found he was a big liar. Once Mr Said, who was a famous writer, came to meet me. Before I introduced my friend to Mr Said, his eyes fell on one of the books, which was lying on the table. Shady at once said that the author of the book was one of his relatives, and started telling stories about the adventures they had together. Mr Said kept on listening with interest. He asked my friend Shady if he could recognise Mr Said if he saw him. My friend assured him he would. With a loud laugh, Mr Said introduced himself to my friend who was so ashamed that he immediately left the house.

Since that day my friend Shady does his best to avoid me and when he meets me, he never says that he knows anything or anybody. He learnt an important lesson in life. It's not wrong to say, "I don't know," when you actually don't know enough information about a specific topic. Everyone should only speak if they are knowledgeable.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What was the turning point in this story?

a) Shady says that Mr Said is his friend.
b) Shady visits the writer.
c) Shady pretends to advise Mr Said about his books.
d) Mr Said introduces himself to Shady.

18 The embarrassing situation happened because of ....

a) Shady himself
b) the writer
c) Mr Said
d) the book on the table

19 The underlined word "ashamed" means ....

a) happy
b) shy
c) brave
d) innocent

20 The writer and Shady are ....

a) classmates
b) colleagues
c) relatives
d) friends

21 Mr Said is a famous .... who wrote many books.

a) poet
b) author
c) actor
d) doctor

22 What made the situation worse?

a) Shady said he didn't know Mr Said.
b) Mr Said listened patiently before introducing himself.
c) The writer introduced Shady to Mr Said.
d) Shady left the writer's house.

23 After Shady's meeting with Mr Said; he was ....

a) pleased
b) proud
c) regretful
d) brave

24 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- There are different types of tourism which attract tourists to our country. The most common type is travelling for pleasure and relaxation.

a) توجد أنواع مختلفة من الصناعة والتى تجذب السياح لبلدنا وأكثر الأنواع شيوعا هو السفر للمتعة والاسترخاء.
b) توجد أنواع مختلفة من السياحة والتى تجذب السياح لبلدنا وأقل الأنواع شيوعا هو السفر للعمل والاسترخاء.
c) توجد أنواع مختلفة من السياحة والتى تجذب السياح لبلدنا وأكثر الأنواع شيوعا هو السفر للمتعة والاسترخاء.
d) توجد أنواع مختلفة من الاستثمار والتى تربط السياح ببلدنا وأكثر الأنواع انتشارا هو السفر للبحث عن الكنز والاسترخاء.

25 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- تشجع الحكومة الصناعات المحلية حتى تستغنى عن كثير من الواردات التى تحتاج إلى العملة الصعبة وفى نفس الوقت توفر فرص عمل للشباب.

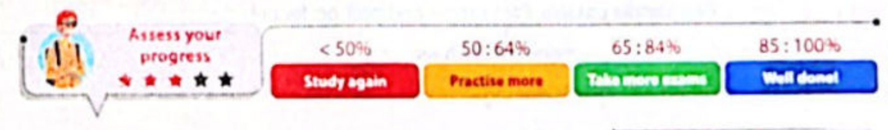
a) The government encourage local products to do without a lot of imports who need a lot of hard currency and at the same time to provide job opportunities for youth.
b) The government encourages local industries so that it can do without a lot of imports which need hard currency, and at the same time, provide job opportunities for youth.
c) The government encourages local products to do without a lot of imports which need a lot hard currency and at the same time to provide job opportunities with youth.
d) The government encourages local industries to do without a lot of exports which need a lot of hard currency and at the same time to provide job opportunities for youth.

26 **Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do you think Dr Livesy left the fort?
2. What do you think of the boat that Ben Gun made? Do you agree with Jim's opinion?
3. Ben was an observant man. Do you agree or not? Why?

27 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

The role of technology in the medical field.



A good education

Unit 9

Objectives

امسح الكود

استفد بمحتوى الوحدة الرقمي

- **Reading** : Text about Charlotte Brontë and her novel Jane Eyre
- **Writing** : A summary of Jane Eyre
- **Listening** : A discussion on changing schools; agreeing or disagreeing on an opinion
- **Speaking** : Agreeing and disagreeing
- **Language** : Past simple passive; Past simple and past perfect (Active)
- **Communication** : Supporting your opinion with reasons
- **Life Skills** : Different ways of learning





Watch a video

Part (1)

Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

cruel (adj)	قاسٍ	orphan (n) (adj)*	يتيم
governess (n)	مربية	servant (n)	خادم/خادمة
housekeeper (n)	مديرة المنزل		

Orphan children must be treated kindly.

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

advertise (v) – d	يعلن	honesty (n)	أمانة
apply (v) (y ied)	يتقدم	kindness (n)	لطف/طيبة
author (n)	مؤلف	later (adv)	فيما بعد
boarding school (n)	مدرسة داخلية	nearby (adj)	قريب/مجاور
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	own (v) – ed	يمتلك
dead (adj)	ميت	quite (adv)	إلى حد ما
discuss (v) – ed	يناقش	relatives (n)	أقارب
education (n)	تعليم	school term (n)	فصل دراسي
employ (v) – ed	يوظف	secret (n)	سر
extra (adj)	إضافي	unkind (adj)	غير طيب أو عطوف
fail (v) – ed	يرسب/يفشل	unusual (adj)	غير عادي
forget (v)	ينسى	upset (v)	يضايق
fire (n)	حريق	wealthy (adj)	ثري
helpful (adj)	مفيد		

Workbook Vocabulary

believe (v) – d	يصدق/يعتقد	gardener (n)	جنايني/بستاني
bully (n) (v) (y ied)	متنمر/يتنمر	headmaster (n)	ناظر
comfortable (adj)	مريح	huge (adj)	ضخم
continue (v) – d	يستمر	previous (adj)	سابق
earn (v) – ed	يكسب مالًا	realise (v) – d	يدرك
energy (n)	طاقة		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I want to get some .... information to be able to finish my research.
a) unimportant b) huge c) extra d) extreme

2 I was very tired and had no .... to do anything. I preferred to sleep.
a) energy b) authority c) education d) honesty

3 My friend's uncle is a very .... man who has many cars.
a) employable b) healthy c) cruel d) wealthy

4 Mr Esam wants to .... another accountant because the company is expanding تتوسع.
a) fire b) employ c) earn d) realise

5 The .... was caused by a cigarette end. There were a lot of losses and victims.
a) energy b) fire c) power d) storm

6 I want to hire a .... to look after my flowers and the other plants there.
a) guardian b) planter c) photographer d) gardener

7 She applied for the job which was .... in Al-Ahram newspaper.
a) employed b) broadcast c) informed d) advertised

8 I've never doubted my son's ....; he never tells lies.
a) honesty b) friendship c) disloyalty d) dishonesty

9 Parents always work hard to give their children a good .... to be good citizens.
a) importance b) education c) succession d) pay

10 Our teacher was .... to us, but she taught us lots of good things.
a) merciful b) cruel c) annoyed d) kind

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

become friends with	يصبح صديقًا مع	make friends	يكوّن صداقات/يصادق
believe in	يؤمن بـ	on your phone	على هاتفك
keep ... warm	يحافظ على ... دافئًا	received no replies	لم يتلق ردًا
do an online course	يقوم بدورة تدريبية عبر الإنترنت	lose touch with	يفقد الاتصال بـ
apply for	يتقدم إلى (وظيفة)	move to	ينتقل إلى
on his own	بمفرده	return to	يعود إلى
cruel to	قاسٍ مع	right for	مناسب لـ
fight with	يحارب/يتقاتل مع	save from	ينقذ من
have lessons with	يحضر دروسًا مع	send away	يطرد
hear about/of	يسمع عن	stay in/at	يبقى في
instead of	بدلًا من	work for	يعمل لدى
keep ... under control	يبقي ... تحت السيطرة	worried about	قلق بشأن
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع	make a fire	يشعل نارًا (للتدفئة/للطهي)
lose a job	يفقد وظيفة	set fire to	يشعل حريقًا

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
apply	يتقدم/يطبق	application applicant	استمارة تطبيق	applied	مطبق
advertise	يعلن	advertisement advertising advertiser	إعلان إعلان مُعلن	advertised	معلن عنه
believe*	يعتقد/يصدق	belief believer	اعتقاد مؤمن	believable	قابل للتصديق
----------------------------		cruelty	قسوة	cruel	قاسٍ
discuss	يناقش	discussion	نقاش	----------------------------	
fail	يرسب/يفشل	failure	فشل/شخص فاشل	failed	فاشل
----------------------------		honesty	أمانة	honest	أمين

- I **believe** that everyone should work hard.
- Omar has strong **beliefs** in magic.
- Sara's dream about her grandfather is **believable**. *

own	يمتلك	owner ownership	مالك ملكية		
serve	يخدم	service	خدمة	serviceable	نافع/مفيد
help	يساعد	help	مساعدة	helpful	معين/مساعد
upset	يضايق	upset	اضطراب	upsetting	مزعج/مقلق

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
cruel	قاس	unkind/wicked	friendly/gentle ودود/لطيف
dead	ميت	lifeless/buried	alive/living حى
employ	يوظف	hire/engage	fire/discharge يرفد
huge	ضخم	enormous/giant	tiny/minute ضئيل الحجم
importance	أهمية	significance/influence	insignificance/unimportance عدم أهمية
nearby	قريب	close/near	far/faraway/distant بعيد
previous	سابق	earlier/former	later/afterward/next فيما بعد
unusual	غير عادى	uncommon/abnormal	common/conventional شائع/تقليدى
wealthy	ثرى	rich/affluent	poor/destitute فقير/معدم

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She had bad memories with her father as he used to be cruel to her. The antynym of the word "cruel" is "..............".
a) inactive b) happy c) kind d) wicked

2 I .... in your ability to solve this problem.
a) believe b) belief c) believer d) believable

3 The great museum is really huge and remarkable. The synonym of "huge" is "..............".
a) tiny b) minute c) enormous d) small

4 Don't fight .... your brother while I'm out.
a) without b) for c) at d) with

5 To improve your English, you can .... some online courses.
a) do b) make c) play d) lose

6 After moving to my new house, I can walk to work instead .... going by car.
a) in b) with c) by d) of

7 His car is very expensive. I think he is very wealthy. The antonym of "wealthy" is ....
a) destitute b) affluent c) rich d) famous

8 You can .... for this job online or send the application by post.
a) reply b) supply c) apply d) stay

9 Mr Emad is a reliable teacher and can keep the class under ....
a) belief b) advertisement c) control d) announcement

10 It is very important to .... in touch with your friends even if you are in different areas.
a) lose b) take c) keep d) have

Reading Text

Jane Eyre

Charlotte Brontë was born in England in 1816. She and her two sisters all became famous authors[1]. Charlotte Brontë's most famous book is *Jane Eyre*. It was written in 1847. Jane Eyre was an orphan[2] who lived with her cousins and her wealthy[3] aunt, Mrs Reed. The family was unkind and they did not want Jane to live with them.

Jane was sent away to school. Jane was happy to go to Lowood School, but the owner[4], Mr Brocklehurst, was very cruel[5], so the students lived unhappy lives. Finally, Mr Brocklehurst was told to leave the school. Six years later, Jane became a teacher at Lowood School. After two years, Jane decided to apply for[6] a job as a governess[7]. Governesses were often employed by rich families. She started to teach a young French girl called Adèle at a big house called Thornfield Hall. The owner of the house was Mr Rochester. Jane enjoyed her new job and became friends with Mrs Fairfax, the kind housekeeper[8].

One night, there was a fire at Thornfield Hall and Jane saved Mr Rochester. He said that the fire was started by a servant[9] called Grace, but Grace did not lose her job. Jane did not understand, but she thought that there was a secret in the house. Jane left Thornfield Hall, but she could not forget it.

(1) مؤلفون
(2) طفلة يتيمة
(3) ثرى
(4) مالك
(5) قاسٍ
(6) يتقدم لوظيفة
(7) مربية
(8) مديرة المنزل
(9) خادمة



Listening Text

Teacher : We don't know much about Jane's early school days, but I imagine she had gone to school before she moved[1] to her aunt's house, as we know she could read. We also know that she was sent to a boarding school[2] after she had upset[3] Mrs Reed and her cousin John.

Omar : What's a boarding school?

Teacher : It's a school where children live as well as study. In the past, there were boarding schools for rich children and ones like Lowood House for children who weren't rich. And of course some rich children were taught at home. Governesses[4], like Jane, were employed to teach them.

Ali : My cousin, Kamal, had lessons at home.

Teacher : Did he, Ali? Why was that?

Ali : He had to stay at home for six months because he'd broken[5] his back when the school term started. He wanted to go to school, but he'd already made lots of friends and they came round[6] to see him, so it wasn't too bad.

Teacher : Did a teacher come to his house every day?

Ali : No. He was sent an email every day with the work that his friends were doing in school, but my aunt helped him when he couldn't understand it.

(1) انتقلت
(2) مدرسة داخلية
(3) أزعجت
(4) المربيات
(5) كسر
(6) زار

Workbook Text

Dear Ellen,

I told you some time ago that I wanted to get a good job. I am glad[1] to say that I have found one as a governess and I am quite happy.

The house is not very large but it is very comfortable[2] and the gardens are huge. Although I earn[3] less money than in my previous[4] job, I am working with kind, friendly people. I have two pupils: an eight-year-old girl and a six-year-old boy.

My job as a governess can be very difficult because children have so much energy[5]. I just hope I will not become ill trying to keep them under control and make them happy.

Well, I must continue with my work. I hope to see you soon.

Kind regards,

Charlotte

(1) سعيد
(2) مريح
(3) يكسب
(4) سابقة
(5) طاقة

Listening Text

Dareen : Dad, I don't want to change schools. I want to go to school with my friends.

Father : It's not so bad, Dareen. You know, my family used to travel, and I was taken to lots of different countries. So, I'd been to lots of different schools before we came back to Egypt. You can make new friends at a different school.

Dareen : I like my friends at my school now.

Father : It is easy to keep in touch with your friends. I always see you on your phone. I lost touch with the people I'd gone to school with.

Mother : If you don't change school, maybe you can do an online course. Some extra[1] lessons will be helpful. Mona's mother said that Mona had had lots of problems in school before she started having extra lessons. And they say some of these online courses are fantastic. They can understand what your level[2] is and give you work that's just right for you. In fact, you were given a new computer to help you study.

Father : And you can chat with other students online, too. Just like you do at school.

Mother : Mona's mother says Mona has really improved with so much help from her online teachers.

Dareen : But, Mum, I learn a lot at school now. I only failed[3] the test because I'd been ill when I took it.

Father : OK. OK. We'll leave things the way they are[4] for now and then we can discuss[5] it again after your exams at the end of the year.

Dareen : OK. Thank you.

(1) إضافي
(2) مستوى
(3) فشل
(4) يترك الأمور على حالها
(5) يناقش

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1	(be) born in + (مكان/سنة) ولد في	- My sister was born in Alexandria. - Ali was born in 2002.
	(be) born on + (عام/شهر/يوم) ولد في	His mother was born on 21st August 1979.
	(be) born into ... ولد في عائلة	Nora was born into a good family.
	(be) born with + (disease) مولود بـ (مرض)	Merna was born with a small hole in her heart.

work with	يعمل مع	All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.
work for	يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح (شخص/شركة)	- My brother works for a big company in the city. - Egypt works for peace in the Middle East.
2 work in	يعمل فى (مكان/مجال)	I hope to work in medical research when I'm older.
work on	يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)	The writer said that he was working on a new novel.
work as	يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)	My grandfather worked as a journalist in Al-Ahram newspaper.

a six-year-old girl	بنت عمرها ٦ سنوات	I have got a six-year-old girl and an eight-year-old boy.
six-year-old girls		بنات عمر كل منهن ٦ سنوات

3

- All the players in our team are six-year-old girls.

لاحظ عدم جمع الكلمات الآتية إذا جاء قبلها عدد وبعدها اسم:

second/minute/hour/day/week/month/year/decade/century

- We usually have a five-minute break for coffee at midday.
- Our company held five-hour meetings.

فى حالة وجود كلمة (time) بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم ('s) فى حالة المفرد و (s') فى حالة الجمع:

- He has an appointment with the doctor in two days' time.

dead	صفة بمعنى ميت	My father is dead, and I am responsible for the family.
4 death	اسم بمعنى الموت	The only thing that we should prepare for is death.

later	فيما بعد (ظرف)	I'm going out for a bit. I'll see you later.
5 latter	الأخير أو الثانى من اثنين (صفة)	This point is explained fully in the latter part of the chapter.



employ (v)	يوظف	Tourism employs a lot of people.
employee (n)	موظف	There are some lazy employees in this company.
6 employer (n)	صاحب عمل	Mr Ali is a very kind employer. He treats us well.
employment (n)	وظيفة/توظيف	I have tried to find employment in this city but in vain.

win	يفوز بشىء	I was happy when I won the match.
7 earn	يكسب مالًا من عمله/قوت يومه	Ramy earns his living by selling books.
gain (fame - experience - ...)	يكتسب شيئًا معنويًا	Gaining experience is better than earning money at the beginning of my career.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother likes working .... old cars.
   a) for b) as c) on d) with
2. I've .... a lot of experience through this journey.
   a) won b) earned c) gained d) saved
3. We have some new .... in our department in the company.
   a) employers b) employs c) employees d) employment
4. We were shocked when we heard about his sudden ....
   a) dead b) dying c) died d) death
5. The manager is not here now. Can you call ....?
   a) latter b) late c) lately d) later
6. Some babies are born .... some diseases or disabilities.
   a) into b) on c) by d) with
7. I asked my boss for a .... holiday to spend with my family.
   a) two-weeks b) two-week c) two-week's d) two-weeks'
8. Finally, Ali found work .... a marketing manager after many years of graduation.
   a) in b) on c) as d) of



Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Some rich people employ .... to do their housework such as cleaning and washing.
a) gardeners b) guards c) lawyers d) servants

2 My father warned me not to .... friends with rude classmates.
a) make b) lose c) miss d) get

3 The bad news about the earthquake really .... all of us.
a) gained b) orphaned c) pleased d) upset

4 How much money do you .... if you don't mind me asking?
a) gain b) win c) beat d) earn

5 You'll improve at the job as you .... experience.
a) gain b) win c) beat d) earn

6 After spending 12 hours teaching English, I have no .... to work more today.
a) money b) idea c) energy d) electricity

7 I .... how difficult it is going to be, but we must try.
a) recognise b) remind c) realise d) memorise

8 I visit my grandparents very often as they live in a .... village.
a) remote b) strange c) nearby d) far

9 The .... has signed the book before giving it to me as a present.
a) reader b) actor c) author d) maker

10 The poor child's parents died when he was five. He is a/an .... *(Longman)*
a) teacher b) widow c) governess d) orphan

11 All occupied countries must fight .... their independence.
a) for b) at c) in d) of

12 I have a strong .... in the power of education for nations development.
a) believe b) believer c) believing d) belief

13 The businessman was found .... in his car, so we called the police.
a) dead b) died c) death d) dying

14 There was a .... beside the school who used to take all our money off us by force.
a) inspector b) orphan c) bully d) bullying

15 The young lady is an honest ....; she works for our neighbour in his new house, doing all the housework perfectly. *(Longman)*
a) housekeeper b) governess c) goalkeeper d) governor

16 More efforts should be done to prevent actions such as .... from our schools.
a) bully b) bullying c) creation d) invention

17 I think the internet was the most important invention in the 20th ....
a) year b) decade c) century d) millennium

18 I usually .... with my relatives, especially on special occasions; we are on good terms with each other. *(Longman)*
a) lose touch b) connect c) keep in touch d) contact

19 This arrogant and evil character used .... and fear to control his whole family.
a) cruelty b) failure c) cruelly d) affection

20 The king got a .... to teach his children. She lived with them at the palace.
a) servant b) housekeeper c) governess d) nurse

21 I sent many emails to the company, but I .... no replies.
a) achieved b) made c) received d) did

22 The President has sent a message of sympathy to the .... of the dead soldiers.
a) applicants b) bullies c) relatives d) authors

23 Rami is very ....; he is unkind and usually hurts others. *(Longman)*
a) honest b) decent c) tolerant d) cruel

24 A lot of children were left .... owing to wars. They lost their parents there.
a) orphans b) servant c) wealthy d) homeless

25 We didn't expect to meet all those .... to the job. They were too many.
a) apply b) applications c) applicants d) offers

26 He wants to run his own company; he will never work .... his relatives again.
a) by b) on c) with d) at

27 When you can't call or know anything about some friends, this means you ....
a) keep in touch with them b) stay in touch with them
c) lose control of them d) lose touch with them

28 My uncle .... a big private school in our town. *(Longman)*
a) possess b) owns c) lends d) owes

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

29 How many people did the company employ? The antonyms of the verb "employ" are "............".
a) hire b) fire c) understand d) learn e) discharge

30 She was often cruel to her sister. The synonyms of the adjective "cruel" are "......".
a) friendly b) gentle c) lifeless d) wicked e) unkind

31 It is a good thing to .... friends with honest and reliable people.
a) set b) make c) do d) receive e) become

32 Have you heard ...... the author who wrote "Oliver Twist"? Was he Charles Dickens?
a) of b) with c) for d) about e) from

B Language

Past Simple Passive المبنى للمجهول فى الماضى

يستخدم المبنى للمجهول فى الماضى عندما نشير لأحداث تمت وكان التركيز على الحدث وليس فاعله أو كان الفاعل مجهولًا.

PAST SIMPLE ماضى بسيط

التصريف الثانى للفعل

Affirmative	• A lot of tourists visited the Pyramids last week. Object + (was – were) + P.P. • The Pyramids were visited by a lot of tourists.	(Active) (Passive)
Negative	Subject + didn't + inf. • She didn't clean the house yesterday. Object + (wasn't – weren't) + P.P. • The house wasn't cleaned yesterday.	 (Active) (Passive)
Interrogative	Wh-word + did + Subject + inf. + ...? (OR) Did + Subject + inf. + ...? • Where did you watch the match yesterday? • Did you attend the party last week? Wh-word + (was/were) + Object + P.P. + ...? (OR) (Was/Were) + Object + P.P. + ...? • Where was the match watched yesterday? • Was the party attended yesterday?	 (Active) (Active) (Passive) (Passive)

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother .... me to the dentist after school yesterday.
   a) took b) was taken c) is taking d) had taken
2. The letter .... by post last month.
   a) will send b) sent c) was sending d) was sent
3. They .... this block of flats five years ago.
   a) had built b) were built c) built d) are building
4. His homework .... yesterday, so the teacher punished him.
   a) did b) didn't do c) was done d) wasn't done
5. .... that match in the stadium?
   a) You watched b) Did you watch
   c) Were you watched d) You were watched

Passive Tenses الأزمنة فى المبنى للمجهول

	التصريف الأول للفعل	
Present Simple المضارع البسيط	• She plays tennis well. Object + (am/is/are) + P.P. • Tennis is played well (by her).	(Active) (Passive)
Present Continuous المضارع المستمر	Subject + (am/is/are) + (v-ing) • We are playing tennis now. Object + (am/is/are) + being + P.P. • Tennis is being played now.	 (Active) (Passive)
Past Continuous الماضى المستمر	Subject + (was/were) + (v-ing) • They were playing tennis yesterday evening. Object + (was/were) + being + P.P. • Tennis was being played yesterday evening.	 (Active) (Passive)
Present Perfect المضارع التام	Subject + (has/have) + P.P. • He has played tennis for years. Object + (has/have) + been + P.P. • Tennis has been played for years.	 (Active) (Passive)
Past Perfect الماضى التام	Subject + had + P.P. • She had played tennis before lunch. Object + had + been + P.P. • Tennis had been played before lunch.	 (Active) (Passive)
Future Simple المستقبل البسيط	Subject + will + inf. • They will play tennis tomorrow. Object + will + be + P.P. • Tennis will be played tomorrow.	 (Active) (Passive)



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 This picture .... by a good photographer last week.
a) took b) was taking c) was taken d) would be taken

2 A: Where is your car? B: It .... at the moment.
a) is repairing b) was being repaired
c) is being repaired d) was repaired

3 I borrowed my brother's car while mine ....
a) is being repaired b) was repaired
c) was being repaired d) will be repaired

4 The beach .... by thousands of tourists every day.
a) is visited b) was visiting
c) visits d) was being visited

5 Ronald Regan .... as the president of the United States in 1980.
a) was elected b) elected c) has been elected d) had elected

6 The wheel .... thousands of years ago.
a) is invented b) was invented c) had invented d) invented

7 The film wasn't good. I .... it very much.
a) wasn't enjoyed b) don't enjoy c) never enjoys d) didn't enjoy

8 I .... nice presents on my last birthday.
a) was giving b) gave c) was given d) had been given

9 Students .... to help clean the garden around the school yesterday.
a) sent b) is sent c) have sent d) were sent

10 We .... to the club to enjoy our time after our exams.
a) took b) were taking c) were taken d) had been taken

11 My house was broken into yesterday, but nothing ....
a) wasn't stolen b) stolen c) was stolen d) is being stolen

12 This road .... very often in the past, but now many people use it.
a) wasn't used b) didn't use c) isn't used d) wasn't using

13 The Lighthouse of Alexandria .... by earthquakes in the fourteenth century.
a) was damaged b) is damaged c) has damaged d) damages

14 By the time lunch ...., the guests had arrived! *(Longman)*
a) had been prepared b) was prepared
c) was preparing d) prepared

15 Our great football team .... in 1902.
a) formed b) was formed
c) has been formed d) had been formed

16 Mona is very happy with her new baby who .... last week.
a) had been born b) has born c) was born d) born

17 You .... to the party with your friends. Why didn't you go?
a) were inviting b) were invited c) invited d) have invited

18 My husband .... to go to a remote area to work there.
a) had forced b) was forcing c) was forced d) have been forced

19 Sally .... him to the wedding party, but he couldn't go as he was busy.
a) is invited b) will be invited c) invited d) was invited

20 It is known that Gustavo Eiffel .... the Eiffel Tower in 1889.
a) was designed b) was designing
c) had been designed d) designed

21 Has the e-mail .... by anyone?
a) sent b) send c) been sent d) been sending

22 The school windows ....
a) have just cleaned b) had just been cleaned
c) have just been cleaned d) are just cleaning

23 On my way home last night, I .... by some thieves, who robbed me of everything.
a) am attacked b) was attacked c) attacked d) be attacked

24 The company .... by a group of friends in 2007.
a) has been founded b) was founded
c) founded d) was found

25 My room .... yesterday because I was busy studying for the exam. *(Longman)*
a) wasn't arranged b) didn't arrange
c) wasn't arranging d) hasn't been arranged

26 My teacher gave us a lot of questions, but many of them .... as they were difficult.
a) weren't answered b) didn't answer
c) answered d) wasn't answered

27 I play chess with my friends every day. I haven't been beaten at chess yet. This means ....
a) everyone has already beaten me at chess
b) nobody has beaten me at chess so far
c) I have been beaten at chess
d) I have never beaten anyone at chess

28 Donya was punishing Omar when I called her. This means ....
a) Donya was being punished by Omar when I called her
b) Omar was not being punished by Donya when I called her
c) Omar was being punished by Donya when I called her
d) I was being punished by Donya when I called her

29 A: Where .... taken? B: To prison.
a) the criminals were b) were the criminals
c) the criminals have been d) have the criminals

30 "Who rewarded you yesterday?" What does this question mean?
a) Who did you reward yesterday? b) Whom did you reward yesterday?
c) By whom were you rewarded yesterday? d) None of the previous.

Test yourself



Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 Hany decided to start a business of his ....
a) own b) owe c) owing d) energy

2 My friend is used to expensive cars as he was born into a .... family.
a) big b) wealthy c) comfortable d) huge

3 Rashad is a very clever .... who really deserves a promotion.
a) customer b) employer c) employee d) client

4 We all must pay attention to .... who have lost their parents.
a) criminals b) organs c) orphanages d) orphans

5 I think his loud voice and bad words have .... his neighbours.
a) amused b) upset c) pleased d) failed

6 Hana is our close .... who always visits us, and so do we.
a) relationship b) relevant c) relative d) relations

7 Their attempt to climb Everest ended in ....; they couldn't climb it.
a) success b) cruelty c) failure d) honesty

8 The bad student was sent .... owing to .... his bad behaviour.
a) of b) into c) away d) for

9 The hotel I stayed in was so large and .... It was a five-star one.
a) tiring b) cruel c) kind d) comfortable

10 I couldn't .... my student when I met him by chance. He has changed a lot.
a) realise b) understand c) recognise d) organise

11 Thanks to my ...., I've learnt about etiquette and how to deal with others.
a) servant b) governess c) orphan d) gardener

12 His father's family lived in a big house with .... They were very rich.
a) scientists b) advertisers c) owners d) servants

13 A lot of employers want to .... efficient persons with high skills.
a) employ b) rent c) reply d) apply

14 He gave me two answers; the first was wrong, but the .... was correct.
a) later b) late c) latter d) latest

15 The Arab writer and ...., Naguib Mahfouz, won the Nobel Prize for Literature.
a) reader b) actor c) author d) maker

Language

16 A new sports centre .... in our town next week.
a) was opened b) will be opened
c) has been opened d) had been opened

17 All the houses in our street .... every year during the Christmas season.
a) will be decorated b) were decorated
c) are decorated d) have been decorated

18 When Mr Abdelaziz entered the room, emails .... by his assistants.
a) were being typed b) have been typed
c) will be typed d) were typing

19 The windows and the door ...., then I set off and drove my car to work.
a) locked b) had locked c) were locked d) was locked

20 While I was walking through the forest, I .... and called for help.
a) was losing b) got lost c) have lost d) lost

21 Have you ever .... by anyone before?
a) deceived b) being deceived c) be deceived d) been deceived

22 Too many people gathered around the site where the film ....
a) was making b) was being made c) has been making d) is made

23 Many forms of energy .... by man over history.
a) have been used b) has been used c) have used d) are using

24 A new drug has .... to combat COVID-19 recently.
a) been developed b) developed
c) been developing d) to develop

25 We .... that we had to give in our homework on Thursday.
a) were told b) told c) had been told d) were telling

26 She .... in a hotel in the north of England.
a) was seen b) is being seen c) saw d) had seen

27 A lot of crimes .... in this neighbourhood last month.
a) are committed b) were committed c) were committing d) committed

28 What was said in the meeting ....
a) didn't expect b) wasn't expecting
c) hadn't been expected d) will be expected

29 I .... to stay up late to finish all my work as a punishment.
a) am making b) was made c) was making d) had made

30 I was so angry as I .... in the list of the employees travelling to Dubai.
a) hadn't been enrolled b) haven't been enrolled
c) was enrolled d) wasn't enrolling



Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

abilities (n)*	قدرات	knowledge (n)	معرفة
age (n)	سن/عمر	lose (v)	يفقد
artist (n)	فنان	lucky (adj)	محظوظ
bookshop (n)	مكتبة لبيع الكتب	mean (v)	يعنى
break (n)	راحة/فاصل	mind (v) – ed	يمانع
bridge (n)	جسر/كوبرى	musician (n)	موسيقار
bullying (n)	البلطجة/التنمر	opposite (n)	عكس/نقيض
change (n)/(v) – d	يغير/يتغير	otherwise (adv)	وإلا
confidence (n)	ثقة	practical (adj)	عملى
copy (n) (v) (y-ied)	نسخة/ينسخ	practise (v) – d	يمارس
critical (adj)	انتقادى	shelf (n)	رف
electrician (n)	فنى كهرباء	skill (n)	مهارة
engine (n)	محرك/موتور	so-called (adj)	المزعوم/ما يسمى بـ
engineering (n)	هندسة	solver (n)	حلّال المشاكل
equipment (n)	معدات	subject (n)	مادة دراسية/موضوع
experiment (n)	تجربة عملية	terrible (adj)	فظيع
home-schooled (adj)	المتعلم فى المنزل	thinking (n)	تفكير
keen (adj)	متحمس		

You must believe in your abilities to succeed.

Workbook Vocabulary

appreciate (v) – d	يقدر	exciting (adj)	مثير
brilliant (adj)	رائع/ذكى	feelings (n)	مشاعر
conclusion (n)	استنتاج	imagination (n)	خيال
description (n)	وصف	serious (adj)	جاد
especially (adv)	خصوصا	statements (n)	بيانات/صياغات

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our science teacher is very good at doing scientific ....
   a) experiences b) experience c) exercises d) experiments
2. I don't like funny films or programs, I like .... ones.
   a) series b) dangerous c) comic d) serious
3. Ahmed Khaled Tawfik was a great .... He wrote many novels and articles.
   a) author b) artist c) musician d) poet
4. To go diving, you must have some special .... such as a mask.
   a) equipment b) information c) knowledge d) description
5. My employer was a good man. He'd never .... anyone.
   a) served b) helped c) hoped d) hurt
6. My mother really feels .... after my father's death.
   a) only b) lonely c) serious d) a lone
7. I made up my mind. Nothing will make me .... my decision.
   a) take b) charge c) reach d) change
8. After a long .... with her father, she was convinced not to take the job.
   a) interview b) conclusion c) discussion d) agreement
9. The young actor's last film was absolutely ....
   a) keen b) interested c) brilliant d) proud
10. The teacher pleased me a lot when he offered to .... the lesson for me again.
    a) extract b) explain c) inquire d) decline

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a long way from	بعيدًا عن	laugh at	يسخر من
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	get on well with	يتناغم/ينسجم مع
bring success	يجلب النجاح	keep going back	يستمر فى العودة
build an engine	يصنع محركًا	generate/make electricity	يولّد كهرباء
do sports	يمارس الرياضة	run open days	ينظم أيامًا مفتوحة
do well	يؤدى بشكل جيد	start school	يبدأ الدراسة
feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة	pick ... up	يلتقط
for that reason	لهذا السبب	ready for	جاهز لـ
for a while	لبرهة من الزمن	support ... with	يدعم ... بـ
for instance	على سبيل المثال	take part in	يشارك فى
agree with	يتفق مع	thanks to	بفضل
disagree with	لا يتفق مع	way of + n./v + ing	طريقة لـ
good at	جيد فى	way to + inf.	طريقة لـ
keep on/carry on	يستمر فى	at the age	فى سن
keen to/on	حريص أن	in the age of	فى عصر
learn from	يتعلم من		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
appreciate	يقدر	appreciation	تقدير	appreciative	تقديرى
bully	يتنمر	bullying bully	التنمر متنمر	--------------------	
complete	يكمل/يتمم	completion	إكمال/إتمام	complete	كامل
conclude	يستنتج	conclusion	استنتاج	conclusive	حاسم

confide*	يصارح/يأتمن	confidence	ثقة	confident	واثق
criticise	ينتقد	critic criticism	ناقد نقد	critical	انتقادى/محرج
explain	يشرح	explanation	شرح	explanatory	تفسيرى
home-school	يتعلم/يعلم فى المنزل	home-schooling	التعليم فى المنزل	home-schooled	خلص بالتعليم فى المنزل
mean	يعنى	meaning	معنى	meaningful meaningless	ذو معنى بلا معنى
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسن	improved	مُحسن/مُعدل
practise	يمارس/يتدرب	practice	ممارسة/تدريب	practised practical	ماهر عملى
solve	يحل	solution solver	حل حلال المشاكل	solvable	قابل للحل
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح

- I can confide my money to my mother only.
- I have confidence in my mother's wisdom.
- I'm confident that I will win the game.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
definitely	بالتأكيد	certainly/absolutely	uncertain/indefinitely بشكل غير محدد
especially	خصوصًا	particularly/exceptionally	generally/commonly عمومًا
exciting	مثير	thrilling/inspiring	boring/dull ممل
explain	يشرح/يفسر	clarify/illustrate	distract/complicate يشتت/يعقد
terrible	فظيع	horrible/dreadful	beautiful/wonderful جميل/رائع

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is impolite to .... at your friends when they make mistakes.
   a) laugh b) click c) look d) check
2. This station is responsible for .... electricity for our area.
   a) taking b) making c) doing d) generalising
3. The match we attended in the stadium was wonderful. The antonym of the word "wonderful" is ....
   a) beautiful b) amazing c) terrible d) terrific
4. I think it is a .... of time playing computer games during exams.
   a) missed b) waste c) lost d) serious
5. Our kind teacher always explains the lesson again and again till we understand. The word "explain" gives the same meaning as ....
   a) complicate b) illustrate c) distract d) hide
6. I asked my son if he was ready .... his final exams.
   a) to b) of c) for d) about
7. We must be .... to our parents to whom we owe much.
   a) appreciative b) appreciate c) appreciation d) appreciated
8. It is not an easy task to .... well with newcomers from the first day.
   a) stay with b) go on c) carry on d) get on
9. There were more than 250 victims of the .... plane crash that happened last week.
   a) terrible b) terrific c) terrified d) terrifies
10. Any problem is .... if we cooperate to solve it.
   a) solver b) solution c) solving d) solvable

Reading Text

STEM subjects

Science, technology, engineering[1] and maths were taught in schools long before the invention of the internet. However, we now live in a time when these subjects[2] are more important than ever. This does not mean that music, history, languages and other subjects are not important. However, understanding[3] the so-called[4] STEM subjects can be an important bridge to a good job in the future.

Many businesses do not have enough people with knowledge of the STEM subjects. For that reason, they are keen to[5] give jobs to young people with these skills[6].

In the past, STEM subjects were often seen as difficult. To change this idea, many businesses now run[7] open days at which students can try building[8] car engines, using a bike to make electricity, or playing computer games to practise[9] maths.

Schools, too, are helping students to realise that these subjects can be both interesting and fun for boys and girls of all abilities[10]. Schools might not have the equipment to build engines, but many now use different experiments[11] and computers so that students can learn by doing things, and not just by reading a text. This also helps with critical thinking skills[12] which students can use in other subjects.

It is said that 80% of jobs in the future will need students to have skills in the STEM subjects. Of course we will also need artists, musicians, language teachers and other experts[13], but skills in STEM subjects will help students to become the problem solvers[14] and inventors of the future.

(1) هندسة
(2) مواد دراسية
(3) فهم
(4) ما يسمى بـ
(5) حريص أن
(6) مهارات
(7) تدير
(8) صناعة
(9) يتدرب على
(10) قدرات
(11) تجارب
(12) مهارات التفكير الناقد
(13) خبراء
(14) حلّالو المشاكل



Listening Text

Girl 1 : I don't think that everyone needs to go to university. In fact, I think it's a waste[1] of time for some people.

Girl 2 : That's true. If you know you want a job doing something practical[2], like being an electrician[3], or if you have a great idea for a business, why not start immediately?

Girl 1 : Exactly.

Boy 1 : I know in some countries, children start school really early, but I think three is too young. I mean, at that age all children want to do is play!

Boy 2 : I'd say the opposite[4]. The earlier you start the better. It will give you a good start[5] in life.

Boy 3 : They say that your school days are the best days of your life and I think that's probably[6] true. It's not just about learning, it's also about making friends and learning to help each other.

Boy 4 : You're right. My parents both loved school and made really good friends there.

Girl 3 : If you're really ill, then it's great that there are ways of learning at home so that there isn't a break[7] in your education. But, otherwise[8], you should go to school.

Girl 4 : I don't agree with you. There are lots of advantages[9] with learning at home. There isn't any bullying, for instance[10].

Girl 5 : I don't think people understand how important education really is for young people. I mean, what kind of a future can you have without a good education these days?

Girl 6 : A lot of people have good lives without doing well at school. I'm completely against this idea that education is the only way to do well.

(1) مضيعة
(2) عملي
(3) شخص يعمل بالكهرباء
(4) النقيض
(5) بداية
(6) من المحتمل
(7) توقف
(8) عدا ذلك
(9) مميزات
(10) على سبيل المثال

Reading Text (Workbook)

Introduction

People say that it is impossible to succeed[1] without failure[2] and even the most successful people make mistakes. As well as this, many people believe[3] in the importance of learning from your mistakes.

Advantages

Sometimes failure can make people work harder and do things better. As a consequence[4], they appreciate[5] success more because it hasn't been easy for them. For instance, when football players lose a match, they are sad but they learn how to improve[6] and do better next time.

Disadvantages

On the other hand, success can make you feel positively[7] about what you are doing and it can give you a reason to keep trying. In addition, many people prefer to forget their mistakes so they can have good memories about the past.

Conclusion

In conclusion, although it is possible to have success without failure, from my point of view[8], it is better to fail[9] sometimes in order to appreciate success more.

(1) ينجح
(2) فشل
(3) يعتقد
(4) كنتيجة لذلك
(5) يقدّر
(6) يحسن
(7) بصورة إيجابية
(8) من وجهة نظري
(9) يفشل



Listening Text (Workbook)

Speaker 1 : I mean, it can't be good for your confidence[1], can it? It's got to get you down.

Speaker 2 : It was the best thing that ever happened to me. Everything had been a bit too easy for me before, so I wasn't ready for it. But then I had to make some real effort[2].

Speaker 3 : I hated it but, after feeling sorry for myself for a while[3], I could see my mistakes[4] and I knew what I had to do.

Speaker 4 : My friends were lovely, but I just felt terrible and I kept on feeling terrible. In fact, I haven't tried it again because it upsets me too much.

Speaker 5 : When you've made as many mistakes as me, you learn to pick yourself up and carry on[5].

(1) ثقة
(2) جهد حقيقي
(3) فترة من الوقت
(4) أخطاء
(5) يستمر

Video Script

Most young people go to school every day and have lessons with other children, but not everyone does this. In some countries, students can learn at home instead[1] and their teachers are usually their parents.

We call this way of learning "home-schooling[2]". Home-schooling is useful for young people who live a long way from a school, and it's becoming more popular[3] today because students can easily use computers to learn wherever they are. Home-schooling is also useful for students who are sick[4] and cannot go to a school every day.

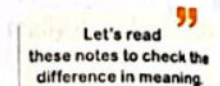
A good thing about home-schooling is that children can learn at a time and in a place that's best for them, rather than following a school timetable[5]. But, on the other hand, home-schooling isn't right for everyone. Home-schooled children might feel lonely[6] because it can be harder for them to make friends. They may not be able to do sports[7] with other young people either.

(1) بدلًا من
(2) التعليم بالبيت
(3) معروف
(4) مريض
(5) جدول
(6) يشعر بالوحدة
(7) يمارس الرياضة



0:00

Notes on Vocabulary



Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1	(be) a success = (be) successful = (be) a successful + noun	- His first novel was a success. - His first novel was successful. - His first novel was a successful one.

2	argue for	يناضل من أجل/يؤيد	My daughter always argues for women's rights.
	argue against	يناضل ضد/يعارض	He argued powerfully against animal experiments.
	argue with	يجادل مع شخص فى الرأى	Don't argue with me. Just do what I tell you.

3 school/ a school / the school

- Most students start school in September.	هنا بمعنى الدراسة -
- I go to school to learn.	هنا الذهاب لنفس غرض المدرسة الأساسى -
- The government built a school in our village.	هنا بمعنى مبنى المدرسة -
- My father came to the school to ask about my results.	الذهاب لغرض آخر -

4	too	يمعنى أيضا فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة	I like English, and Adel likes it too.
	either	يمعنى أيضا فى نهاية الجملة المنفية	I don't like English, and Adel doesn't like it either.

5	electric (adj)	كهربائى: أى يعمل بالكهرباء (الوصف الأدوات والأجهزة)	- I have a modern electric washing machine. - Engineers designed electric cars that use batteries.
	electrical (adj)	كهربائى: أى يتعامل مع الكهرباء (الوصف الأعطال والأشخاص)	- The fire started with an electrical fault. - My father works as an electrical engineer.
	electricity (n)	الكهرباء	We got an electrician to install the new spotlights.
	electrician (n)	كهربائى (فنى كهرباء)	A company needs four electricians.
	electronic (adj)	إلكترونى	The manager sent me an electronic mail yesterday.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Ramy argued .... his mother for a long time to prove that he was right.
a) for b) against c) about d) with

2 The captain of the team .... a penalty at the end of the match.
a) lost b) missed c) caught d) beat

3 My father is a teacher in .... school in Cairo.
a) the b) no article c) a d) an

4 He played a wonderful match, and he scored a goal, ...
a) too b) either c) neither d) so

5 My friend is the author of a .... novel published last year.
a) success b) succeed
c) successor d) successful

6 I'm going to .... tomorrow. The holiday is over.
a) a school b) school
c) any school d) the school

7 She always .... for a more positive role for women in society.
a) bullies b) argues
c) encourages d) beats

8 Do you know an ....? I want to mend the lights of the hall.
a) electric b) electrician
c) electronic d) electrical

9 Have you seen my new .... car? I won't need gas stations anymore.
a) electrical b) electronic
c) electric d) electrician



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 To master any language, you should .... it a lot.
a) check b) change c) do d) practise

2 I was too busy to go to the meeting, so I sent my secretary ....
a) steady b) instead c) instead of d) stead

3 We are all very .... on sports especially football as it's very exciting.
a) lucky b) keen c) critical d) confident

4 Please, can you explain what you .... by saying these words?
a) mean b) mind c) break d) invent

5 I gave the police officer the .... of the thief who broke into the house.
a) description b) explanation c) completion d) conclusion

6 The presenter .... the new rules to the audience in a simple infographic.
a) criticised b) explained c) bullied d) advertised

7 My teacher is very ....; he doesn't like jokes.
a) serious b) trivial c) easy d) difficult

8 The government managed to connect many parts of the country by building a number of ....
a) pavements b) bridges c) factories d) canals

9 In addition to preventing the floods, the High Dam .... electricity.
a) takes b) brings c) generates d) does

10 I was very upset to put myself in such a .... situation by making that silly mistake.
a) practical b) financial c) critical d) funny

11 I was so happy when my daughter .... in the university festival.
a) took place b) made part c) took turns d) took part

12 To see what the building will be like when we finish it, you need a lot of ....
a) argument b) imagination c) confidence d) destination

13 The .... of the novel was quite a surprise. We really didn't expect such an end.
a) introduction b) imagination c) conclusion d) incident

14 .... is very essential these days especially for those who can't go to school.
a) Home-school b) Home-schooling
c) Preschooler d) Home-schooled

15 There are plenty of career opportunities for you as a creative problem ....
a) solving b) solution c) solve d) solver

16 I know I will enjoy the show if I am .... enough to get a ticket.
a) unlucky b) lucky c) destitute d) bullied

17 The company is keen to make its employees feel ....
a) appreciated b) appreciate c) appreciative d) appreciation

18 Living in the city has taught me to .... the differences between people.
a) appreciated b) appreciate c) appreciative d) appreciation

19 Although my children are home-.............., they are so sociable.
a) schooled b) schooling c) school d) scholars

20 The police demanded the businessman to review his recent financial ....
a) improvements b) conclusions c) criticisms d) statements

21 The criminal was sentenced to death and I think that it was the logical ....
a) conclusion b) introduction c) statement d) imagination

22 Our local hospital has a lot of modern and important .... for the sake of people.
a) tools b) equipment c) appreciation d) explanatory

23 Scientists must do a series of .... to test a new drug.
a) experiences b) experience c) exercises d) experiments

24 The manager said that he had complete .... in her and that she would be perfect for the job.
a) confidence b) doubt c) confident d) appreciation

25 The manager said that he was completely .... in her skills, and she would be perfect for the job.
a) confidence b) doubt c) confident d) appreciation

26 The students were asked to carry out an important .... in the science laboratory yesterday. (Longam)
a) sport b) experiment c) experience d) complement

27 I think it's a .... of time to spend too much time playing computer games. (Longam)
a) benefit b) waste c) charge d) waist

28 STEM schools have the equipment to enable students to .... small engines. (Longam)
a) appear b) separate c) build d) explore

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

29 Some countries have the ability to .... electricity using the nuclear power الطاقة النووية.
a) do b) make c) give d) support e) generate

30 I always encourage my students to .... on their progress.
a) get b) help c) keep d) carry e) start

31 I've got some very exciting news for you. The antonyms of the word "exciting" are ".............."
a) boring b) dull c) thrilling d) horrible e) accurate

32 Can you explain what the poem means? The synonyms of the verb "explain" are ".............."
a) clarify b) distract c) change d) illustrate e) remain

B Language

1 Past Simple زمن الماضى البسيط

مراجعة سريعة على الماضى البسيط.

Affirmative	يتكون من التصريف الثانى للفعل. • He played football yesterday. • They took many photographs last week.
Usage	يستخدم للتعبير عن: ١- حدث تم وانتهى فى الماضى. • We went to the cinema two days ago. ٢- عادة كانت تحدث فى الماضى ولم تعد تحدث الآن. • She always visited her aunt when she was ill. ٣- ترتيب الأحداث وتتابعها فى الماضى. • I went to the club and met my friends.
Negative	didn't + inf. • They didn't play football yesterday.
Interrogative	(Wh-question) (Wh- word) + did + subj. + inf.? • What did he play yesterday? (Yes/No question) Did + subj. + inf.? • Did you play football yesterday?
Key words	yesterday – last – ago – once – one day – in the past – in ancient times – in (2000)

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... my uncle to dinner last week.
a) had invited b) invites c) invited d) have invited

2 He .... from prison three days ago. The police are now looking for him.
a) was escaping b) escaped c) had escaped d) has escaped

3 Thieves broke into their flat last week. Lots of valuables and money ....
a) was stolen b) has stolen c) were stolen d) has been stolen

4 In 2010, my parents .... in a small flat in the city centre.
a) lived b) had lived c) are living d) have lived

5 How long .... he stay in Luxor last month?
a) did b) do c) does d) done

2 Past Perfect زمن الماضى التام

The past perfect tense is used to indicate that an action occurred before another one in the past. يستخدم الماضى التام للإشارة إلى الأحداث التى سبقت مواقف محددة أو أحداثًا أخرى فى الماضى.



FORM

Affirmative	Subject + had + P.P. • I/He/They had attended the match before going to the party.
Negative	Subject + hadn't + P.P. • I/He/They hadn't attended the match before going to the party.
Interrogative	(Wh-question) (Wh- word) + had + subject + P.P.? • What had you attended before going to the party? (Yes/No question) Had + subject + P.P.? • Had they attended the match before going to the party?
Passive	Object + had + been + P.P. • The match had been attended before going to the party.

USAGE الاستخدام

1. An action was completed by an exact past time reference:
نستخدم الماضى التام للتعبير عن اكتمال حدوث فعل بحلول وقت محدد فى الماضى.
- By last Monday, the painter had painted my whole flat.

2. An action was completed before another action.
نستخدم الماضى التام للتعبير عن اكتمال حدوث فعل قبل فعل آخر.
- I found the wallet and the money after I had looked for them for a long time.

Key words



- After he had finished his homework, he slept.

- مع ملاحظة:

After + v-ing (مع عدم وجود فاعل), ... past simple

- After doing my homework, I slept.



- Before we watched TV, we had done our homework.
- He had finished his work by the time he helped his brother.

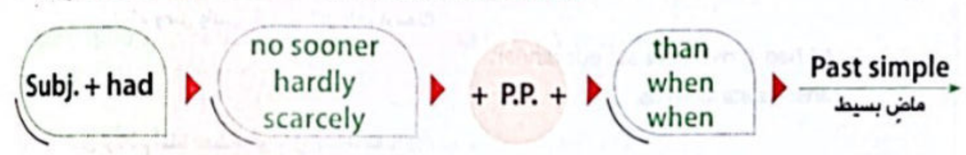
- مع ملاحظة:

Before + v-ing (مع عدم وجود فاعل), ... past perfect

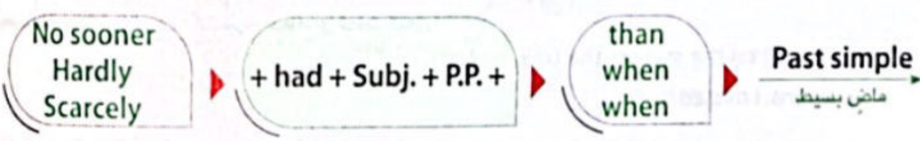
- Before sleeping, I had done my homework.



- We didn't watch TV until we had done our homework.
- The house wasn't cleaned until I had done it myself.
- Hany refused to come until I had phoned him.
- They couldn't go out until their father had arrived.



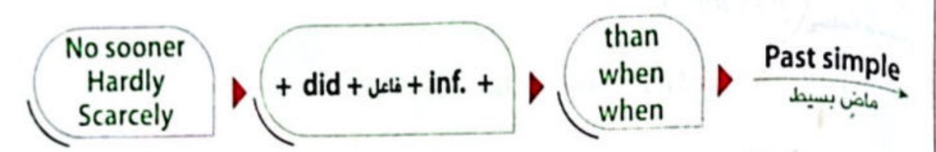
- He had no sooner completed his studies than he travelled abroad.
- I had hardly/scarcely bought my needs when I went home.



- No sooner had Mido come home than he began to do his homework.
- Hardly/Scarcely had he watched TV when he went to bed.



من الممكن استخدام الماضي البسيط بدلًا من الماضي التام كما يلي:



- No sooner did I see the accident than I called the police.

. لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- It was only when + ماضٍ تام + that + ماضٍ بسيط
- It was not until + ماضٍ تام + that + ماضٍ بسيط

- After he had played the game, he went home.
  - It was only when he had played the game that he went home.
  - It was not until he had played the game that he went home.



Important Notes



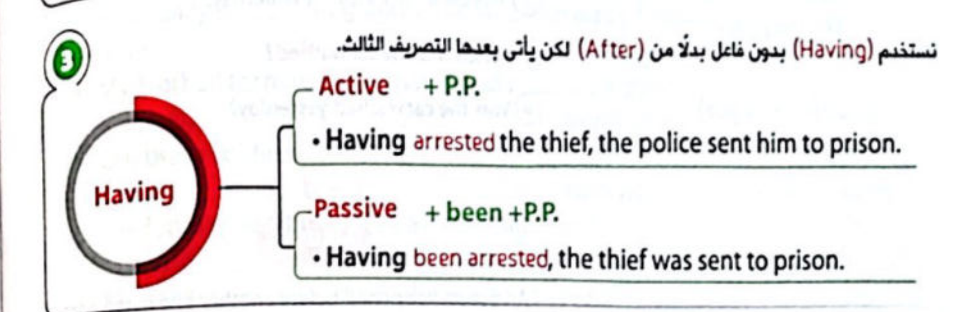
1 When ▶
- Past perfect, Past simple
- Past simple, Past simple
- Past simple, Past perfect

- When dad arrived, we had eaten our dinner.
  This means: He didn't eat with us.
  (أكلنا العشاء أولًا ثم وصل والدى، أى لم يأكل العشاء معنا)
- When dad had arrived, we ate our dinner.
  This means: He ate with us.
  (وصل والدى أولًا ثم أكلنا العشاء، أى أكل العشاء معنا)
- When I had reached the station, the train left.
  This means: I caught it.
  (وصلت للمحطة أولًا ثم غادر القطار المحطة، أى لحقت القطار)
- When I reached the station, the train had left.
  This means: I missed it.
  (القطار غادر المحطة أولًا ثم وصلت للمحطة، أى فاتنى القطار)

2 كلمة on من الممكن استخدامها بدلًا من when كالتالي:

- When + past simple = On + (v-ing)
- When I met my friend, I knew what had happened.
  - On meeting my friend, I knew what had happened.

3 نستخدم (Having) بدون فاعل بدلًا من (After) لكن يأتي بعدها التصريف الثالث.



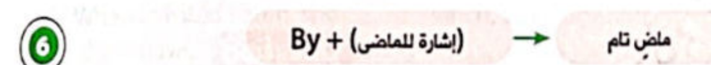
4 يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط فقط مع أدوات الربط الزمنية خاصة إذا كان ترتيب الحدثين منطقيًا أو الفارق الزمني بينهما بسيطًا.

- After it got dark, we came back inside.
- He arrived before we sat down to eat.

5 إذا جاء في الجملة أكثر من حدثين (فعلين)، فلا بد أن يوضع الحدث الأقدم في زمن الماضي التام.

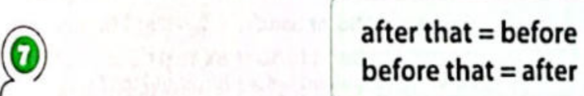
- When I returned home, I found out that someone had stolen my money.

6



- By 1990, our national team had qualified to the World Cup.

7



- I had finished my homework, after that, I went to bed.
- I arrived home, before that, I had visited my uncle.

Language Summary

Past Simple Passive

(was/were › p.p)

- The car was washed yesterday.
- The car wasn't washed yesterday.
- When was the car washed?
- Was the car washed yesterday?

Past Perfect Tense

Usage

- An action happened before another one in the past.
- An action was completed by a certain time in the past.

Affirmative

- He had studied a lot before he graduated.

Negative

- He hadn't studied a lot before he failed.

Question

- Had he studied a lot before he graduated?
- Yes, he had / No, he hadn't.
- How had he studied before he graduated?
- He had studied hard.

Practice



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Two days ago, I .... on a picnic with my family.
   a) go b) had been c) went d) was going
2. He usually .... his grandfather when he was on holiday.
   a) visits b) visit c) was visiting d) visited
3. My football team won the match and I .... a goal.
   a) scored b) score c) have scored d) was scoring
4. Our brave soldiers .... the 1973 war against Israel.
   a) win b) won c) have won d) were wining
5. The football season .... a month ago.
   a) began b) was beginning c) had begun d) was begun
6. After she .... the book, she wanted to see the film.
   a) was finishing b) had finished c) has finished d) was finished
7. As soon as I .... out, it .... to rain heavily. *(Longman)*
   a) went / had started b) will go / has started
   c) go / started d) had gone / started
8. It .... difficult to use social networking sites many years ago.
   a) is b) has been c) was d) had been
9. When I lived in London, I .... through the park every day.
   a) was walking b) had walked c) walked d) was walked
10. By the age of ten, Rana .... how to use the internet.
    a) was learning b) had learnt c) had been learnt d) has learnt
11. When I visited Faten, she .... lunch, so I didn't find any food left. *(Longman)*
    a) will have b) was having c) has just had d) had just had
12. After he had left school, he .... to work in a company.
    a) goes b) had gone c) went d) was going
13. By the time we reached, they .... discussing the book; we couldn't participate.
    a) had finished b) were finishing c) have finished d) finished
14. I .... the exam until I had read the questions carefully.
    a) don't answer b) didn't answer c) hadn't answered d) won't answer
15. By the time the movie started, my father .... asleep; he didn't watch the movie as usual! *(Longman)*
    a) hadn't fallen b) has fallen c) won't fall d) had fallen
16. .... had he left home than he heard an explosion.
    a) Hardly b) No sooner c) Before d) After
17. The train .... when I arrived at the station. I didn't catch it.
    a) left b) was left c) had left d) has left

18 As soon as I met this man, I knew I .... him somewhere before.
a) has seen b) have seen c) had seen d) was seeing
19 .... meeting my brother, I asked him to come with me to the dentist's.
a) On b) The moment c) As soon as d) During
20 When she saw the fire coming out of the factory, she ....
a) was screaming b) had screamed c) screamed d) will scream
21 Having .... the shopping, mother started to prepare lunch.
a) do b) she did c) done d) she had done
22 The house was dirty. We .... it for weeks.
a) haven't cleaned b) hadn't cleaned c) weren't cleaning d) don't clean
23 It was only .... I had found my book that I felt relaxed.
a) while b) until c) before d) when
24 I realised that I .... a silly mistake in the exam when I checked my answer.
a) have made b) had made c) am making d) made
25 When I went to the stadium, the match .... so I missed the exciting beginning. (Longman)
a) hadn't started yet
b) had already started
c) hasn't started yet
d) has already started
26 .... bought a new bag, I threw the old one away.
a) After b) Having c) Being d) Had
27 The house was quiet when I got home. Everyone .... to bed.
a) had gone b) has gone c) had been d) was going
28 When he went to the party, his friend ...., so he didn't meet him.
a) left b) had left c) was leaving d) leaves
29 Having .... the good news, I hurried to tell my family. (Longman)
a) have received b) had received c) received d) receiving
30 He admitted that he .... his brother's watch.
a) was breaking b) would break c) has been broken d) had broken
31 Having .... in a friendly way, I felt so relaxed in the exam.
a) treated b) had treated c) been treated d) have treated
32 Which one of the following sentences is CORRECT?
a) While I reached the station, the bus left. I missed it.
b) As soon as I finished my homework, a TV film had started.
c) I watched a film last night. Before that, I have done my homework.
d) Hardly had I arrived home when my phone rang.
33 One of the following sentences is WRONG. Which one is it?
a) After watching the film, my friend Ali arrived.
b) Having finished the report, I gave it to my manager.
c) As soon as seeing my teacher, I greeted him respectfully.
d) When I was on my way to school, I saw a terrible accident.

Test yourself


Take a test

Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 Oh! You live next to your favourite club. You're ....
a) practical b) critical c) lucky d) brilliant
2 The coach was .... to give motivational speech to the players before the final match.
a) keen b) lucky c) real d) terrible
3 I think .... is a good way of education, and it's safe for our children.
a) house learning b) teach schooling c) educate schooling d) homeschooling
4 The .... told me that the wires were old and needed to be changed completely.
a) carpenter b) electrician c) blacksmith d) politician
5 .... must be fought by all members of society as it affects us all.
a) Cooperating b) Imagination c) Thinking d) Bullying
6 He is very .... I don't think I've ever seen him laugh.
a) serious b) trivial c) easy d) difficult
7 Akram, who's my nephew, is a/an .... boy; he always comes first at school.
a) proud b) interested c) brilliant d) keen
8 He couldn't cross the river as there wasn't a/an .... over it.
a) umbrella b) author c) bridge d) stone
9 Business is not easy; for ...., Nokia company failed to compete in the market.
a) instant b) instead c) instance d) incident
10 Despite all the warnings, many people .... to smoke.
a) stop b) continue c) leave d) stay
11 Construction companies employ night guards to secure their .... against thieves.
a) equipment b) information c) experience d) experiment
12 My first book sold 100000 copies. This means that it was ....
a) succeed b) successfully c) a success d) a successful
13 The company will make a/an .... about the accident later today.
a) states b) advertisement c) application d) statement
14 I went to see the playwright's .... masterpiece, but I was very disappointed by it.
a) so-cold b) so-hot c) too-cold d) so-called
15 Self-.............. is very important for every student to pass their exams, but it shouldn't be too much.
a) explanation b) sure c) confidence d) doubt

16 She was late because she .... to set her alarm clock.
a) had forgotten b) has forgotten c) was forgetting d) forget

17 I had no sooner seen my daughter .... I asked her to tell me all about the exam.
a) than b) that c) when d) then

18 The children collected the fruit that .... from the tree.
a) had fallen b) could fall c) falls d) have fallen

19 Hardly .... home when I took off my clothes and slept.
a) I had arrived b) have I arrived c) I arrived d) did I arrive

20 Magda refused to return the stolen mobile .... I had threatened to call the police.
a) until b) on c) before d) while

21 .... washing my car, I took my family out for a drive.
a) While b) By the time c) As d) After

22 They didn't come to the cinema with us because they .... already seen the film.
a) have b) were c) had d) are

23 .... finished my work, I began to watch TV.
a) After b) Before c) During d) Having

24 I didn't watch the movie .... I had already read the story of the film.
a) before b) because c) by the time d) unless

25 Nermeen was really hungry because she .... all day.
a) hadn't eaten b) hasn't eaten c) doesn't eat d) wasn't eating

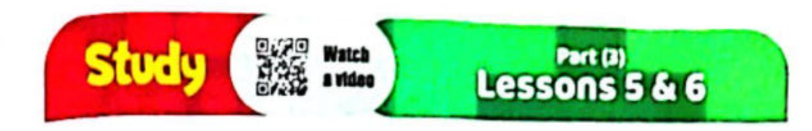
26 He had scarcely bought a car .... he sold it again.
a) when b) that c) than d) then

27 My sister .... in Canada for two years before she moved on to London.
a) has lived b) was living c) is living d) had lived

28 Having graduated, he .... abroad.
a) travelled b) had travelled c) has travelled d) would travel

29 They said that the driver's speed .... the accident.
a) had been caused b) was caused
c) had caused d) has caused

30 Salma .... use to stay up late at night, but now she does.
a) doesn't b) isn't c) wasn't d) didn't







للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات

How to write a summary:

1. Keep the plot.
2. Focus on the main events.
3. Try to mention all the main characters.
4. Omit the unimportant actions.
5. Make it interesting (use synonyms and don't repeat yourself)

Model Essay

Summary of Jane Eyre

Jane Eyre was an orphan who lived with her cousins and her cruel, wealthy aunt, Mrs Reed. The family was unkind and they did not want Jane to live with them. Jane was sent away to school. The owner, Mr Brocklehurst, was very cruel, so the students lived unhappy lives. Finally, Mr Brocklehurst was told to leave the school. Six years later, Jane became a teacher at Lowood School. After two years, Jane decided to apply for a job as a governess.

She started to teach a young French girl called Adèle at a big house called Thornfield Hall. The owner of the house was Mr Rochester. Jane enjoyed her new job and became friends with Mrs Fairfax, the kind housekeeper. One night, there was a fire at Thornfield Hall and Jane saved Mr Rochester. He said that the fire was started by a servant called Grace, but Grace did not lose her job. Jane did not understand, but she thought that there was a secret in the house. Later, she discovered that the one who set the fire was Mr Rochester's insane wife who was trapped at the third storey of the house. Jane was about to marry Mr Rochester until that happened. Jane left Thornfield Hall, but she could not forget it.

She met her cousins by chance and got a job as a teacher in a charity school. St. John, one of her cousins, informed her that she had inherited a fortune of 20,000 pounds which they shared together. He wanted to marry her but she refused as she was in love with Mr Rochester.

Jane hurried back to Thornfield and found that Bertha lost her life in a fire she had set. Rochester saved the servants but lost his eyesight and one of his hands. Jane travelled on to Rochester's new residence, Ferndean, where he lived with two servants named John and Mary. At Ferndean, Rochester and Jane rebuilt their relationship and soon married. After two years of blindness, Rochester regained sight in one eye and was able to behold their first son at his birth.



1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Some people say that a tourist visits the sights, but a traveller talks to the local people. This is because different people want different experiences when they go on holiday. Some tourists prefer food, which is familiar to them, and so they often look for famous fast food restaurants or food from their own country. They want to see the famous museums, monuments and beaches, and they will usually speak in their own language when they go abroad.

On the other hand, travellers will usually learn a few phrases in the local language, and they want to eat in typical cafes and restaurants. Sometimes they will look for places to visit that are less famous because they enjoy finding something a little different. Today both travellers and tourists are learning about their impact on the environment. It seems that whatever type of traveller you are, it's always good to respect the places you visit so that other people can enjoy them as well. Moreover, you'll not be welcomed anymore when you damage the environment you visit. For instance, there are tourists from certain countries who are known for their carelessness and disorganisation. These people rarely find a hotel to accept their reservations or provide attractive programmes for them. That's why they can't enjoy their stay in countries with strict laws.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Why do travellers go to foreign countries?
a) To see the sights. b) To meet new people.
c) To take photographs. d) To eat at fast food restaurants.

2 These days, tourists and travellers both ....
a) visit famous monuments
b) reduce their impact on the environment
c) eat at local restaurants
d) meet new people

3 Travellers will usually learn .... in the local language.
a) new songs b) new phrases
c) taking pictures d) drawing pictures

4 Tourists want to see the famous museums, ... and beaches.
a) cinemas b) schools c) monuments d) clubs

5 Travellers will look for places to visit that are less ....
a) beautiful b) expensive c) cultural d) famous

6 The best title for the passage is ....
a) Tourism b) Travellers and Tourists
c) Travelling and Trips d) Internal Tourism

7 Tourists do not usually ....
a) speak English b) go to local restaurants
c) visit famous monuments d) eat at fast food restaurants

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 It has become clear that the most serious problem, which affects us at the moment, is the increasing number of people who actually inhabit this planet.
a) لقد أصبح نظيفا أن أخطر مشكلة تؤثر علينا فى الوقت الحالى هى زيادة عدد الأشخاص الذين يمنعون هذا الكوكب بالفعل.
b) لقد أصبح واضحا أن أخطر مشكلة تؤثر علينا فى الوقت الحالى هى زيادة عدد الأشخاص الذين يسكنون هذا الكوكب بالفعل.
c) لقد أصبح واضحا أن أخطر مشكلة تؤثر علينا فى الوقت الحالى هى نقص عدد الأشخاص الذين يسكنون هذا الكوكب بالفعل.
d) قد يصبح واضحا أن أخطر مشكلة تؤثر علينا فى الوقت الحالى هى زيادة عدد الأشخاص الذين يسكنون هذا النبات بالفعل.

2 The difference between successful people and losers is that the successful refused to stay losers; they never stopped trying.
a) إن الفرق بين الناجحين والخاسرين هو أن الناجحين رفضوا أن يقيموا خاسرين ولم يتوقفوا أبدًا عن المحاولة.
b) إن الفرق بين الناجحين والفاشلين هو أن الناجحين رفضوا أن يظلوا فاشلين وتوقفوا دائما عن المحاولة.
c) إن الفرق بين الناجحين والخاسرين هو أن الخاسرين رفضوا أن يظلوا ناجحين ولم يتوقفوا أبدًا عن المحاولة.
d) إن الفرق بين الناجحين والفاشلين هو أن الناجحين رفضوا أن يظلوا فاشلين ولم يتوقفوا أبدًا عن المحاولة.

3 The good morals and values of the Egyptian people appear in times of hardships and crises as we have seen in the outbreak of coronavirus.
a) أن المغزى والقيم الحسنة للشعب المصرى تظهر فى أوقات المصاعب والأزمات كما رأيناها فى انتشار فيروس كورونا.
b) أن الأخلاق والقيم الحسنة للشعب المصرى تختفى فى أوقات المصاعب والأزمات كما رأيناها فى انكسار فيروس كورونا.
c) أن الأخلاق والقيم الحسنة للشعب المصرى تظهر فى أوقات المصاعب والأزمات كما رأيناها فى انتشار فيروس كورونا.
d) أن الأخلاق والقيم للشعب المصرى تظهر فى أوقات المصاعب والأزمات كما رأيناها فى تفشى مرض كورونا.

4 Technology is a double-edged weapon as it's the ladder by which humanity promotes and develops, but it can also be a tool for destruction.
a) إن التكنولوجيا سلاح ذو حدين لأنها القائد الذى ترتقى عليه البشرية وتتقدم ولكنها من الممكن أن تكون أداة للتدمير.
b) إن التكنولوجيا سلاح ذو حدين لأنها السلم الذى ترتقى عليه البشرية وتتقدم ولكنها من الممكن أن تكون أداة للتدمير.
c) إن التكنولوجيا سلاح ذو حدين لأنها السلم الذى ترتقى عليه البشرية وتتقدم ولكنها من الممكن أن تكون أداة للبناء.
d) إن التكنولوجيا سلاح مدمر لأنها السلم الذى ترتقى عليه البشرية وتتقدم ولكنها من الممكن أن تكون أداة للتدمير.

5 Everyone's personality is as different and unique as everyone's fingerprints. We can usually see people's personality in how they behave with others.

a) إن شخصية كل فرد مختلفة ومتميزة مثل آثار الأقدام ونحن نستطيع أن نرى شخصية الناس فى كيفية تعاملهم مع الآخرين.

b) إن شخصية كل فرد مختلفة ومتميزة كبصمات الأصابع ونحن لا نستطيع أن نرى شخصية الناس فى كيفية تعاملهم مع الآخرين.

c) إن شخصية كل فرد مختلفة ومتميزة كبصمات الأصابع ونحن نستطيع أن نرى شخصية الناس فى كيفية تعاملهم مع الآخرين.

d) إن شخصية كل فرد صعبة أو متميزة كبصمات الأصابع ونحن نستطيع أن نرى شخصية الناس فى كيفية تواصلهم مع الآخرين.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 لم يكد يصل إلى مكتبه حتى طلب مشروبه المعتاد وباشر عمله بنشاط.

a) No sooner he had reached his desk that he ordered his unique drink and started working actively.

b) No sooner had he got to his office than he ordered his usual drink and started his work actively.

c) Hardly had he got office when he ordered his everyday drink and started his work active.

d) After he had reached his office, he refused his usual drink and started his work active.

7 فـى معظـم الدول عادة ما يصاب الرجال بأمراض القلب أكثر من النسـاء ويقـول الأطباء إن مرض القلب مرتبط بضغوط الحياة اليومية ونظام المعيشة ونوع الأكل.

a) In most countries, men usually injure heart diseases more than women. Doctors say that heart disease is associated with life stress, life stylish and kind of food.

b) In most countries, men usually catch heart diseases more than women. Doctors say that heart disease is associated with life stress, lifestyle and the kind of food.

c) In some countries, men usually catch heart diseases most than women. Doctors say that heart disease is associated with life stress, lifestyle and kind of food.

d) In most countries, men usually catch heart diseases more than women. Doctors say that heart disease associated with live stress, lifestyle and kind of food.

8 لقد قام الكثير من الكتاب المصريين بكتابة مقالات وكتب عديدة للمطالبة بحقوق المرأة والمساواة بينها وبين الرجل.

a) Many Egyptian writers has written articles and books arguing for women's rights and the equality among them and men.

b) Many Egyptian writers have written articles and books arguing for women's rights and the equality between them and men.

c) Many Egyptian writer have written articles and books arguing for women's lights and the equality between them and men.

d) Much Egyptian writers have written articles and books arguing with women's rights and the equality between them and men.

9 لقد قامت الحكومة بإعداد خطة طموح للنهوض بالتعليم ورفع مستوى المعلم وكذلك جذب الطلاب للحضور إلى المدرسة.

a) The government has done an ambitious plan to upgrade education, rise the teacher's level and attract students to attend school.

b) The government has made an ambition plane to upgrade education, raise the teacher's level and attach students to attend school.

c) The government has made an ambitious plan to upgrade education, raise the teacher's level and attract students to attend school.

d) The government has made an ambitious plan to update education, raise the teacher's level and attract students to pretend school.

10 بعد أن قامت وزارة الآثار بترميم طريق الكباش بالأقصر أقامت احتفالا كبيرا لافتتاحه حضره رئيس الجمهورية.

a) After the Ministry of Antiquities had restored Kebash Road in Luxor, it held a great celebration for its inauguration, which was attended by the President of the Republic.

b) After the minister of Antiquities had restored Kebash Road in Luxor, it had held a great celebration for its inauguration, which was attended by the President of the Republic.

c) After the minister of Antiquities had restored Kebash Road in Luxor, it held a great celebration for its opening, which attended by the President of the Republic.

d) After the Ministry of Antiquities had restored Kebash Road in Luxor, it was holding a great celebration for its inauguration, which was attended by the President of the Republic.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"The importance of education for a country's progress"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

Unit 9 Question Bank — Al-Adwaa Test 40

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 Kareem works .... his family and he is happy with that.
a) in b) for c) with d) at e) on

2 I didn't like this film; the previous one was better. The synonyms of the word "previous" are "...............".
a) earlier b) former c) later d) afterward e) next

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 You should check your electrical .... regularly.
a) equipment b) requirement c) settlement d) statement

4 He needs to have more practice to become a/an .... in medicine.
a) trader b) user c) experience d) expert

5 This disease mostly affects people, ... those who are over 50.
a) especially b) luckily c) accordingly d) gradually

6 Football is one of the most popular .... sports in the world.
a) team b) individual c) group d) collective

7 I think poetry is very effective at expressing .... and ideas.
a) conclusions b) mistakes c) failings d) feelings

8 If she felt he was right, she would agree .... him.
a) for b) at c) with d) to

9 The teacher asked us to wait for .... before starting the new lesson.
a) a wire b) instance c) a while d) while

10 Alaa didn't confirm attending the party until I .... him in person.
a) had invited b) invites c) was inviting d) has invited

11 We weren't hungry because we .... our lunch.
a) were already eating b) have already eaten
c) had already eaten d) already eaten

12 My sister's teeth .... by the dentist at the moment.
a) are being cleaned b) are cleaned
c) were cleaned d) will be cleaned

13 After I .... to the stadium, I realised that the match had already started.
a) got b) had got c) was getting d) get

14 Having .... the license, he bought a new car.
a) obtain b) had obtained c) obtained d) obtaining

15 Where did you .... to play when you were young?
a) used b) using c) use d) uses

16 I had finished my work before .... the office.
a) left b) had left c) was leaving d) leaving

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Every mammal needs sleep, as do birds and fish. But what about insects? Do they need sleep? Scientists have been trying to discover the truth about insect sleep behaviour for years. Scientists first thought insects did not need sleep. According to them, the insect brain was not complex enough to need it. Scientists said that some kinds of brain activity, like dreaming, were sleep behaviours. Insects do not dream, so scientists said that they do not sleep. They believed that insects rest, instead. However, new studies have shown that some insects may actually sleep. There are four types of behaviour during sleep. First, sleeping people and animals don't move much. They have a position for sleeping; for example, they lie down. Additionally, they don't wake up easily when hearing noises or seeing light. Lastly, they are able to come out of sleep quickly in response to some intense stimulants. Scientists have now seen similar behaviours in fruit flies. For example, fruit flies become still every night for about seven hours. At these times, they sit in a different way, let their antennae drop, and do not respond to quiet noises. The flies do begin to move around when louder noises are made. Scientists think that some insects may have their own unique kind of sleep.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 How did scientists learn that insects sleep?
a) They used brain scanning machines.
b) They put flies in dark rooms.
c) They watched insects.
d) They took the antennae off flies.

18 Which of the following can animals do?
a) They can eat. b) They can sleep.
c) They can communicate. d) a, b and c.

19 What do fruit flies do for seven hours each day?
a) Sleep. b) Eat. c) Make noise. d) Fly.

20 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
a) a bug's dream b) sleep c) the insect d) a bug's

21 Why did scientists believe that insects do not need sleep?
a) Insects don't work hard. b) Insects can't close their eyes.
c) Their brain is simple. d) Insects don't live very long.

22 The best title for this passage is "..................".

a) Insects' sleep
c) Sleepy animals
d) Birds and snakes don't sleep
d) Wasting time

23 While sleeping, you ....

a) move freely
b) never move
c) run
d) barely move

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

. تعتبر المدارس الداخلية حلًا مثاليًا للطلاب من جميع أنحاء الجمهورية فهم يقضون معظم وقتهم فى المدرسة ويقومون بأنشطة مختلفة بجانب الدراسة.

a) Entering schools are considering an ideal solution to students from all over the republic as they spent most of their time inside school and do different activities besides study.
b) Local schools are considered an ideal solution to students from all over the republic as they spend most of their times inside school and make different activities beside study.
c) Boarding schools are considered an ideal solution to students from all over the republic as they spend most of their time inside schools and do different activities besides study.
d) Inside schools is considered an idle solution to students from all over the republic as they spend most of their time inside schools and do different activities besides study.

25 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

A job should not just be a source of money. It should also be a path for self-development. A very important factor is to find a job in a field you enjoy.

a) يجب أن تكون الوظيفة مجرد مصدر للمال ولكن يجب أن تكون أيضًا طريقًا لتطوير النفس؛ ولذلك فإن إيجاد وظيفة فى مجال تستمتع به هو عامل مهم جدًا.
b) لا يجب أن تكون الوظيفة فقط مصدرًا للمال ولكن يجب أن تكون أيضًا مؤشرًا لتطوير النفس؛ ولذلك فإن إيجاد وظيفة فى مجال تستمتع به هو مصنع مهم جدًا.
c) لا يجب أن تكون الوظيفة فقط مصدرًا للمال ولكن يجب أن تكون أيضًا طريقًا لضبط النفس؛ ولذلك فإن إيجاد وظيفة فى مجال تستمتع به هو عامل مهم جدًا.
d) لا يجب أن تكون الوظيفة مجرد مصدر للمال ولكن يجب أن تكون أيضًا طريقًا لتطوير النفس؛ ولذلك فإن إيجاد وظيفة فى مجال تستمتع به هو عامل مهم جدًا.

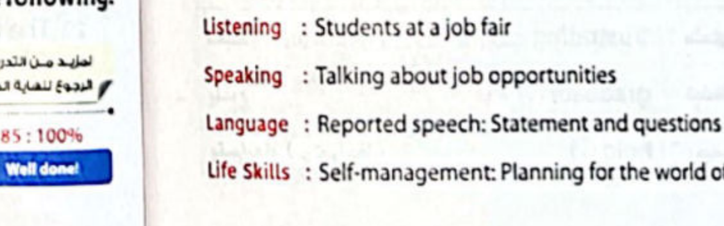
26 **Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do you think that the Hispaniola kept changing its direction?
2. Jim wasn't afraid of the pirate on the ship, Mr Hands! Do you agree? Why?
3. Why do you think that Jim steered the ship slowly onto the beach?

27 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**
Has technology improved our world and our lives?

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة المتفائلين الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 337







What's your job?

Unit 10

Objectives



Reading : Article about jobs

Writing : An email asking for advice; a personal CV

Listening : Students at a job fair

Speaking : Talking about job opportunities

Language : Reported speech: Statement and questions

Life Skills : Self-management: Planning for the world of work



Part (1)

Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

apply (v) (y-ied)	يقدم (طلبًا)	industry (n)	صناعة
apprenticeship (n)	فترة التدريب فى المهنة	practical (adj)*	عملى
attendant (n)	مُرافق	qualifications (n)	مؤهلات
casualty department (n)	قسم الطوارئ	rewarding (adj)	مُجْزٍ
construction (n)	البناء	skill (n)	مهارة
contract (n)	عقْد	stressful (adj)	مرهق
degree (n)	درجة جامعية	training (n)	تدريب

* I finished the practical part of the driving lessons.

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

airline (n)	شركة طيران	deadline (n)	الميعاد النهائى
career (n)	حياة مهنية	despite (prep)	على الرغم من
caring (adj)	مهتم	develop (v) – ed	يطور
certain (adj)	محدد	eligible (adj)	مؤهل/جدير بـ
challenges (n)	تحديات	expect (v) – ed	يتوقع
characteristics (n)	خصائص/سمات	explaining (n)	شرح
chemist (n)	كيميائى	flight attendant	مضيفة طيران
college (n)	كُلية	frightened (adj)	خائف
communicator (n)	مُحاور/متواصل/لبق فى الحديث	frustrating (adj)	محبط
compassion (n)	تعاطف	graduate (v) – d	يتخرج
compassionate (adj)	رحيم	hold (v)	يقيم/يعقد (مؤتمر/حفل)

incredibly (adv)	بشكل لا يصدق	particular (adj)	خاص
industries (n)	صناعات	products (n)	منتجات
Information Technology (IT)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات	progressing (n)	التقدم
interesting (adj)	شيق	pursue (v) – d	يواصل/يطارد
international (adj)	دولى	reassure (v) – d	يطمئن
involve (v) – d	يتضمن	reward (n)	مكافأة
knowledge (n)	معرفة	route (n)	طريق
medical (adj)	طبى	so far	حتى الآن
natural (adj)	طبيعى	the public (n)	العامة/الجمهور
non-biased (adj)	غير متحيز	tiring (adj)	متعب
nursing (n)	تمريض	trade (n) - (v) – d	تجارة/حرفة/يتاجر
obviously (adv)	بوضوح	vast (adj)	واسع/عريض
option (n)	اختيار	ward (n)	جناح (فى مستشفى)

Workbook Vocabulary

around (adv) (prep)	حول	cycle (v) – d	يقود دراجة
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	weather (n)	الطقس

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Looking after little children is very ....
   a) tiring b) qualified c) tired d) obvious
2. Employees should acquire يكتسب special .... before promotion.
   a) applications b) wards c) paintings d) skills
3. Teachers' salaries are not very .... although they have a great role in society.
   a) stressful b) rewarding c) practical d) qualified

4 Could you tell me the shortest .... from here to the train station, please?
a) manner b) method c) route d) root

5 Manal decided to start her .... as a flight attendant working for Egypt Air.
a) situation b) career c) industry d) care

6 The .... of the new flat that I had bought was not legal, so I reported it to the police.
a) agreement b) argument c) idea d) contract

7 What are the skills that make you .... for this job?
a) eligible b) public c) particular d) incredible

8 My friend left school with no ...., so it is not easy for him to find a job.
a) attendants b) contracts
c) industries d) qualifications

9 My daughter's lifelong wish is to become a .... as she likes flying so much.
a) shop assistant b) flight attendant
c) nurse d) researcher

10 Hams looked carefully at all the .... before deciding on the black skirt.
a) options b) contracts
c) constructions d) skills

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a period of time	فترة من الوقت	have a talk with	يتحدث مع
at times	فى بعض الأحيان	communicate ... to	يوصل ... إلى
do ... training	يؤدى تدريبًا	essential for	ضرورى لـ
do a degree	يذاكر للحصول على درجة علمية	interact with	يتفاعل مع
do something well	يؤدى شيئًا جيدًا	late for	متأخر على
make furniture	يصنع الأثاث	look for	يبحث عن
meet the deadline	يفى/يلتزم بالموعد النهائى	popular with	محبوب لدى
not really	ليس صحيحًا	variety of	مجموعة متنوعة من
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة	work on	يعمل على
have a degree	يحصل على درجة علمية	meet a challenge	يواجه تحديًا
break down	يتعطل	eligible for	مؤهل لـ
care for	يعتنى بـ		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
develop	يطور	development developer	تطور/تنمية مطور	developed developing	متطور نامٍ
frighten	يخيف	fright	خوف	frightened frightening	خائف مخيف
------------------------		obviousness	وضوح	obvious	واضح
industrialise*	يصنع	industry industrialist	صناعة رجل صناعة	industrial industrious	صناعى (متعلق بالصناعة) جاد فى العمل
qualify	يحصل على مؤهل/يتأهل	qualification	مؤهل	qualified	مؤهل
reassure	يطمئن	reassurance	طمأنة	reassuring	مُطَمْئِن
reward	يكافئ	reward	مكافئة	rewarding	مجْزٍ
stress	يرهق	stress	ضغط عصبى	stressful stressed	مرهق متوتر
vary	يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	متنوع
------------------------		eligibility	استحقاق/أحقية	eligible	مؤهل/جدير بـ/مستحق

- Egypt plans to industrialise its needs.
- The Egyptian industry is getting better.
- This industrial development is great.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
compassion	تعاطف	sympathy/mercy	cruelty/harshness/brutality	قسوة
construction	البناء	building/creation	destruction/ruin	الهدم
develop	يطور	advance/progress	decline/lessen	يتدهور
explain	يشرح	analyse/clarify	confuse/mix up	يربك/يحير
frightened	خائف	afraid/scared	unafraid/bold	غير خائف
improve	يحسن	enhance/better/upgrade	deteriorate/decline	يتدهور

incredibly	بشكل لا يصدق	amazingly/astonishingly	commonly/usually	بشكل عادي أو شائع
involve	يتضمن	include/contain	exclude/lack	لا يتضمن
reassure	يطمئن	assure/comfort	annoy/worry	يضايق
rewarding	مجزٍ	fruitful/beneficial	unfruitful/valueless	غير مثمر

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nowadays, I'm .... a degree at Cairo University to be an engineer.
   a) making b) having c) doing d) playing
2. I think it is very difficult to meet Friday's .... as we have a lot to do.
   a) airline b) headline c) deadline d) dead time
3. All students must work hard to improve their marks in the next exam. The opposite of the word "improve" is "..........".
   a) enhance b) decline c) advance d) develop
4. Mothers are those who always show compassion to their families. The synonym of the word "compassion" is "..........".
   a) mercy b) cruelty c) stupidity d) harshness
5. To be able to meet our ...., we have to work together and forget our disputes.
   a) compassion b) college c) chambers d) challenges
6. I felt .... when I heard that my son got the full mark in English.
   a) happiness b) happily c) happy d) unhappy
7. While we were driving on the way to Tanta, our car broke ....
   a) off b) down c) into d) away
8. I usually enjoy .... a talk with old people. They are very wise.
   a) doing b) making c) having d) taking
9. Mohammad Salah is very popular .... thousands of Liverpool fans.
   a) for b) to c) with d) in
10. It is interesting how members of the group interact .... each other.
    a) about b) in c) with d) on

Reading Text

In this week's article called *What's your job?*
We're talking to two young professionals about their work.



Ali works in the casualty department[1] at a busy hospital. He says that, despite[2] the long hours and hard work, the job is incredibly rewarding[3].

Why did you choose to become a nurse?

Well, I've always enjoyed caring[4] for people, so it seemed a natural thing to do. I decided to apply to nursing college, did my training[5] and then got a job here.

Do you like your job?

Yes, I love it, although it is very stressful[6] at times. People are sometimes frightened, so part of my job is to reassure[7] them, which can be hard.

Is there anything you don't enjoy?

Not really, although I work from 7 a.m. till 6 p.m. every day, which is very tiring[8].

What skills do you need to be a successful nurse?

You need to be a good communicator[9] – a lot of nursing is about listening to people's worries[10] and explaining what the doctors are going to do. You need to have good medical knowledge too, but compassion[11] is really important.

Nadia is a scientist and works in a laboratory as a chemist[12].

Why did you choose to become a scientist?

My best subject at school was chemistry, so I decided to study it at university. After I graduated[13], I got a two-year contract[14] to work here.

(1) قسم الطوارئ
(2) على الرغم من
(3) مجزية بشكل لا يصدق
(4) رعاية
(5) تدريب
(6) مجهد
(7) يطمئن
(8) متعب
(9) محاور
(10) مخاوف
(11) شفقة
(12) كيميائي
(13) تخرج
(14) عقد

What do you like best about your job?

I'm a very practical[15] person and a lot of my job is looking at trying to improve products[16] or develop new ones. I enjoy the challenges[17] and the variety[18] of my work.

Are there any challenges in your job?

Of course any job has challenges. It can sometimes be difficult when you're working on several[19] products and each one has a deadline[20] to meet.

What qualifications do you need to be a successful scientist?

Obviously, you need a degree[21] in science, but you also have to be good at problem solving. It's important to be able to communicate[22] your ideas to other people too, and that can be difficult sometimes if they're not scientists.

عملي (15)	
منتجات (16)	
تحديات (17)	
تنوع (18)	
عديدة (19)	
الموعد النهائي (20)	
درجة علمية (21)	
يوصل (22)	

Listening Text (1)



Narrator Ahmed

Man : Did you find out about any job opportunities[1] at the job fair[2], Ahmed?



Ahmed : I had a talk[3] with a man from an IT company and he said that there were lots of jobs for young people in his company. He told me that I needed to have good maths and IT skills but also English. He said that most people in IT used English at work. I asked him if I needed to do a degree[4] in Information Technology and he said 'no'.

فرص (1)	
معرض توظيف (2)	
محادثة (3)	
مؤهل علمي (4)	

Narrator Sarah

Woman : Hello, Sarah. Was the job fair interesting?

Sarah : Yes, I've decided what I want to do as a job now.

Woman : Oh, what's that?

Sarah : I want to be a flight attendant[5] for an international airline. I talked to a woman from an airline company[6] and she said that it was a really interesting job. She told me that I had to speak at least two other languages as well as Arabic, so I'm going to start learning French. I asked her how many countries she has visited and she said that so far she'd been to over 40 – imagine[7] that!

مضيفة طيران (5)	
شركة طيران (6)	
تخيل (7)	
حرفة (8)	
شركة بناء (9)	
عملي (10)	
خبرة (11)	
أثاث (12)	
فترة تدريب (13)	

Narrator Omar

Fatima : Did you get any useful information about work at the fair, Omar?

Omar : Yes. I'm not going to go to university, but I'm going to learn a trade[8]. I spoke to a man who owns a construction company[9] and I told him that I didn't really like studying and that I wanted to do something practical[10].

Fatima : Well, you've always been really good at making and fixing things. Mum and dad agree, too.

Omar : I know. That's what I told him. He asked me whether I had had any work experience[11] and I told him that I'd been helping our uncle make furniture[12] for a few years. He said that would be useful and that I should try and get an apprenticeship[13] in a local company.

Listening Text (2)

Woman: It's a really interesting job.

Ahmed: Do I need to do a degree in Information Technology?

Man 1: There are lots of jobs for young people in my company.

Omar: I'm interested in doing a practical job.

Man 2: Do you have any work experience?

Workbook Listening Text

Samir : Hello, this is Samir. The bus has broken down[1] so I'll be late for the meeting.

Hassan : Hello, my name's Hassan. I read the story that is online and I really like it.

Dalia : Hi Nabila, this is Dalia. I'm sorry you're ill and didn't come to school today, but you don't need to worry[2], there isn't much homework to do.

Mum : Hi Laila, mum here. I'm working late this evening. There is some fish and rice in the fridge[3] so you can cook it yourself if you're hungry.

Tarek : Ahmed, it's Tarek. Have you seen the news? Turn on the TV, because it's very exciting[4].

(1) تعطل
(2) يقلق
(3) ثلاجة
(4) مثير

Notes on Vocabulary

"Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning."

1	care for = look after يرعى/يعتني بـ	He thanked the nurses who had cared for him.
	take care of يعتني بـ	I take care of my little sister when our parents are out.
	care about + (something) يهتم بشيء	The only thing he seems to care about is money.
2	apply for + (وظيفة)	She applied for a job as a secretary.
	apply to + (شركة/شخص/مؤسسة)	He applied to three universities and was accepted by all of them.
3	qualify in يحصل على مؤهل فى ... (تخصص معين)	My brother qualified in English literature last year.
	qualify as يتأهل كـ ... (وظيفة)	My sister qualified as a teacher five years ago.
	(be) qualified to + inf. يصبح مؤهلاً لـ ...	He is qualified to teach English.
4	graduate from يتخرج من (كلية)	I graduated from Cairo University.
	graduate in يتخرج فى (سنة/تخصص)	I graduated in 2010. I graduated in medicine.
	a graduate of خريج لـ (مكان)	I am a graduate of Cairo University.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr Rami is .... to teach adults.
   a) qualify b) qualified
   c) qualification d) qualifier
2. I was very happy when my son qualified .... an engineer.
   a) in b) to c) as d) for
3. Uncle Gamal has taken .... of us since our father died.
   a) reward b) concern c) care d) turn
4. In 1995, I graduated .... teaching from Tanta University.
   a) in b) as c) of d) from
5. Hatim isn't keen to .... for this job as it's not rewarding.
   a) reply b) deploy c) imply d) apply
6. My daughter is .... of Mansura University.
   a) graduated b) a graduate
   c) graduation d) graduate
7. Ali has applied .... the job advertised in the newspapers.
   a) for b) in c) to d) at





Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You will never get a good job if you don't have any ....
a) constructions b) contracts c) qualifications d) compasses

2 This is an easy game. You don't need any .... to do it.
a) charities b) skulls c) attendants d) skills

3 Don't worry. It is .... to feel nervous before an interview.
a) skilled b) natural c) abnormal d) eligible

4 Marwan should .... football training at least once a week.
a) do b) make c) give d) take

5 The .... of the new road has now been completed.
a) industry b) instruction c) destruction d) construction

6 My brother has a .... in engineering. *(Longman)*
a) mark b) licence c) degree d) sign

7 He was in the second year of his .... as a carpenter.
a) attendant b) construction c) apprenticeship d) degree

8 It is .... to work hard and achieve nothing after that.
a) frustrated b) frustrating c) eligible d) incredible

9 My job's getting more and more .... I can't stand it.
a) practical b) rewarding c) stressful d) stressed

10 I am getting more and more .... I can't stand my job.
a) practical b) rewarding c) stressful d) stressed

11 A medical professional must be ...., caring, and have excellent communication skills. *(Longman)*
a) compassionate b) compassionately
c) compassion d) uncompassionate

12 As he likes making films, my son hopes to .... a career in film-making.
a) apply b) pursue c) do d) produce

13 We should cooperate to make use of our .... deserts by reclaiming them.
a) fast b) caring c) eligible d) vast

14 Applicants must .... a degree in architecture to get the job.
a) do b) have c) make d) break

15 Reda has the ability to .... well with people of different ages.
a) contract b) apply c) interact d) distract

16 The government is planning for the .... of many new roads and flyovers.
a) construction b) destruction c) connection d) contradiction

17 I think .... experience is more useful than any degree nowadays.
a) frustrating b) medical c) compassionate d) practical

18 .... is one of the basic things that supports any country's economy.
a) Industry b) Apprenticeship c) Training d) Qualification

19 The salary of my new job is not ...., so I am going to look for another one.
a) stressful b) rewarding c) practical d) qualified

20 There are .... subjects that you will study in STEM school.
a) regular b) reliable c) particular d) incredible

21 When Ali left school, he had a/an .... with a construction company that builds hotels in big cities. *(Longman)*
a) leadership b) ownership c) apprenticeship d) citizenship

22 There is a .... of dishes in this restaurant. You have many choices.
a) various b) varied c) vary d) variety

23 In this restaurant, you have many choices as there are .... dishes.
a) various b) varied c) vary d) variety

24 Peace leads to construction. "Construction" is opposite in meaning to ....
a) structure b) obstruction c) infrastructure d) destruction

25 She has always been very .... She loves to do good things for people.
a) practical b) compassionate c) compassion d) knowledgeable

26 As a model prisoner, he became .... for release after serving half his sentence.
a) imprisoned b) involved c) frightened d) eligible

27 I was nervous of my first day at college, but seeing some friends .... me.
a) worried b) reassured c) stressed d) contracted

28 I was late for work because the bus had broken .... and the driver failed to start the engine again. *(Longman)*
a) down b) in c) out d) off

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

29 This match is incredibly exciting: they've got two goals in two minutes. The synonyms of the word "incredibly" are "..................".
a) amazingly b) commonly c) fruitfully d) appreciatively e) astonishingly

30 Don't try to reassure me because I understand it's very dangerous. The antonyms of the word "reassure" are "..................".
a) annoy b) assure c) enhance d) worry e) support

31 How do you think the company can improve products? The synonyms of the word "improve" are "..................". *(Longman)*
a) increase b) upgrade c) decrease d) better e) worsen

32 Teachers at schools must .... students as they are responsible for them.
a) care after b) care for c) take for d) take care of e) look for

33 Yusof .... Cairo University. He got his certificate last year.
a) graduates in b) is a graduate of c) graduate of
d) graduated from e) graduation of

B Language

Reported Speech الكلام المنقول

هناك نوعان من الكلام:

1 Direct Speech الكلام المباشر

- He said, "I have studied English with my friends".

- هو نص الكلام كما قاله صاحبه دون أى تعديل أو تغيير، ويوضع بين علامات اقتباس "........".

2 Indirect Speech الكلام غير المباشر

- He said (that) he had studied English with his friends.

- هو الكلام المنقول عن صاحبه وتغير الأزمنة والضمائر على حسب المتكلم والشخص المنقول كلامه.

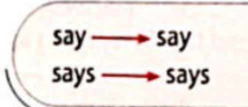
- She said (that) it was a really interesting job.

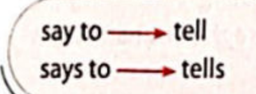
- وتختلف قواعد نقل الكلام باختلاف أنواع الجمل، فهناك جمل خبرية وجمل أمرية وجمل استفهامية.

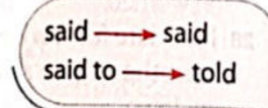
Statement الجملة الخبرية

لتحويل الجملة الخبرية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر ... نتبع التالى:

١) تحويل فعل القول.









- أن التفرقة بينهما فى الاختيارات تكون على حسب وجود فاعل أم مفعول به بعدهم مباشرة ... كالأتى:

say/says/said	(that)	+	Subj.	+	verb + ...	
tell/tells/told	object	+	(that)	+	Subj. + verb + ...	

- She said she had left the house early. Subj.
- She told me (that) she had woken up late. Obj.
- He said his father would travel the next day. Subj.
- He told his father he wanted to go out with his friends. Obj.

- من الممكن استخدام كلمات أخرى بدلًا من said مثل:

(informed – explained – promised – illustrated, etc.)

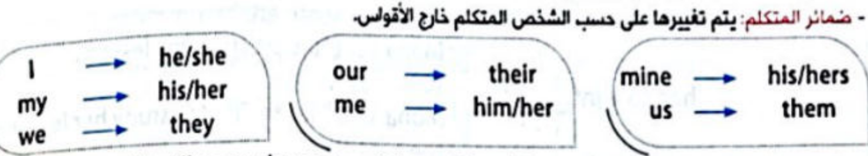
- He explained that he was checking the windows.

٢) نحذف علامات الاقتباس ونربط بكلمة that ومن الممكن حذفها.

- He said to me, "I have seen an accident in the street".
- He told me (that) he had seen an accident in the street.

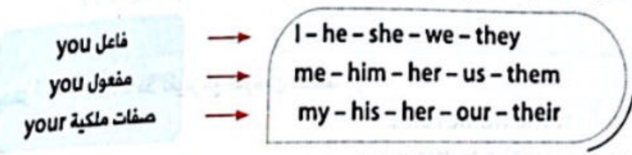
٣) تحويلات الضمائر داخل الأقواس (إن وجدت).

- ضمائر المتكلم: يتم تغييرها على حسب الشخص المتكلم خارج الأقواس.



- He said to me, "I will go to the party with my friends".
- He told me that he would go to the party with his friends.

- ضمائر المخاطب: يتم تغييرها على حسب الشخص المخاطب خارج الأقواس.



- She said to Mona, "You can attend the lecture with your colleagues tomorrow."
- She told Mona (that) she could attend the lecture with her colleagues the next day.
- I said to my mother, "I will come with you to the wedding party".
- I told my mother (that) I would come with her to the wedding party.

- باقى الضمائر: لا تتغير داخل الأقواس ... مثل: (he – she – it – they – her – him – their – them)

- I said to Amany, "He is watching the football match".
- I told Amany (that) he was watching the football match.

٤) تحويل زمن الجملة (وفيها تتحول الأزمنة من المضارع إلى الماضى إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا).

Direct مباشر	Indirect غير مباشر
مضارع بسيط (التصريف الأول للفعل) He said, "I play football well."	ماض بسيط (التصريف الثانى للفعل) He said that he played football well.
مضارع مستمر (am/is/are) + (v-ing) He said, "I'm watching a film."	ماض مستمر (was/were) + (v-ing) He said that he was watching a film.
مضارع تام (has/have) + P.P. She said, "I have slept early."	ماض تام had + P.P. She said that she had slept early.
ماض بسيط (التصريف الثانى للفعل) She said, "I ate all the food in the fridge."	ماض تام had + P.P. She said that she had eaten all the food in the fridge.
will / can + inf. / may She said, "I will cook dinner early."	would / could + inf. / might She said that she would cook dinner early.



لاحظ

- يختلف تحويل must على حسب استخدامها ومعناها فى الجملة.

must + inf.	had to + inf.	يجب (إلزام)	-Mona said, "I must study my lessons tomorrow". -Mona said that she had to study her lessons the next day.
	must have + P.P.	بالتأكيد (استنتاج)	-Mona said, "He must be ill today". -Mona said that he must have been ill that day.

وتظل must + inf. بلا تغيير مع القوانين الثابتة.

- He said, "Drivers must follow the traffic rules."

He said that drivers must follow the traffic rules.

د) تحويل أسماء الإشارة وظروف المكان والزمان

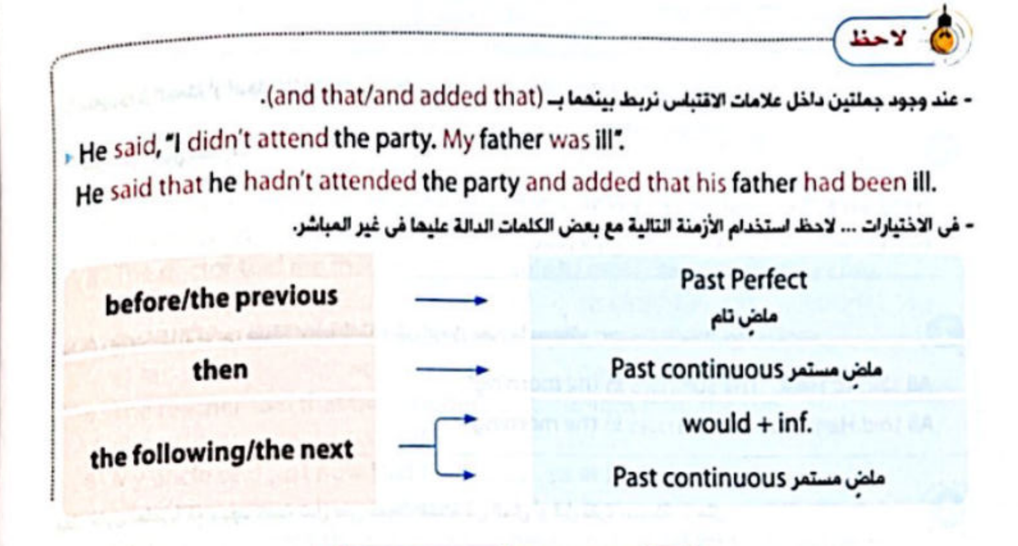
Direct مباشر	Indirect/Reported غير مباشر
yesterday	the day before/the previous day
tomorrow	the next day/the following day
now	then
tonight	that night
next	the following
today	that day
ago/last	before/the previous/earlier
here	there
this	that
these	those

- He said to me, "I will travel to Alexandria tomorrow".

He told me that he would travel to Alexandria the next day.

- She said to her mother, "I phoned you yesterday".

She told her mother that she had phoned her the day before.



لاحظ

- عند وجود جملتين داخل علامات الاقتباس نربط بينهما بـ (and that/and added that).

- He said, "I didn't attend the party. My father was ill".

He said that he hadn't attended the party and added that his father had been ill.

- فى الاختيارات ... لاحظ استخدام الأزمنة التالية مع بعض الكلمات الدالة عليها فى غير المباشر.

before/the previous →	Past Perfect ماضٍ تام
then →	Past continuous ماضٍ مستمر
the following/the next →	would + inf.
	Past continuous ماضٍ مستمر

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My daughter .... her teacher had given her a reward that day.

a) agreed b) told

c) said d) complained

2 Mona .... her friend she was ill and couldn't go to school.

a) told b) tells

c) asked d) said

3 Sara told me that she .... a job interview the previous day.

a) had b) will have

c) had had d) has

4 Manar told me that she .... her homework then.

a) was doing b) had done

c) did d) is doing

5 He said that he had done all his work ....

a) the following week b) the week after

c) the previous week d) then

Important Notes

- لا يتغير زمن الجملة أو أسماء الإشارة وظروف المكان والزمان فى الحالات التالية ونكتفى فقط بتغيير الضمائر :

1 إذا كان فعل القول مضارعًا.

- Hana says, "I am watching TV now".
- Hana says that she is watching TV now.



2 إذا كان ما بداخل الأقواس حقيقة علمية ثابتة يبقى الزمن مضارعًا بسيطًا.

- Ali said to Hani, "The sun rises in the morning".
- Ali told Hani that the sun rises in the morning.



3 فعل القول (ماضٍ) مع وجود كلمة تدل على حدوث الكلام فى الحال أو قبل فترة بسيطة ... مثل:

just now – a moment/minute ago – a short time ago – ....

- He said just now, "No one is allowed to leave".
- He said just now that no one is allowed to leave.

4 الحالة الصفرية والثانية والثالثة من الحالات الشرطية لـ If.

- He said to me, "If you boil water, it turns into steam."
- He told me that if I boil water, it turns into steam.
- Eman said to me, "If you had played well, you would have won the game."
- Eman told me that if I had played well, I would have won the game.



لاحظ

- الحالة الأولى لـ If تتحول إلى الحالة الثانية.

- Ali said, "If I study hard, I will pass the test easily."
- Ali said that if he studied hard, he would pass the test easily.

- لا تتحول الأزمنة بعد التعبيرات التالية: would rather/would like/had better/it is time

- Ali said, "I'd like to watch the new movie."
- Ali said that he'd like to watch the new movie.





Practice – Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nada .... me that she would like to go out for shopping.
   a) told b) asked c) said d) advised
2. Maher said that he .... a friend at the station later that day.
   a) is meeting b) was meeting c) meets d) had met
3. The doctor told me that he .... able to meet me until the next day.
   a) won't be b) isn't c) wouldn't be d) hadn't been
4. He said that his father .... him to make bread the day before.
   a) taught b) would teach c) had taught d) teaches
5. The teacher said that the moon .... its light from the sun.
   a) gets b) had got c) get d) got
6. My uncle said just now that he .... us at home.
   a) will meet b) was meeting c) had met d) meet
7. I was .... that the meeting had been postponed for unknown reasons. (Longman)
   a) said b) ordered c) advised d) told
8. The teacher said if we .... red and yellow colours, we .... orange which is my favourite.
   a) mix/ get b) mix/ will get c) mixes/ gets d) mixed/ got
9. My son told me that he .... with his friends the next day.
   a) will travel b) would travel c) had travelled d) travels
10. Ahmed .... he was able to write the report on his own. (Longman)
    a) inquired b) ordered c) said d) told
11. Hani said that he .... a new flat yet.
    a) didn't find b) hasn't found c) hadn't found d) wasn't found
12. Noha explained that they .... to Dubai the year before.
    a) have been b) have gone c) went d) had gone
13. I informed my teacher that I wouldn't be able to attend ....
    a) the last lesson b) the following lesson
    c) the previous lesson d) the lesson before
14. Rami said he .... to Luxor the following week. (Longman)
    a) had travelled b) would travel c) will travel d) is travelling
15. The chef said that one of their ovens .... the day before.
    a) was repairing b) had repaired
    c) was being repaired d) had been repaired
16. Noha said that her favourite drink .... orange juice.
    a) has been b) will be c) was d) would be

17 I told my friend that I .... to the countryside the following week.
a) am travelling b) will travel c) was travelling d) had travelled

18 Marwa said that she .... look for a mechanic when her car broke down.
a) had been b) had to c) has to d) have to

19 She says that she .... drawing; it is her favourite hobby. (Longman)
a) liked b) was liking c) like d) likes

20 Ahmed said that he .... his friends the previous week.
a) had met b) would meet c) was meeting d) met

21 Sally said that they .... sushi two days before.
a) would eat b) had eaten c) ate d) were eating

22 Monira has just told Amira that they .... to their friend's wedding tonight.
a) would go b) have gone c) were going d) are going

23 He admitted that he .... late the night before.
a) has arrived b) arrives c) would arrive d) had arrived

24 Mona .... if she came early, she would call me.
a) asked b) told
c) said d) wanted to know

25 They told us .... we worked hard, we would reach our goals easily.
a) unless b) if c) that d) so

26 Our teacher .... all of us about the results of the final exams.
a) said b) wanted to know c) inquired d) told

27 Faten says that she .... her old car because it usually breaks down. (Longman)
a) was going to sell b) is going to sell
c) have sold d) has been sold

28 He .... me, "I'm travelling to Aswan tomorrow".
a) told b) said to c) explained d) agreed

29 She .... her friend had an accident, but I don't know whether she is Rania or not.
a) said b) told c) say d) tells

30 He said that the first thing he .... when he got home was to have a shower.
a) does b) is doing c) has done d) did

31 She said that she .... me as soon as she arrived.
a) calls b) had called c) will call d) would call

32 Ali told his father a moment ago that he .... to buy a new bag.
a) wants b) had wanted c) will want d) is wanting

33 "I'm going out," announced Bassam. Bassam announced that he .... out.
a) went b) will go out c) was going d) is going

34 "This year we're going to Dubai," said Jana. Jana said they .... to Dubai that year.
a) were going b) have been going c) is going d) went

35 "You must sleep early today". - My father told me that I .... early that day.
a) must sleep b) must have slept c) had to sleep d) was sleeping

Test yourself



Part 1
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 It's a/an .... little car. It is ideal for this very crowded city.
a) practical b) stressful c) frustrating d) electrical

2 My brother will .... for a passport next week as he wants to travel abroad.
a) apply b) care c) look d) employ

3 The footballer twisted his ankle during .... and will miss tomorrow's match.
a) tiring b) experiment c) learning d) training

4 Omar began his .... as a blacksmith a year ago. His dream is to own a workshop.
a) membership b) construction c) degree d) apprenticeship

5 My elder brother is really .... to do his job efficiently. He is a very successful director.
a) graduated b) qualified c) specialised d) educated

6 People who need urgent treatment should go to the .... department at hospitals.
a) compassion b) financial c) casualty d) reassurance

7 In Britain, you are .... to vote when you are eighteen years old.
a) obvious b) eligible c) employable d) stressful

8 It is not good to .... me in your family arguments.
a) evolve b) revolve c) involve d) evaluate

9 The government tries to develop new .... in order to reduce unemployment.
a) connections b) communicators c) degrees d) industries

10 If you want to travel to different places by plane, you should go to a/an .... company first.
a) fly line b) air flyer c) airline d) flight line

11 The new hotel is currently under .... The minister will inaugurate يفتتح it next month.
a) damage b) structure c) destruction d) construction

12 After ...., doctors spend at least two years working in public hospitals.
a) explaining b) teaching c) qualifying d) developing

13 The queen's .... always help her to get dressed.
a) attendants b) skills c) challenges d) contracts

14 I'm ...., but I think my daughter's paintings are the best.
a) biased b) non-biased c) based d) non-based

15 Those who have the desire to save people, especially children, from poverty and violence are ....
a) compassionate b) cruel c) vulgar d) violent

Language

16 Mostafa .... that he lived near Alexandria.
a) said b) told c) asked d) wondered

17 Maher said he .... to London the week before.
a) has flown b) had flown c) is flying d) was flying

18 Ali says that he .... very tired at the moment.
a) had b) has c) is d) was

19 Hussein said that he .... a special cake the following day.
a) is making b) will make c) was making d) had made

20 My sister told me that she .... a new movie on TV then.
a) is watching b) was watching c) had watched d) would watch

21 He said that he .... his homework the previous week.
a) had done b) would do c) did d) was doing

22 My teacher agreed that it .... a good idea to revise every day.
a) was b) will be c) has been d) was being

23 Farida .... me if she had won the competition, she would have been happy.
a) asked b) said c) told d) inquired

24 The social studies teacher told us that Asia .... the largest continent in the world.
a) was b) is c) has been d) will be

25 Maged told us that his family .... a house in the countryside two months before.
a) bought b) had bought c) would buy d) has bought

26 He told me that he .... me to repair my car the following day.
a) helped b) had helped c) would help d) will help

27 The article says that there .... an increase in the number of university students next year.
a) will be b) had been c) was d) would be

28 She told him that he could ask her advice if he .... any problems.
a) will have b) had had c) was having d) had

29 My mother .... when she visited her father, she found him very ill.
a) said b) told
c) asked d) wanted to know

30 The science teacher said that when you freeze water, you .... ice.
a) will get b) would get c) can get d) get



A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading Texts

career (n)	حياة مهنية	jobs fair (n)	معرض الوظائف
community (n)	مجتمع	loyal (adj)	مخلص
confident (adj)	واثق	main (adj)	رئيسى
experience (n)	خبرة	necessary (adj)	ضرورى
fancy (v) (y-ied)	يتخيل/يريد (يفكر حيال شىء)	punctual (adj)	منضبط فى المواعيد
fire engine (n)	سيارة مطافئ	reliable (adj)	موثوق به
firefighter (n)	رجل مطافئ	require (v) – d	يتطلب
flexible (adj)	مرن	sirens (n)	صفارات الإنذار
hard-working (adj)*	مجتهد	situation (n)	موقف
honest (adj)	أمين/صادق	teammate (n)	عضو الفريق
job opportunities	فرص عمل	team-player (n)	شخص يجيد العمل الجماعى

★ Ahmad is a hard-working student.

Workbook Vocabulary

aged (adj)	فى سن	patient (adj)	صبور
availability (n)	التوافر	pay (n) (v)	أجر/يدفع
cuisine (n)	فن الطبخ	plumber (n)	سباك
immediate (adj)	فورى	professional (adj)	محترف
interests (n)	اهتمامات	shop assistant (n)	بائع فى محل
office worker	عامل فى مكتب	vet (n)	طبيب بيطرى

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When I saw the fire .... coming, I hurried to guide them.
a) engines b) cars c) sirens d) places

2 All Egyptian citizens must be totally .... to our country, Egypt.
a) disloyal b) punctual c) flexible d) loyal

3 I got a/an .... to fix the water pipes in my flat.
a) barber b) electrician c) plumber d) blacksmith

4 The teacher asked us a question and he wanted a/an .... answer.
a) immediate b) excited c) main d) patient

5 The cashier was .... and waited until I remembered my pin number الرقم السرى
a) cruel b) aged c) available d) patient

6 Before taking any action, I always get .... advice from my lawyer.
a) amateur b) flexible c) professional d) available

7 A .... is someone who belongs to the same group as you.
a) college b) teammate c) comrade d) follower

8 I usually go to the Cairo Book .... to buy interesting books.
a) Fare b) Fall c) Fair d) Fur

9 Many people have left their rural .... to find work in the city.
a) communities b) companies c) families d) states

10 To get the job, you must have at least three years of ....
a) experiment b) expert c) experience d) experiences

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

attention to detail	منتبه للتفاصيل	personal qualities	صفات شخصية
Bachelor's Degree in English	درجة البكالوريوس فى اللغة الإنجليزية	Post Graduate Certificate in Education	شهادة الدراسات العليا فى التربية
Egyptian cuisine	المطبخ المصرى	take course at	يأخذ دورة فى
free-time activities	أنشطة وقت الفراغ	plenty of	الكثير من
do a course	يأخذ «كورس»	sit at	يجلس على
great at	عظيم فى	suitable for	مناسب لـ
adapt to	يتأقلم مع	work in	يعمل فى
knowledge of	معرفة عن	work with	يعمل مع
on a training course	فى دورة تدريبية	when necessary	عند الضرورة

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
experience	يجرب	experience	خبرة/تجربة حياتية	experienced	ذو خبرة
flex	يطوى/يثنى	flexibility	مرونة	flexible	مرن
______		honesty	أمانة	honest	أمين
rely on*	يعتمد على	reliability reliance	الموثوقية الاعتماد	reliable	موثوق
______		availability	الإتاحة/ التوافر	available	متاح

- Mary relies on her children to do housework.
- The company's reliance on youth makes it successful.
- Mr Ashraf is a reliable lawyer.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
exciting	مثير	thrilling/inspiring	boring/dull	ممل
flexible	مرن	adjustable/malleable	inflexible/rigid	غير مرن
honest	أمين/صادق	trustful/candid	dishonest/untruthful/ deceitful	غير أمين
loyal	مخلص	faithful/trusty	disloyal/unfaithful	غير مخلص
main	رئيسى	major/basic	secondary/inferior	ثانوى
necessary	ضرورى	essential/vital	additional/inessential/extra	إضافى
reliable	موثوق فيه	dependable/sincere	unreliable/tricky	غير موثوق فيه

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I joined the first team .... 18.
a) in the age of b) aged
c) aging d) age

2 I like your new car. How much did you pay .... it?
a) for b) with c) by d) at

3 Give me your honest opinion. The synonym of the word "honest" is ....
a) trustful b) dishonest
c) inspiring d) loyal

4 The main reason for increasing crimes is the problem of unemployment. The antonym of the word "main" is "...............".
a) major b) important
c) secondary d) trusty

5 My father sat .... the table and called us to have dinner with him.
a) at b) on c) under d) with

6 Many students like to .... on themselves not their parents for money.
a) reliable b) reliance c) rely d) reliability

7 There is a .... in my job. I do something different every day.
a) vary b) varying
c) various d) variety

8 The company wants to make the new employees loyal to it. The antonym of the word "loyal" is "...............".
a) faithful b) trusty c) reliable d) unfaithful

9 The company's employees are .... a training course to know how to deal with the new system.
a) at b) on c) in d) with

10 He is .... and the manager says that we can depend on him.
a) rely b) reliability
c) reliance d) reliable

Reading Text

My Dream Job



Name : Mohammed
Age : 23
Dream Job : Firefighter
Skills : You should be:
- a team-player
- reliable[1]
- a good communicator
- flexible[2]

Workplace : Central Cairo

I always wanted to be a firefighter[3]. When I was a little boy, I played with toy fire engines[4] and sometimes watched the fire engines driving down the streets with their sirens[5] sounding. I knew that I wanted to help people and I also knew I wanted a job which wasn't in an office. I'm not great at sitting at a desk and wanted a job that was outside, exciting and had a lot of variety.

Firefighting[6] can be dangerous and it can be very hard work, but I wouldn't do any other job. You must be able to communicate well with your teammates[7] and also be happy to adapt[8] to different situations when necessary.

Do you fancy[9] a career[10] as a firefighter? If you want an exciting job helping the community, come and visit me on Stand 21 at the Jobs Fair[11].

Date: 23 May

Time: 9.00 – 14.00

If you're not interested in firefighting, there are plenty of other jobs to find out about here at the Jobs Fair. Bring your friends and family along – you never know what career is out there for you!

(1) جدير بالثقة
(2) مرن
(3) رجل الإطفاء
(4) سيارات الإطفاء
(5) صفارات الإنذار
(6) مكافحة الحرائق
(7) أعضاء الفريق
(8) تكيف
(9) يتخيل/يريد (يفكر حيال شيء)
(10) مهنة
(11) معرض الوظائف



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I joined the first team .... 18.
a) in the age of b) aged
c) aging d) age

2 I like your new car. How much did you pay .... it?
a) for b) with c) by d) at

3 Give me your honest opinion. The synonym of the word "honest" is ....
a) trustful b) dishonest
c) inspiring d) loyal

4 The main reason for increasing crimes is the problem of unemployment. The antonym of the word "main" is "...............".
a) major b) important
c) secondary d) trusty

5 My father sat .... the table and called us to have dinner with him.
a) at b) on c) under d) with

6 Many students like to .... on themselves not their parents for money.
a) reliable b) reliance c) rely d) reliability

7 There is a .... in my job. I do something different every day.
a) vary b) varying
c) various d) variety

8 The company wants to make the new employees loyal to it. The antonym of the word "loyal" is "...............".
a) faithful b) trusty c) reliable d) unfaithful

9 The company's employees are .... a training course to know how to deal with the new system.
a) at b) on c) in d) with

10 He is .... and the manager says that we can depend on him.
a) rely b) reliability
c) reliance d) reliable

Reading Text

My Dream Job



Name : Mohammed
Age : 23
Dream job : Firefighter
Skills : You should be:
- a team-player
- reliable[1]
- a good communicator
- flexible[2]

Workplace : Central Cairo

I always wanted to be a firefighter[3]. When I was a little boy, I played with toy fire engines[4] and sometimes watched the fire engines driving down the streets with their sirens[5] sounding. I knew that I wanted to help people and I also knew I wanted a job which wasn't in an office. I'm not great at sitting at a desk and wanted a job that was outside, exciting and had a lot of variety.

Firefighting[6] can be dangerous and it can be very hard work, but I wouldn't do any other job. You must be able to communicate well with your teammates[7] and also be happy to adapt[8] to different situations when necessary.

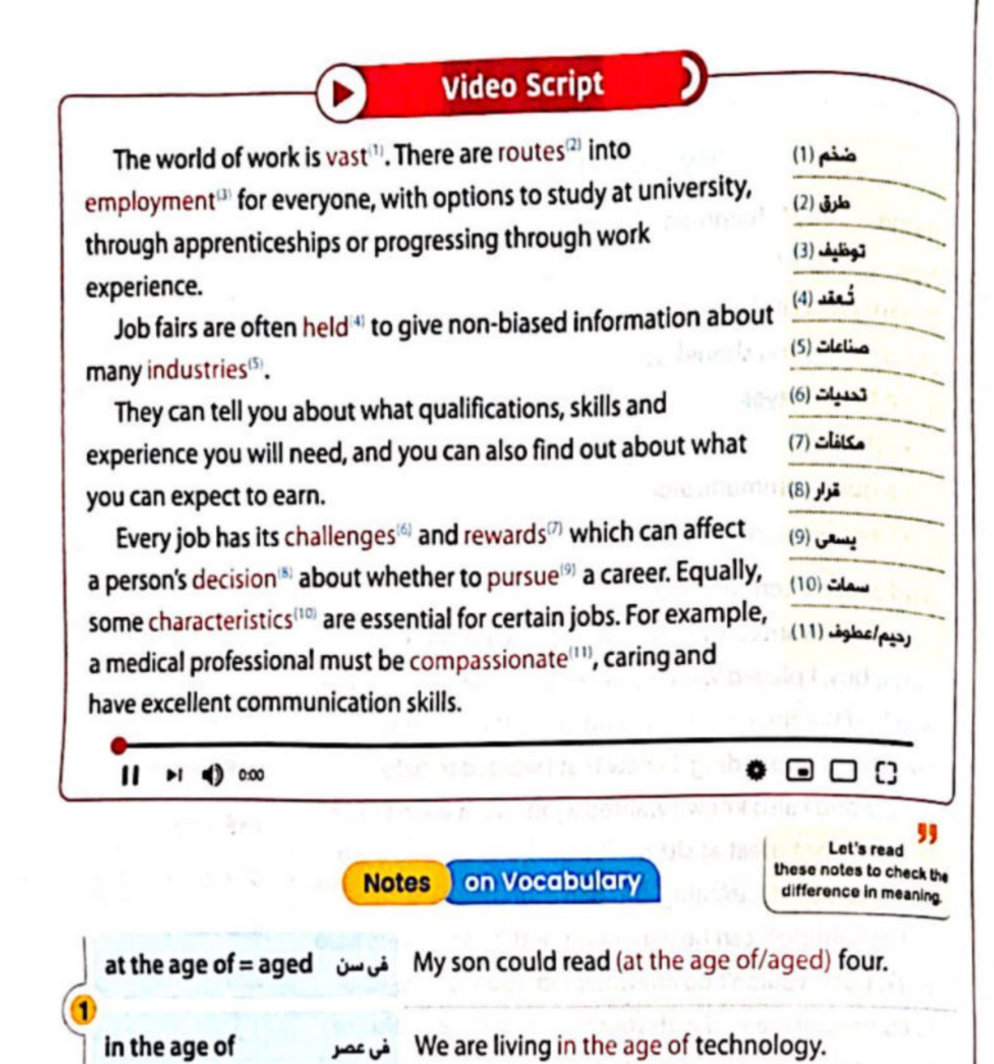
Do you fancy[9] a career[10] as a firefighter? If you want an exciting job helping the community, come and visit me on Stand 21 at the Jobs Fair[11].

Date: 23 May

Time: 9.00 – 14.00

If you're not interested in firefighting, there are plenty of other jobs to find out about here at the Jobs Fair. Bring your friends and family along – you never know what career is out there for you!

(1) جدير بالثقة
(2) مرن
(3) رجل الإطفاء
(4) سيارات الإطفاء
(5) صفارات الإنذار
(6) مكافحة الحرائق
(7) أعضاء الفريق
(8) تكيف
(9) يتخيل/يريد (يفكر حيال شيء ما)
(10) مهنة
(11) معرض الوظائف



Video Script

The world of work is vast[1]. There are routes[2] into employment[3] for everyone, with options to study at university, through apprenticeships or progressing through work experience.

Job fairs are often held[4] to give non-biased information about many industries[5].

They can tell you about what qualifications, skills and experience you will need, and you can also find out about what you can expect to earn.

Every job has its challenges[6] and rewards[7] which can affect a person's decision[8] about whether to pursue[9] a career. Equally, some characteristics[10] are essential for certain jobs. For example, a medical professional must be compassionate[11], caring and have excellent communication skills.

(1) ضخم
(2) طرق
(3) توظيف
(4) تُعقد
(5) صناعات
(6) تحديات
(7) مكافآت
(8) قرار
(9) يسعى
(10) سمات
(11) رحيم/عطوف

0:00

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1	at the age of = aged في سن	My son could read (at the age of/aged) four.
	in the age of في عصر	We are living in the age of technology.

2	adapt to (n./v-ing) يتأقلم أو يتكيف مع	Children can adapt easily to the new environment.
	adapt ... for يجعل ....مناسب لـ	Mr Reda adapted the new techniques for older students.
	(be) adapted for يحول إلى (عمل أدبي)	Many novels have been adapted for television like "Cinderella".
	adopt يتبنى	He had no children, so he decided to adopt a child.

3	- pay (somebody) for (something) - pay (somebody) + (something) - pay (somebody) to + inf. يدفع مقابل	- Mum paid for my driving lessons. - He didn't even offer to pay me for the ticket. - I paid him $5 to cut the grass. - Rana paid some kids to sweep the floor.
	- pay (in) cash يدفع (نقدًا) - pay by (cheque/credit card) يدفع بشيك أو بكارت ائتمان	- You'd get a discount for paying in cash. - Can I pay by credit card?

4	experience الخبرة: ما يكتسبه الشخص من معرفة ومهارات من خلال عمل معين (لا تُعد)	Do you have any previous experience of this type of work?
	experience(s) مواقف أو تجارب أو خبرات في الحياة (تُعد)	I had a bad experience with fireworks once.
	experiment(s) تجربة علمية داخل المعمل (تُعد)	Many people do not like the idea of experiments on animals.

5	work عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)	It is difficult to find work in the present economic climate.
	job وظيفة (اسم يعد)	I'm thinking about applying for a new job.
	career الحياة العملية أو المهنية للفرد	What made you decide on a career as a vet?
	profession مهنة (الاسم من الوظيفة)	He left the teaching profession in 2002 to start his own business.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Did she pay you .... taking care of her kids?
a) with b) in
c) for d) to

2 She always pays .... cash. She never uses a credit card.
a) in b) for
c) with d) by

3 After he retired, he wrote a book about his .... as a war reporter.
a) experiences b) experimentations
c) experiments d) experts

4 When I travelled to Europe, I couldn't adapt .... its weather.
a) with b) to
c) on d) for

5 Her son still hasn't been able to find a ....
a) job b) work
c) career d) profession

6 The garden is too messy: we'll need to pay .... do the gardening.
a) someone to b) to someone to
c) for someone to d) someone for

7 .... the age of technology, we can do lots of things.
a) At b) On
c) In d) Around

8 Researchers often do .... on animals especially rats and monkeys.
a) experiences b) experiments
c) experience d) works

9 She spent most of her .... working as a doctor in India.
a) job b) profession
c) work d) career

10 My father's car was adapted .... use as a taxi.
a) for b) to
c) at d) with

Practice



Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The charity raises money تجمع نقود for .... development.
a) community b) opportunity c) teammate d) patient

2 After the player scored a goal, his .... carried him around the field.
a) classmates b) team-players c) firefighters d) teammates

3 It can be challenging to .... to life in a different city.
a) adopt b) adapt c) host d) refuse

4 To be a good teacher, you must be .... with your students.
a) patient b) dishonest c) aged d) various

5 What kind of personal .... do you look for in an employee?
a) quantities b) applications c) opportunities d) qualities

6 The .... did a great job when they rescued all people in the burning house.
a) engines b) firefighters c) conductors d) street fighters

7 We can offer you .... working hours to make your work easier.
a) flexible b) confident c) exciting d) fixed

8 Sally never arrives late; she is really .... (Longman)
a) careless b) avoidable c) punctual d) funny

9 I've heard from .... sources that the company is in trouble. We all trust these resources.
a) flexible b) dishonest c) disloyal d) reliable

10 Passengers on the plane are .... by law to fasten their seatbelts.
a) acquired b) inquired c) required d) fancied

11 A good employee must be .... enough to adapt to different situations quickly. (Longman)
a) reachable b) flexible c) narrow-minded d) rigid

12 Our cat was very ill and we took it to the ....
a) vet b) chemist c) dentist d) cuisine

13 We need somebody who is completely .... for this job. They will deal with a lot of money.
a) flexible b) dishonest c) aged d) honest

14 I usually ask my students to make notes of the .... points only, not everything.
a) mean b) main c) trivial d) minor

15 I like this website as I can get .... information from it.
a) silly b) miserable c) reliable d) unreliable

16 People in Ukraine rush يسرع to shelters when they hear the warning ....
a) bellows b) sirens c) cries d) bombs

17 Attention to .... is essential in the job of a scientist.
a) detail b) confidence c) sound d) voice

18 To keep healthy, you should make sure you drink .... of water.
a) variety b) quality c) plenty d) penalty

19 Thanks to our great teacher, the response to our questions is ....
a) immediately b) immediate c) lately d) late

20 Finally, I .... the training courses that are necessary to get the job I wanted. (Longman)
a) explored b) fabricated c) created d) did

21 A wife and a husband should be .... to each other to succeed in their life.
a) patient b) loyal c) royal d) cruel

22 The popular desserts in Egyptian .... include baqlawa, basbousa and kunafa.
a) cook b) cooking c) cooker d) cuisine

23 Scientists are doing some .... to see if they can find a cure for this disease.
a) experiences b) professions c) experiments d) interests

24 Reyad has been driving for 30 years, so he is an .... driver.
a) experience b) experimental c) experiencing d) experienced

25 Eman has worked with me for two years and has always been ....
a) punctual b) necessary c) various d) immediate

26 I called three car rental companies, but there was no .... for the holiday weekend.
a) available b) availability c) punctuality d) punctual

27 I called three car rental companies, but there were no cars .... for the holiday weekend.
a) available b) availability c) punctuality d) punctual

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

28 Mohammed is very flexible, he'll go along with anything. The antonyms of the word "flexible" are "..................".
a) adjustable b) trustful c) rigid d) inflexible e) malleable

29 It was necessary for Radwa to sleep early. The synonyms of the word "necessary" are "..................".
a) allowed b) inessential c) banned d) essential e) vital

30 I am going to .... a course to improve my English before travelling.
a) do b) make c) take d) study e) keep

31 Firefighters have the ability to adapt to different situations .... necessary.
a) on b) while c) if d) during e) when



Reported questions السؤال المنقول

عند تحويل الجملة الاستفهامية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نتبع الآتي:

١) يتحـول فعـل القـول said إلى: asked – wondered – wanted to know – inquired

- Ali said, "When will you travel?"
  Ali asked (wondered – wanted to know – inquired) when I would travel.
- She said to me, "How long have you stayed in Luxor?"
  She asked me how long I had stayed in Luxor.

لاحظ أنه عند وجود مفعول لا يمكن استخدام wondered - wanted to know - inquired ونستخدم asked فقط.

٢) إذا بدأ السؤال بفعـل مسـاعـد أو ناقص (سؤال بـ هل) تحـذف علامات الاقتباس ونربـط بـ if أو whether.

- She said, "Have you enjoyed the journey?"
  She wanted to know if/whether I had enjoyed the journey.

لاحظ أنه عند وجود or not في نهاية الجملة يمكن استخدام if/whether أما إذا جاءت في وسط الجملة نستخدم whether فقط:

- He asked me if/whether I had travelled or not.
  He asked me whether or not I had travelled.

٣) إذا بدأ السؤال بأداة استفهـام نربـط بنفس الأداة.

- The teacher said to us, "Why are you making so much noise?"
  The teacher asked us why we were making so much noise.

٤) يحول السؤال إلى جملة خبرية (نقدم الفاعل على الفعل) مع ملاحظة حـذف do – does ويصبح الفعل (ماضيًا بسيطًا) وتحـذف did ويصبح الفعـل (ماضيًا تـامًا).

- Nour said, "How did you go out in such bad weather?"
- Nour wondered how I had gone out in such bad weather.

٥) الضمائر داخل علامات الاقتباس تتحول حسب الضمائر خارجها كما سبق ذكره.

٦) يتغير الزمن من المضارع إلى الماضي داخل علامات الاقتباس إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا.

٧) الأزمنـة داخـل علامـات الاقتباس تبقى كما هي إذا كان فعل القول مضارعـًا (ask – asks) أو عند وجود كلمة تدل على حدوث الفعل منذ فترة قصيرة جدًا (just now) أو كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة.

٨) تحـول الكلمات الدالة على الزمان والمكان كما سبق ذكره.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She asked me .... I scored a good goal.
a) that b) not to c) if d) to

2 He asked if .... help him.
a) can he b) could I c) I can d) I could

3 The cashier asked me .... I would pay in cash or by a credit card.
a) whether b) who c) that d) what

4 He wants to know if .... her lessons now.
a) she was studying b) was she studying
c) she is studying d) is she studying

5 Can you please tell me where ....?
a) is the station b) the station is
c) the station be d) was the station

Important Notes

من الممكن أن يتحول فعل القول said إلى بعض الكلمات حسب غرض الجملة كما يلى:

في جملة العرض تتحول said إلى offered to + inf. كما يلى:

1 Subject + offered to + inf.

- He said, "Can I help you?" ▪ He offered to help me.

في جملة الاقتراح تتحول said إلى suggested كما يلى:

2 Subject + suggest + (v-ing)
Subject + suggest + that + subject + (should) + inf.

- He said, "What about playing football today?"
  - He suggested playing football that day.
  - He suggested that we (should) play football that day.

في جملة الاتهام تتحول said إلى accused كما يلى:

3 Subject + accused مفعول of + (v-ing)/noun

- The police said to the criminal, "You have killed the woman on purpose."
  - The police accused the criminal of killing the woman on purpose.

في جملة الإنكار تتحول said إلى denied كما يلى:

4 Subject + denied + (v-ing)
Subject + denied that + جملة

- The thief said, "I didn't steal the money." ▪ The thief denied stealing the money.
  - The thief denied that he had stolen the money.

في جملة الاعتذار تتحول said إلى apologised كما يلى:

5 Subject + apologised for + (v-ing)
Subject + apologised that + جملة
Subject + apologised to + object + for + (v-ing)

- Amal said, "I'm sorry I didn't do my homework."
  - Amal apologised for not doing her homework.
  - Amal apologised that she hadn't done her homework.
- He said to his teacher, "I'm sorry for coming late."
  - He apologised to his teacher for coming late.

في جملة النصيحة تتحول said إلى advised كما يلى:

6 Subject + advised + مفعول + to + inf.

- My mother said to me, "You should study hard."
  - My mother advised me to study hard.

في جملة الطلب تتحول said إلى asked.

7 Subject + asked + مفعول + to + inf.

- Mona said to me, "Can you open the door?"
  - Mona asked me to open the door.

في حالة الاعتراف تتحول said إلى admitted.

8 admitted + (v-ing)

- She said, "I did this crime."
  - She admitted doing that crime.

في حالة الشكوى تتحول said إلى complained.

9 complained + that + subject + verb

- The mother said, "children are still making noise".
  - The mother complained that children were still making noise.

في حالة الوعد تتحول said إلى promised.

10 promised to + inf.
promised that + subject + verb

He said, "I'll buy you a gift."
- He promised to buy me a gift.
- He promised that he would buy me a gift.

في حالة التحذير تتحول said إلى warned.

11 warned + (to + inf.)
warned + against + v-ing

He said to me, "Don't cross the road."
- He warned me not to cross the road.
- He warned me against crossing the road.

في حالة الإصرار تتحول said إلى insisted.

12 insisted on + (v-ing) /insisted that + subject + verb

He said, "I will leave now."
- He insisted on leaving then. - He insisted that he left then.

في حالة الرفض تتحول said إلى refused.

13 refused + (to + inf.)

He said to Adel, "I won't give you any money."
- He refused to give Adel any money.

لاحظ التركيب التالي:

14 Do you know
(Can/Could) you tell me → wh-word + subj. + v + ...?

Do you know why she left the country?
Could you tell me what you want to eat?

- أما اذا كانت أداة الاستفهام هي who فتتبع بالفعل مباشرة.

Can you tell me who stole your book?

Language Summary

Reported Speech



نحذف الأقواس ونربط بـ that



تحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب

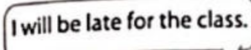
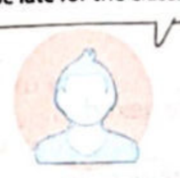
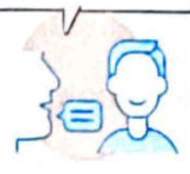


تحول الأزمنة برجوعها درجة للوراء إذا قيل الكلام في الماضي

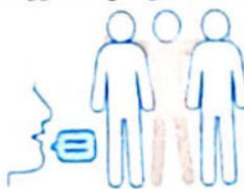


تحول الظروف الزمنية حسب وقت نقل الكلام

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
I will be late for the class.	He said that he would be late for the class.
Do you understand?	The teacher asked us if we understood.
Let's go to the cinema.	Omar suggested going to the cinema.







Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My father .... me when I had posted the letter to my sister.
a) said b) asked c) told d) wanted to know

2 He asked me .... I had travelled to Alexandria by train.
a) if b) how c) where d) that

3 I wondered if he .... many points.
a) will score b) could score c) has scored d) scores

4 Ramy denied .... the new vase.
a) broke b) breaking c) break d) to break

5 He asked me if .... to the cinema the week before.
a) had I gone b) I had gone c) did I go d) I would go

6 He asked if I knew that ....
a) had she been ill b) she has been ill
c) she had been ill d) has she been ill

7 Tamer .... me why I had travelled to London the week before. *(Longman)*
a) wanted to know b) inquired
c) asked d) ordered

8 Huda asked Hala .... she was doing anything the next day.
a) unless b) whether c) without d) what

9 My grandfather asked me whether I .... ice cream or cola.
a) am preferring b) have preferred c) preferred d) will prefer

10 Mr Ashraf .... me if my parents knew where I was.
a) told b) wondered c) inquired d) asked

11 Ali suggested that we .... go to the theatre that night.
a) can b) shall c) should d) must

12 Hana told me that she .... her homework at that moment.
a) had done b) has been doing c) will do d) was doing

13 No one knows why .... angry. *(Longman)*
a) was she b) is she c) she had been d) she is

14 Hatim asked .... or not we would join the trip to the pyramids. *(Longman)*
a) if b) when c) whether d) how

15 I asked Yousra if she was enjoying the book she ....
a) read b) was reading c) will read d) would read

16 He wonders why I .... them all about our plan.
a) have told b) had told c) was telling d) were telling

17 He said, "I'm sorry for not coming earlier". He .... to me for not coming early.
a) confessed b) apologised c) admitted d) promised

18 I want to know if .... at school now.
a) does he b) has he c) he is d) is he

19 Nora has just asked me how long .... to finish my work.
a) will I take b) I had taken c) did I take d) I will take

20 Ahmed usually asks me if I .... English or French.
a) prefers b) prefer c) had preferred d) could prefer

21 Can you .... me why your brother left us?
a) ask b) say c) tell d) want to know

22 When the teacher met us, he .... about our exam results.
a) wanted to know us b) told
c) inquired d) wandered

23 Yasser asked the tourist .... he came from. *(Longman)*
a) when b) where c) that d) if

24 Ali suggested that he .... with us to the meeting.
a) go b) is going c) going d) to go

25 The policeman said, ".......... park your car in this area".
a) Not to b) To c) Don't d) Mustn't

26 Sara .... for an apple as she was hungry.
a) told b) said c) wondered d) asked

27 I want to know why .... speaking loudly.
a) you are b) you had been c) you were d) were you

28 Samir asked me how .... the problem alone. *(Longman)*
a) will I solve b) had I solved c) I had solved d) I will solve

29 He wanted to know .... the cause of the accident.
a) why b) what c) no word d) whether

30 He wondered .... my father had a car or a bike.
a) unless b) what c) whether d) no word

31 A lot of students wanted to know .... the results of the last exam.
a) what b) who c) no word d) whether

32 She said, "I'm the one who stole the money." This means that she said she was the one ....
a) who the money will be stolen by.
b) by whom the money had been stolen.
c) by whom was the money stolen?
d) who wanted to steal the money.

33 He said, "Shall I carry the bag for you?" This means that he ....
a) said that he could carry the bag for me
b) told me that he shall carry the bag for me
c) offered to carry the bag for me
d) wondered if he would carry the bag for me

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 Adel is a ....; he is good at working in a group and always offers help.
a) team-played b) team-player c) team-play d) team-playing

2 I .... that I heard footsteps behind me. I turned around but found no one.
a) required b) fancied c) found d) paid

3 Molokhia is one of the delicious soups of the Egyptian ....
a) way b) tradition c) culture d) cuisine

4 As a teacher, it is very important to be .... for my classes.
a) punctual b) virtual c) patient d) flexible

5 When applying for a job, you often have to mention your .... and hobbies.
a) situations b) toys c) careers d) interests

6 The play is very popular, so we should check the .... of the tickets before going to the theatre.
a) availability b) value c) loyalty d) variety

7 Hanaa could get a .... as a receptionist in a famous hotel.
a) job b) profession c) career d) work

8 He asked me about the personal .... necessary to be a successful lawyer.
a) quantities b) hygiene c) qualities d) customs

9 Sometimes, parents should try to be .... with their children in some situations.
a) flexible b) disloyal c) industrial d) necessary

10 We can cooperate with each other to help poor people in local ....
a) communities b) companies c) compounds d) states

11 Dalia studied hard, so she was .... of passing all her exams.
a) punctual b) confident c) honest d) loyal

12 Salah is the best one to speak for the team; he is a good ....
a) contributor b) distributor c) communicator d) caller

13 Rich people sometimes .... a child or more as a sign of social participation المشاركة المجتمعية.
a) adapt b) adore c) adopt d) change

14 I'd like to .... a course in graphic designing because I want to change my career.
a) give b) do c) have d) get

15 Working as a .... makes my life full of dangers.
a) fire engine b) fire warrior c) firefighter d) fire extinguisher

Language

16 Eman .... me about my recent job.
a) said b) asked c) inquired d) explained

17 She asked me if .... an apple.
a) can she get b) she can get c) she could get d) she will get

18 He didn't .... me how he would get to London.
a) wonder b) tell c) say d) inquire

19 She .... her father to get the full mark in the next exams.
a) asked b) said c) thought d) promised

20 I didn't know .... the shop was shut or not.
a) why b) that c) unless d) whether

21 Huda asked .... our mother had made for dinner.
a) how b) why c) what d) when

22 They .... me whether I was ill.
a) said b) told c) wanted to know d) asked

23 He wanted to know where .... his laptop.
a) did he put b) he had put c) he puts d) had he put

24 I asked Mr Khalid how many pounds .... the day before.
a) he had earned b) had he earned
c) has he earned d) he has earned

25 Ahmed asked me where .... the day before.
a) did I go b) I went c) had I gone d) I had gone

26 Amgad asked Hossam when he .... his homework.
a) will do b) would do c) has done d) does

27 The teacher asked Ahmed .... all the way on foot.
a) would he come b) if did he come
c) if he came d) if does he come

28 Mona asked Tamer, "How often .... your grandparents?"
a) you visit b) you are visiting
c) you will visit d) do you visit

29 He asked me if I .... reading the book he'd lent me the week before.
a) had finished b) have finished c) finish d) will finish

30 Ali said, "If I were you, I'd read this book". - Ali .... me to read that book.
a) let b) advised c) ordered d) discouraged



Watch a video

Part (3)

Lessons 5 & 6



للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



• Job skills on a CV:

When you write your CV to apply for a job, you should write the information that makes you acceptable for it:

1. Your personal information; (name – place of birth – date of birth – address – marital status ...)
2. List your skills and personal qualities.
3. Write about your experience and the things you have done.
4. Personal statement where you have to describe yourself including your skills in sentences.
5. List your hobbies, interests and free time activities.

Model Essay

An essay about my dream job

Introduction	Every one of us surely has a dream to be achieved in his/her life. As for me, I always dream of becoming a doctor. This is my dream job and I am trying hard to achieve my dream. I would like to be a doctor as I want to help ill people to become healthier. Also, I can help my parents when they are sick. I would really like to be a surgeon like Dr Magdi Yacoub who has made great achievements in the field of heart surgery.
Main body	To become a successful doctor, I think that I have to read a lot of books because doctors are required to know well about the human body. In addition, I have to study English and many other languages very hard because most of medical terms are in English. Above all, I have to make a constant effort in my secondary study to get into the Faculty of Medicine as it is the first step to be a doctor.
Conclusion	In conclusion, I think I have the qualities to be a successful doctor. I am patient with people and I will be patient with the sick. I am working hard as I like my work and I always want to be better. I also have the ability to love and serve those who are sick or in need.

Practice

Practise more

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many people say that women always ask for equality with men because they have the weaker case. They insist that it's nonsense to claim that men and women are equal and have the same abilities. Women are physically weaker and never think intellectually. It is impossible for them to be wives, mothers and successful workers at the same time. They go on to say they are unreliable and employers can't trust them. They leave jobs to get married or have children. There is a great deal of truth in the jokes about women drivers. They insist on the fact that women are less practical and less mechanically-minded[1].

In addition, most women are glad to let men look after important affairs. They know that bearing and rearing[2] children are more important. That's why there are few women in politics and world affairs. They are not excluded; they exclude themselves. The best place for them is the home. Who is the real boss in the household? Certainly not father.

These claims are groundless[3]. In the U.S.A. and Western Europe, people live in woman-dominated societies. There, men are second-class citizens and women should grant men equal status! This proves that women can stand on the same footing as men and can do the most important tasks. Everyone has a role to play in society; men, women and even children should cooperate to live peacefully.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In the U.S.A. and Western Europe ....
   a) societies are dominated by men only
   b) women are superior to men
   c) women are second-class citizens
   d) men should grant women status
2. The jokes about women drivers showed that ....
   a) women have proved their ability as drivers
   b) women are second-class citizens
   c) women are skilful drivers
   d) women are bad drivers



(1) جيد في التعامل مع الماكينات
(2) تنشئة
(3) لا أساس له من الصحة

3 What is the opposite of the word "unreliable"?

a) Responsible. b) Irresponsible.
c) Untrusted. d) Disloyal.

4 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....

a) employers b) mothers
c) women d) men

5 According to the passage, ...

a) women are skilful drivers
b) women have proved their ability in politics
c) women are less practical and less mechanically-minded
d) women are the bosses in every branch

6 .... prevents women from having a successful career.

a) Proving ability in politics
b) Being the boss in every branch
c) Being second-class citizens
d) Being wives and mothers

7 In the U.S.A. and Western Europe, men are .... women.

a) less important than b) as important as
c) for serving d) more important than

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Sinai is a dear part of our country. It isn't a mere desert in the northeast of Egypt. It is a symbol of our struggle against enemies throughout history.

a) إن سيناء جزء غالٍ من بلدنا وهى ليست مجرد صحراء فى شمال غرب مصر ولكنها رمز لكفاحنا ضد الأعداء على مر التاريخ.
b) إن سيناء جزء غالٍ من بلدنا وهى مجرد صحراء فى شمال شرق مصر ولكنها شكل بسيط لكفاحنا ضد الأعداء على مر التاريخ.
c) إن سيناء جزء غالٍ من بلدنا وهى ليست مجرد صحراء فى شمال شرق مصر ولكنها رمز لكفاحنا ضد الأعداء على مر التاريخ.
d) إن سيناء جزء غالٍ من بلدنا وهى ليست مجرد صحراء فى شمال شرق مصر ولكنها رمز لمقابلة الأعداء على مر التاريخ.

2 Man is sociable by nature. Because of this fact, people should pay full attention to everything they do as it affects society around them either positively or negatively.

a) إن الإنسان اجتماعى بطبيعته وبسبب هذه الحقيقة يجب على الأشخاص أن ينتبهوا جيدا لكل شىء يفعلونه لأنه يؤثر على المجتمع من حولهم سواء بشكل إيجابى أو سلبى.
b) إن الرجل اجتماعى بطبيعته وبسبب هذه الحقيقة يجب على الأشخاص ألا ينتبهوا جيدا لكل شىء يفعلونه لأنه يؤثر على المجتمع من حولهم سواء بشكل إيجابى أو سلبى.
c) إن الإنسان ليس اجتماعيًا بطبيعته وبسبب هذه الحقيقة يجب على الأشخاص أن ينتبهوا جيدا لكل شىء يفعلونه لأنه يؤثر على المجتمع من حولهم سواء بشكل إيجابى أو سلبى.
d) إن الإنسان اجتماعى بطبيعته وبالرغم من هذه الحقيقة يجب على الأشخاص أن ينتبهوا جيدا لكل شىء يفعلونه لأنه يؤثر على المجتمع من حولهم سواء بشكل إيجابى أو سلبى.

3 Candidates for the jobs must have knowledge of at least one foreign language and they should also have computer skills.

a) لا يجب على المرشحين للوظائف أن يكون لديهم معرفة بلغة أجنبية واحدة على الأقل وأيضا يجب أن يكون لديهم مهارات الحاسب الآلى.
b) يجب على المرشحين للوظائف أن يكون لديهم معرفة بلغتين أجنبيتين على الأقل وأيضا يجب أن يكون لديهم مهارات الحاسب الآلى.
c) يجب على المرشحين للوظائف أن يكون لديهم معرفة بلغة أجنبية واحدة على الأقل وأيضا يجب أن يكون لديهم مهارات الحاسب الآلى.
d) المرشحون للوظيفة يجب أن يكون لديهم معرفة بلغة أجنبية واحدة أخيرًا وأيضا يجب أن يكون لديهم مهارات الآلة الحاسبة.

4 In fact, we are much luckier than our grandfathers because we enjoy lots of things which have made our life easier, and more comfortable.

a) فى الواقع حظنا أكثر بكثير من أجدادنا لأننا نتمتع بالكثير من الأشياء التى جعلت حياتنا أسرع وأكثر راحة.
b) فى الواقع نحن أكثر حظا بكثير من أجدادنا لأننا نتمتع بالكثير من الأشياء التى جعلت حياتنا أسهل وأكثر راحة.
c) فى الواقع نحن أكثر حظا بكثير من أجدادنا لأننا نتمتع بالكثير من الأشياء التى جعلت حياتنا أصعب وأقل راحة.
d) فى الواقع نحن أكثر حظا بكثير من أجدادنا لأننا نفتقد الكثير من الأشياء التى جعلت حياتنا أسهل وأكثر راحة.

5 To solve the problem of water shortage, the world economises on using water. Another solution is reusing water.

a) لحل مشكلة عجز المياه فإن العالم يقتصد فى استخدام المياه وهناك حل آخر وهو إعادة استخدام المياه.
b) لكى نحل مشكلة نقص المياه فإن العالم يقتصد فى استخدام المياه وهناك حل آخر وهو استخدام المياه.
c) لحل مشكلة تكلفة المياه فإن العالم لا يقتصد فى استهلاك المياه وهناك حل آخر وهو إعادة استخدام المياه.
d) لحل مشكلة نقص المياه فإن العالم يقتصد فى استخدام المياه وهناك حل آخر وهو عدم إعادة استخدام المياه.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 يتم بناء السدود لتخزين كميات إضافية من المياه خلفها والتى يتم استخدامها فيما بعد مثل السد العالى فى مصر.

a) Dams are built to store additional amounts of water behind them, who can be used later, such as the High Dam in Egypt.
b) Dams are building to store additional amounts of water behind them, which can be used later, such as the High Dam in Egypt.
c) Dams are built to store additional amount of water behind them, which can used soon, such as the High Dam in Aswan.
d) Dams are built to store additional amounts of water behind them, which can be used later, such as the High Dam in Egypt.

7 يجب علينا أن نقلل التلوث البيئى عن طريق زراعة الأشجار وتقليل استخدام الطاقة داخل البيت وخارجه.

a) We wish to reduce environmental pollution by planting trees and reducing the use of power inside or outside homes.
b) We must reduce environmental pollution by planting trees and reducing the use of power inside or outside homes.
c) Environmental pollution must reduce by planting trees and increasing the use of power inside or outside homes.
d) We must reduce environmental pollution by plant trees and reducing the use of power inside or outside the homes.

8 لكل فرد فى المجتمع حلم يتمنى تحقيقه فى المستقبل ويجب عليه العمل بجد لكى يتمكن من تحقيقه.

a) Everyone in society have a dream they hope to achieve in the future and they should work with hardness to achieve it.
b) Everyone in society has a dream he hopes to achieve in the future and they should work hard to achieve it.
c) Everyone in society has a dream they hope to achieve in the future and they should work hard to achieve it.
d) Everyone in society have a dream they hope to achieve in the future and they should work hardly to achieve it.

9 لقد أدت الثورة فى استخدام أجهزة الحاسب الآلى والإنترنت إلى ربط كل مدرسة فى مصر بشبكة الإنترنت.

a) The evolution in using computers and the internet have led to connecting every school in Egypt to the internet.
b) The revolution in using computers and the internet has led to connect every school in Egypt to the internet.
c) The revolution in using computers and the internet has led to connecting every school in Egypt to the internet.
d) The revolution in using computers and the internet has led to connecting all school in Egypt to the internet.

10 أعلنت وسائل الإعلام أنه ستكون هناك محادثات بين طرفى الحرب فى الأسبوع القادم برعاية الأمم المتحدة.

a) The media announced that there will be talks between the two warring parties next week under the auspices of the Uniting Nations.
b) The media announced that there have been talks between the two warring parties next week under the auspices of the United Nations.
c) The media announced that there would be talks between the two warring parties the following week under the auspices of the United Nations.
d) The media announced that there are talks between the two warring parties next week under the auspices of the British Council.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Do you have the required skills to get your favourite job?

....
....
....
....
....
....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.



Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 The main reason for living here is the weather. The synonyms of the word "main" are "..................".
a) major b) secondary c) minor d) basic e) dependable

2 The great writer met his end .... 69.
a) at the age of b) in the age of c) aged d) when e) since

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 If you're looking for a job, you need to be .... in order to find one quickly.
a) flexible b) fast c) fixed d) dull

4 A lot of patience is .... to look after a child.
a) sounded b) explained c) required d) seemed

5 A/An .... is someone whose job is to repair water pipes, baths, toilets, etc.
a) worker b) shop assistant c) officer d) plumber

6 My son failed the same exam twice. He can't be ....
a) loyal b) careless c) hardworking d) annoyed

7 Army officers have to do intensive .... regularly.
a) apprenticeship b) membership c) attendant d) training

8 Candidates should have training and .... experience in basic electronics.
a) practical b) clear c) qualified d) irrelevant

9 The young man's project failed as he had no previous .... of managing a farm.
a) experiment b) necessity c) profession d) experience

10 All the doctors .... there is nothing wrong with my stomach.
a) were saying b) tell c) told d) say

11 She said that China .... a densely populated ملحوظه بالسكان country.
a) would be b) will be c) had been d) is

12 Leila said that she .... her clothes then.
a) cleaned b) was cleaning c) has cleaned d) would clean

13 They .... going to the library and I thought it was a good idea.
a) suggested b) told c) said d) ordered

14 Nadeen said she had not visited her relatives ....
a) then b) the day after
c) the previous day d) the following day

15 Mai has just told Mona that they .... to their friend's birthday tonight.

a) would go b) have gone c) were going d) are going

16 Hany was in Tanta for one week. His brother asked him what he .... there.

a) has been doing b) would do c) had been doing d) is doing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Nowadays, more and more businesses are allowing employees to work at least part of the week from home. The idea of "telecommuting" isn't that new and for many it's been technically possible since the Internet became widely accessible. Some employers, however, have been less willing to allow the practice for fear that employees who were not being watched would become lazy and undisciplined. Actually, recent evidence has shown that these fears are mostly unjustified and that businesses can actually save a lot of money on rent by converting more of their staff over to telecommuters.

The major difference is that most communication is done using the telephone, email and instant messaging. Some employers allow workers to choose which hours they will work, others require them to be online during a normal work day. Either way, most telecommuters have the freedom to work from home or wherever else they would like. Yet telecommuters often find that their freedom comes with a cost.

Those who work outside the office may discover that their employers are more willing to ask them to work long or strange hours. In situations where there are other family members at home, it can be difficult to keep work life and home life separate. They don't spend enough quality time with those whom they look after.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What does the word 'telecommuting' mean?

a) Travelling on the train. b) Playing games on the internet.
c) Doing business online. d) Working from the office.

18 What does the underlined word 'quality time' refer to?

a) Time spent with children at home.
b) Time spent with friends at a café.
c) Time spent with employers.
d) Time spent with your colleagues at work.

19 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) employers b) telecommunications
c) employees d) companies

20 Employees may not work well at home because they ....

a) are bad people b) aren't watched
c) can't work at home d) have children

21 Which one of the following is the passage mainly about?

a) Why people can telecommute more easily today than in the past.
b) Why more companies are choosing to allow employees to telecommute.
c) The benefits companies can get from having telecommuters.
d) The way telecommuters do their jobs from home using the internet.

22 Some employers fear that telecommuting may make some employees ....

a) active b) inactive c) energetic d) powerful

23 How can telecommuters communicate with their employers?

a) By sending emails. b) By using the telephone.
c) By writing letters to them. d) Both a & b.

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- إن استصلاح المزيد من الصحراء وتطوير طرق الزراعة لإنتاج المزيد من المحاصيل هما الحلان الإيجابيان لمشكلة نقص الطعام.

a) Reclaiming more deserts and developing farming methods to produce more food are the positive solution to the problem of food shortage.
b) Reclaiming more deserts and developing farming methods to produce more crops are the two positive solutions to the problem of food shortage.
c) Reforming more deserts and developing farming methods to reduce more crops are the both positive solution to the problem of food shortage.
d) Reforming more desserts and developing farming methods to produce more yields are the two positive solutions to the problem of food short.

25 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

It is the responsibility of parents, school and universities to enlighten young people on the destructive effects of drug taking and bad company.

a) إن تنوير الشباب بالآثار المدمرة لتعاطى العقاقير الطبية والصحبة السيئة هى مسئولية الآباء والمدرسة والجامعات.
b) إنها لمسئولية الوالدين والمدرسة والجامعات أن ينورا الشباب بالآثار المدمرة لتعاطى المخدرات والشركة السيئة.
c) إن تنوير الشباب بالآثار المدمرة لتعاطى المخدرات والصحبة السيئة هى مسئولية الآباء والمدرسة والجامعات.
d) إن تعليم الشباب الآثار الغريبة لتعاطى المخدرات والصحبة السيئة هى مسئولية الوالدين والمدرسة والجامعات.

26 **Answer the following questions:**

1. Jim returned to the fort and entered without being seen. What does this show you about the guards in the fort?
2. Do you think that Silver likes Jim or not? Give reasons for your answer.
3. Jim Hawkins was happy to hear that his friends were alive, but his happiness wasn't complete. Can you illustrate why?

27 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

How we can prepare young people for their future employment.

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 337



Units 9 & 10 — Al-Adwaa Test 40

▶ **Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:**

1 The players need some additional exercises before the main match. The opposite of the word "additional" is "..............".

a) extra b) necessary c) essential d) unimportant e) inessential

2 The government is trying hard to .... more electricity for all people.

a) generate b) pick c) build d) make e) put

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 Please, try to be ...., so we can start the meeting on time.

a) flexible b) dishonest c) punctual d) funny

4 My daughter Haneen is .... of Mansura University.

a) graduate b) graduated c) a graduation d) a graduate

5 The .... for this work is today, so I really need to get on with it.

a) deadline b) availability c) apprenticeship d) contract

6 Publishing books can be intellectually and financially .... business.

a) reward b) rewarding c) worthless d) stressed

7 A lot of divers have tried to explore the .... of Titanic ever since it sank.

a) wound b) mud c) wreck d) paddle

8 A/An .... school is a school equipped with rooms where students live and study.

a) education b) boarding c) broading d) extra

9 It was so cold that we asked my mum to .... a fire.

a) set b) save c) apply d) make

10 My father said, ".............. stay up late".

a) Didn't b) Don't c) To not d) Not to

11 Osama asked Shady whether he .... him carry the bags.

a) could help b) can help c) has helped d) will help

12 Samy asked Sara what she .... by 'globalisation.'

a) was meaning b) means c) meant d) is meaning

13 I didn't return home until I .... my work.

a) finish b) was finishing c) had finished d) have finished

14 We .... near a supermarket before we moved to this house.

a) lived b) have lived c) live d) had been lived

15 I .... my last novel six times before I published it.

a) 've changed b) 'd change c) 'd changed d) was changing

16 I .... the police after I had seen the accident.

a) telephoned b) had telephoned c) was telephoning d) can telephone

▶ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

While Robert was walking, he saw a crowd. His curiosity[1] made him cross the road to see what was happening. He saw an old man with a performing monkey whose performance wasn't remarkable. So, after throwing a few pennies[2] in the dirty hat which the man had placed on the pavement, Robert began to move off, along with other members of the crowd. At this point, the man suddenly let out a loud cry.

The man was bending over his monkey, which now lay quite still on the pavement. He picked up the lifeless[3] body and, holding it close to him, began to weep[4]. A young man stepped forward from the crowd and, took some money from his pocket and dropped it into the hat. Robert and several other people did likewise. Meanwhile, the man continued to hold the dead monkey in his arms and seemed to take no notice of what was going on around him. A few months later, Robert came across the old man again in another part of the city. The man had a monkey, bought no doubt with the money which the crowd had given him. It did not, however, seem any better at its tricks than the previous one. Robert was pleased to see that the old man was still able to earn a living, though on this occasion, having partly paid for the monkey out of his own pocket, he did not feel inclined[5] to throw any money into the hat.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The writer saw the performance of the man and the monkey ....

a) thrice b) once c) twice d) one time

18 The phrase "lay quite still" meant that ....

a) stayed without looking b) stayed without breathing
c) stayed without smelling d) stayed without moving

19 The crowd began to move off when ....

a) the man began his performance
b) the monkey fell to the ground
c) the man and the monkey finished their performance
d) the man cried loudly for help

(1) فضول (2) قروش (3) بلا حياة (4) يبكي بشدة (5) مائل/لديه رغبة

20 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
a) the owner of the monkey
b) the dirty hat
c) the money in the hat
d) the monkey

21 The monkey's owner was ....
a) a trickster
b) honest
c) insincere
d) greedy

22 Robert did not throw any money into the hat the second time because ....
a) there was enough money in it already
b) he had seen the monkey's tricks before
c) the monkey's tricks were not very good
d) he shared in buying this monkey

23 What was the old man doing while the crowd threw money into his hat?
a) He was holding the dead monkey in his arms.
b) He was collecting the money from his hat.
c) He was sitting on the floor trying to save the monkey.
d) He was calling for help.

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

مما لا شك فيه أن المياه الملوثة غير صالحة للشرب وخطيرة لأنها تسبب الأمراض وتدمر البيئة والحيوانات والأسماك.

a) There is no doubt that pollution water is not drinkable and dangerous as it causes diseases and destroys the environment, animals and fish.
b) There is no doubt that polluted water is drinkable and dangerous as it causes diseases and destroys the environment, animals and fish.
c) There is no doubt that polluted water is not drinkable and dangerous as it causes diseases and destroys the environment, animals and fish.
d) There is no doubt that polluted water is avoidable and dangerous as it causes diseases and destroy the environment, animals and fish.

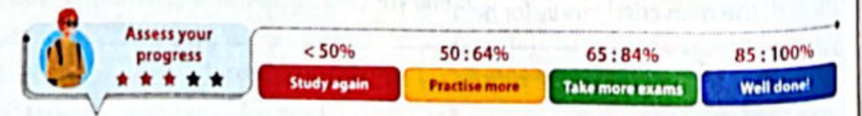
25 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

Most people fail in life, not because they do not know their job, but because they gave up after the first failure.

a) يفشل معظم الناس فى حياتهم ليس لأنهم لا يتقنون وظيفتهم ولكن لأنهم يستسلمون قبل أول فشل.
b) معظم الناس ينجحون فى حياتهم ليس لأنهم يعرفون وظيفتهم ولكن لأنهم لم يستسلموا بعد أول فشل.
c) يفشل معظم الناس فى حياتهم ليس لأنهم لا يعرفون وظيفتهم ولكن لأنهم لم يعطوا الكثير بعد أول فشل.
d) يفشل معظم الناس فى حياتهم ليس لأنهم لا يعرفون وظيفتهم ولكن لأنهم يستسلمون بعد أول فشل.

26 **Answer the following questions:**
1. The pirate Hands was very strong. Do you agree?
2. What do you think of the guards at the fort?
3. Why do you think Jim caused the mutiny of the pirates against Silver?

27 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**
What's the relation between good education and having a good job?





Amazing people

Unit 11

Objectives

Reading	: An article about athletes with disabilities
Writing	: A paragraph on a disabled person you like; an email to arrange a job interview
Listening	: A radio interview about equal opportunities
Speaking	: Making complaints and polite responses
Language	: Relative clauses
Life Skills	: Respect for diversity; creativity; cooperation

امسح الكود
استمتع بمحتوى الوحدة الرقمي



Part (1)
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

achieve (v) – d	يحقق/ينجز	medal (n)	ميدالية
achievement (n)	إنجاز	muscle (n)	عضلة
activist (n)	ناشط	polio (n)	شلل الأطفال
campaign (n) (v) – ed	حملة/ يقوم بعمل حملة	powerlifter (n)	لاعب رفع الأثقال
compete (v) – d	يتنافس	powerlifting (n)	رفع الأثقال
disability (n)	إعاقة	ramp (n)	منحدر (مدخل مخصص لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة)
fighting (n)	قتال	spina bifida (n)	تشقق العمود الفقرى (شلل الحبل الشوكى)
highs and lows (n)*	نجاحات وإخفاقات	wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك
kung fu (n)	رياضة الكونغ فو	traditional (adj)	تقليدى

*It's natural to have highs and lows in your life.

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

actually (adv)	بالفعل	campaigner (n)	مدافع/مؤيد
affect (v) – ed	يؤثر على	campus (n)	الحرم الجامعى
amazing (adj)	مذهل	champion (n)	بطل رياضى
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضى	charity (n)	جمعية خيرية
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	dedicate (v) – d	يكرس
awful (adj)	فظيع	describe (v) – d	يصف
benefits (n)	فوائد	determination (n)	تصميم

ensure (v) – d	يؤكد/يضمن	outstanding (adj)	مميز/بارز
equal (adj)	متساوٍ	paperwork (n)	عمل ورقى
especially (adv)	خصوصًا	Paralympian (n)	لاعب بارالیمبی
event (n)	حدث هام	Paralympic (adj)	بارالیمبی (متعلق بالألعاب الأولمبية لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة)
existing (adj)	موجود	personally (adv)	شخصيًا
guest (n)	ضيف/نزيل	physical (adj)	بدنى
impact (n)	تأثير	podcast (n)	نشرة صوتية
inspire (v) – d	يلهم	practice (n)	تدريب
issue (n)	قضية/موضوع	preserve (v) – d	يحافظ
media (n)	الإعلام	promote (v) – d	يرقى
member (n)	عضو	race (n)	سباق/سلالة
metal disc	قرص معدنى	retire (v) – d	يتقاعد/يعتزل
notice (v) – d	يلاحظ	sacrifice (n) (v)	تضحية/يضحى
opportunity (n)	فرصة	sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
organisation (n)	منظمة		

Workbook Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة/مجال	marketing (n)	تسويق
colleague (n)	زميل عمل	passenger (n)	راكب
cycling (n)	ركوب الدراجات	snowboarding (n)	التزلج على الجليد
lift (v) – ed (n)	يرفع/مصعد		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The child needs help as he is a/an .... patient.
   a) ability b) polio c) campaign d) support
2. Amal eventually .... her goal of becoming a flight attendant.
   a) achieved b) campaigned c) competed d) improved
3. Rania Olwany was the greatest Egyptian .... swimmer.
   a) hero b) recent c) power d) champion

4 .... is my favourite means of transportation as it doesn't pollute the air.
a) Running b) Cycling c) The bus d) Snowboarding

5 The conference offers a good .... for doctors to meet each other annually.
a) opportunity b) charity c) campaign d) goal

6 Riding a bike is good for strengthening the leg ....
a) ramps b) athletes c) castles d) muscles

7 I respect all my .... in the company. They are all very helpful.
a) colleagues b) colleges c) classmates d) passengers

8 The government is trying hard to pay attention to the .... of homeless children.
a) tissue b) notice c) issue d) race

9 Mohamed Salah is an .... player to watch at football matches.
a) athletic b) amazing c) achieving d) equal

10 Alexandria Governorate started a .... to stop people throwing rubbish on the beach.
a) campaign b) course c) flight d) war

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

above heads	فوق الرءوس	battle against	يكافح ضد
come fourth	يأتي في المركز الرابع	fight with	يقاتل بـ
do/play sport	يمارس الرياضة	get into	يدخل/ينخرط
get from ... to ...	ينتقل من (مكان) إلى ...	go up	يصعد/يرتفع
give a talk	يلقي خطابًا	impact on	تأثير على
make a difference	يصنع اختلافًا	member of	عضو في
make it difficult to	يجعلها صعبة	refer to	يشير إلى
play in a wheelchair	يلعب على كرسي متحرك	effect on	تأثير على
win a medal	يفوز بميدالية	retire from	يتقاعد/يعتزل من
wider range of	مجموعة كبيرة من	successful in/at	ناجح في
campaign for	يدافع عن	take part in	يشارك في
compete in	يتنافس في		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
act	يتصرف/يفعل	action activist	سلوك/تمثيل ناشط	active	نشيط
achieve	يحقق	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
affect*	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
campaign	يقوم بعمل حملة	campaign campaigner	حملة مدافع/مؤيد	----------	
compete	يتنافس	competition competitor	منافسة متنافس	competitive	تنافسي
determine	يحدد	determination	عزم/تصميم	determined	عازم/مصمم
disable	يُعطل/يعيق	disability	إعاقة	disabled	معاق
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring	ملهم
organise	ينظم	organisation organiser	منظمة منظم	organised	مُنظَّم
retire	يتقاعد	retirement	تقاعد	retired	متقاعد

- Watching too much TV affects our sight badly.
- Watching TV for a long time has a bad effect on our sight.
- Reading books is effective in fighting ignorance.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
amazing	مذهل	astonishing/surprising	believable/usual/expected معقول/معتاد/متوقع
compete	يتنافس	contest/challenge	surrender/give up يستسلم
difference	اختلاف	distinction/variation	similarity/harmony تشابه/تناغم
inspire	يلهم	stimulate/encourage	discourage/depress يثبط
personally	شخصيًا	privately/individually	generally/publicly عمومًا
physical	بدني/مادي	bodily/materialistic	mental/psychological/spiritual عقلي/نفسي/روحي



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father worked hard for years and made a great .... during his life.
   a) achieve b) achieved
   c) achieving d) achievement
2. Our national team .... second in the last African Nations Cup.
   a) arrived b) did c) came d) won
3. It is difficult for a small shop to compete with the big supermarkets. The antonym of the word "compete" is ....
   a) contest b) give up
   c) challenge d) expect
4. Disabled people can play tennis .... wheelchairs.
   a) in b) on c) for d) at
5. The results of the tests will .... what treatment you need.
   a) determine b) determination
   c) determined d) determines
6. Children like to explore the physical world around them. The synonym of "physical" is ....
   a) materialistic b) mental
   c) spiritual d) psychological
7. The manager of the factory .... a wonderful talk that inspired all workers.
   a) gave b) fought
   c) added d) impacted
8. We .... diving last summer to enjoy seeing the coral reefs of the Red Sea.
   a) went b) took
   c) came d) played
9. My little daughter took .... the school writing competition.
   a) apart in b) place in
   c) on d) part in
10. The market is open to any company to compete in. The synonym of the word "compete" is ".............".
   a) join b) surrender
   c) share d) challenge

Reading Text

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef was a champion[1] in Kung Fu and won many medals in the sport at secondary school. After a terrible[2] car accident, he now has a disability[3] which means he has to use a wheelchair. Mahmoud cannot walk again, but that has not stopped his love of sport. He decided to practise a sport which you can play in a wheelchair and he became very good at wheelchair tennis. He has competed[4] in many international wheelchair tennis competitions and became one of the best wheelchair tennis players in Egypt. That is an amazing achievement[5], but Mahmoud has not stopped there. He also helps people who are in wheelchairs to stay fit, and gives talks to help other people with disabilities.

Amany Ali

Amany Ali is an Egyptian Paralympic powerlifter[6] who won a bronze medal in the 2016 Paralympic Games in Brazil. Amany had an illness called polio[7] when she was younger and this affected the muscles[8] in her feet. She did not start powerlifting until she was 20, although she has always loved the sport. She achieved her Paralympic success[9] in Brazil aged 40, and at a very difficult time. Her father died two days before the competition, so she wanted to win the medal for him. She also came fourth in the London Paralympic Games in 2012.

Tanni Grey-Thompson

Tanni Grey-Thompson is a British Paralympian wheelchair racer[10] who has a medical condition[11] called spina bifida. She is unable to walk, so she uses a wheelchair to get around. Tanni first competed in the 400 metres and wheelchair basketball at the Paralympics in Seoul in 1988. Tanni won 16 Paralympic medals in athletics events from the 100 metres up to the 800 metres, including[12] 11 gold medals. Since she retired[13] from athletics in 2004, Tanni has worked for many different organisations which help people, especially disabled people and women, to enjoy the benefits of sports.

(1) بطل
(2) رهيب
(3) إعاقة
(4) تنافس
(5) إنجاز
(6) لاعب رفع الأثقال
(7) شلل الأطفال
(8) عضلات
(9) نجاح
(10) متسابق
(11) حالة
(12) بما فيها
(13) تقاعد

Listening Text

Nadia : Hello everyone and welcome to the podcast[1]. Every week we talk to a different guest[2] about his job. Today we have a very special guest who's a charity activist[3] from Egypt. Her name is Leila El-Baz. Leila, who has been an equal opportunities campaigner[4] for almost ten years now, is here to talk about trying to change the world. Thank you very much for joining us, Leila.

Leila : Great to be here, Nadia.

Nadia : So tell us a little bit about yourself, Leila. Where are you from?

Leila : I'm from Alexandria, which is a city in the north of Egypt, but I work in Cairo now.

Nadia : What did you study?

Leila : I studied sociology[5] which I found really interesting.

Nadia : And how did you get into working for charities[6] supporting equal opportunities? It's not something that everyone does for living, is it?

Leila : No, I guess it isn't, but it's a brilliant[7] job. I would recommend it to all young people because you can really make a difference[8] – that's why I love it so much. I started campaigning for disabled people when I was at university actually. One of my best friends was disabled and she used a wheelchair. I noticed[9] that she was having lots of problems just trying to get from one classroom to another, or from the library to the cafeteria. There were steps everywhere and hardly any lifts[10] or ramps to help disabled people get from one floor to the next.

Nadia : Wow. That's awful[11].

Leila : Yes, I know, so my friend and I decided to try to make changes in our university. We asked the teachers to talk to the people who were in charge[12] of the university about the issue[13] and they did.

(1) إذاعة صوتية
(2) ضيف/زائر
(3) ناشط خيري
(4) مناضل/مدافع
(5) علم الاجتماع
(6) مؤسسات خيرية
(7) رائع
(8) يحدث فرقًا
(9) لاحظ
(10) مصاعد
(11) سيئ
(12) كانوا مسئولين عن
(13) مشكلة

Nadia : What happened next?

Leila : Well, after about a year, we got four new lifts and lots of ramps. The university also promised to think about disabled students when they build new parts of the campus[14] or change existing buildings.

Nadia : That's excellent.

Leila : When I finished studying, I got a job at a charity which helps disabled young people find jobs. That was really interesting.

Nadia : But, now you campaign for equal opportunities for a wider range of people – not just people with disabilities – is that right?

Leila : Yes, that's right. Now I work for an organisation[15] called Open Eyes which campaigns in lots of different areas. We try to ensure that people who are different to other people, in one way or another, still have the same chances[16] in life.

Nadia : That sounds like great work to be doing, but is there anything you don't like about your job?

Leila : Well, I don't like it when you think you're going to succeed, but, in the end, you don't. And, of course, not all of our work is exciting. We have to do paperwork[17] too, you know!

(14) الحرم الجامعي
(15) منظمة
(16) فرص
(17) أعمال كتابية

Workbook Text

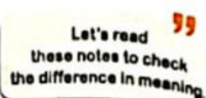
Wheelchair tennis

Some amazing athletes compete in different sports even when they have a disability. For example, some play tennis in wheelchairs. The playing area is the same as for other tennis competitions, but the players need to have strong muscles in their arms to move around and to hit the ball. The best players enter the Paralympic Games, but few achieve as much success as Esther Vergeer, who is from the Netherlands. She won four gold medals between 2000 and 2012.

Olympic sports

Many Olympic sports have always been part of the modern games, such as cycling and swimming. Some of the most famous Olympians are runners such as Usain Bolt and Mo Farah. New sports are sometimes added to the games. For example, windsurfing became an Olympic Sport in 1984 and snowboarding in 1998. Other sports are not part of the Olympic Games, for example, powerlifting. That means that great Egyptian powerlifter, like Sherif Othman, can only compete in the Paralympics.





1

play

تستخدم (play) غالبًا مع الألعاب التي تستخدم فيها الكرة:

(football – basketball – hockey – soccer – tennis – squash – table tennis (ping pong) – rackets – volleyball)

- I used to play basketball when I was in high school.

go

تستخدم (go) غالبًا مع الرياضات والأنشطة التي تنتهي بـ (ing):

(swimming – jogging جرى بطئ = slow running – sailing – dancing – water-skiing – running – scuba-diving – riding – hunting – climbing)

- My grandfather and I go sailing every time I visit him.

do

تستخدم do غالبًا مع الرياضات التي لا تحتاج إلى أدوات لممارستها:

(gymnastics – karate – martial arts – athletics – yoga)

وتستخدم (do/play) مع كلمة (sport):

- Do you do any sports? - Yes, I play hockey.

يمكن استخدام (been) بدلًا من (gone) مع الرياضات المنتهية بـ (ing):

- Have you ever gone swimming? - Have you ever been swimming?

2

event حدث/مناسبة (حفل تابع لمنظمة) (هام وشيق وغالبًا يتم فيه اجتماع الناس)	The signing of the peace treaty was a historic event.
incident حادث (واقعة) (غير سار ويلفت الأنظار)	There have been several violent incidents at football matches recently.

3

affect = influence يؤثر على (بدون حرف جر)	Smoking affects/influences our health badly.
effect = influence = impact تأثير ويأتى معهم حرف الجر on	Smoking has a bad effect/influence/impact on our health.
effective = influential مؤثر/فعال	- This drug is effective for this disease. - Mohammad Sobhy was an influential actor in the 20th century.

4

campaign for يقوم بحملة لصالح	He is busy campaigning for re-election and did not have time to discuss the new problems.
campaign against يقوم بحملة ضد	A group of people is campaigning against the destruction of the rainforests.

5

complain to يشكو إلى شخص	I will complain to the manager.
complain about يشكو من شيء أو من مفعول	I will complain about his mistake.
complain of يشكو من مرض	I complain of a bad cold.
complain that يشكو أن ويأتى بعدها جملة	I will complain that he is rude to me.

6

compete for يتنافس من أجل	The stores have to compete for fame and good reputation السمعة.
compete to يتنافس لـ	Several companies are competing to get the contract.
compete against يتنافس ضد	I had to compete against 19 other people for the job.
compete with يتنافس مع	They found themselves competing with foreign companies for a share of the market.
compete in/at يتنافس/يشارك فى	- How many runners will be competing in the marathon? - Professional athletes may now compete at the Olympics.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Visitors to the city can .... sailing off the island.
   a) play b) go c) do d) make
2. The government launched a campaign .... car accidents.
   a) for b) with c) to d) against
3. Some amazing athletes compete .... different sports even when they have a disability.
   a) in b) with c) to d) against
4. Being rich and famous must have a/an .... on our decision.
   a) affect b) effect c) impact d) b & c
5. People are always complaining .... the bad weather.
   a) to b) about c) for d) that
6. There are three main .... in man's life; birth, marriage and death.
   a) accidents b) incidents c) events d) competitions

Practice  Practise more — Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Because of his bravery in rescuing many people, he was awarded a ....
a) gift b) medal c) ring d) ramp

2 The school uses a combination of modern and .... methods for teaching reading.
a) up-to-date b) dated c) strange d) traditional

3 Ali still runs marathons although he has only one leg. He never lets his .... stop him.
a) ability b) opportunity c) achievement d) disability

4 The coach said that winning the league was ...., and nothing was impossible.
a) achieve b) achievement c) achievable d) achieving

5 The government should exert more effort to .... the safety of the racers.
a) ensure b) guess c) require d) inspire

6 A .... is a sloping surface that joins two places of different levels. (Longman)
a) camp b) ramp c) race d) rose

7 .... is an ancient Chinese fighting art in which you attack people with your hands and feet.
a) Handball b) Kung fu c) Boxing d) Snorkelling

8 These exercises will help you to build .... and increase stamina قوة تحمل.
a) ramps b) disabilities c) muscles d) organs

9 All individuals must be .... in the eyes of law.
a) equal b) different c) unequal d) social

10 Our company is .... with foreign companies to increase its sales. (Longman)
a) competing b) completing c) achieving d) believing

11 A/An .... is a person who works to achieve social change.
a) athlete b) powerlifter c) activist d) runner

12 The film about a cancer survivor .... me deeply.
a) affected b) acquired c) impacted d) lifted

13 The film about a cancer survivor has had a deep .... on me.
a) affect b) effect c) lift d) influential

14 The manager of the company asked his assistants to run an advertising .... all over the country.
a) company b) inspiration c) campaign d) tissue

15 His participation in that game was .... We all liked him so much as it was a wonderful level.
a) disappointing b) interested c) terrible d) outstanding

16 I usually listen to some .... on my headphone on my way to work.
a) podcasts b) campaigns c) movies d) colleagues

17 I didn't accept his offer to travel abroad and I think it was a missed ....
a) responsibility b) possibility c) opportunity d) charge

18 Every team needs a leader who is able to .... its members.
a) pull b) conspire c) inspire d) lift

19 We are going to launch a .... against pollution in our town. (Longman)
a) company b) campaign c) camp d) campfire

20 The boy lived a very hard life as he couldn't move because he suffered from ....
a) spina bifida b) headache c) spine bifida d) flu

21 Those who desire to succeed in business need great ....
a) failure b) campuses c) insurance d) determination

22 .... is the scientific study of societies and the behaviour of people in groups. (Longman)
a) Sociology b) Psychology c) Archaeology d) Geology

23 I am going to .... my weekend to some voluntary work in my local community.
a) inspire b) preserve c) dictate d) dedicate

24 The engineers designed new buses equipped with a platform and a .... to help people in wheelchairs.
a) cliff b) runway c) ramp d) landslide

25 Many women .... some interesting careers for their families. They put their families first.
a) sacrifice b) donate c) inspire d) retire

26 The .... of something refer to successful and unsuccessful times.
a) heights and laws b) highs and lows
c) highs and laws d) heights and lows

27 This charity helps disabled people find jobs. It campaigns .... equal job opportunities. (Longman)
a) for b) with c) by d) of

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

28 I am meeting the manager personally. The synonyms of the word "personally" are ....
a) mentally b) practically c) generally d) privately e) individually

29 He inspired many young people to study their lessons hard. The antonyms of the word "inspired" are "..............".
a) discouraged b) stimulated c) competed d) depressed e) surrendered

30 To keep healthy and energetic, you must .... sport.
a) do b) have c) make d) add e) play

31 You must improve your skills to be successful .... doing your work.
a) of b) with c) at d) in e) by

B Language

Relative clauses

هى الجمل التى تستخدم فيها ضمائر الوصل للربط بينها، وضمائر الوصل هى:

who/that	whom/that	which/that	whose	where	when
للفاعل والمفعول العاقل	للمفعول العاقل	للفاعل والمفعول غير العاقل	للملكية	للمكان	للزمان

تحل ضمائر الوصل بدل الاسم أو الضمير المكرر فى الجملة الثانية.

غالبًا ما يأتى ضمير الوصل بعد الاسم المراد وصله مباشرة.

هناك نوعان من عبارات الوصل:

1. Defining relative clauses:

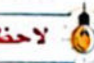
١) عبارات الوصل المُحدَّدة تعطى معلومات ضرورية عن شخص أو شىء.

- Mr Nader is the person that/who teaches us maths.
- Al Ahram is the newspaper that/which I read every day.

2. Non-defining relative clauses:

٢) عبارات الوصل غير المحددة (مع الفاصلات) تعطينا معلومات إضافية عن شخص أو شىء.

- Mr Nader, who teaches us maths, will be absent tomorrow.
- Al Ahram, which is a daily newspaper, is read by millions of people.


لاحظ

لا تستخدم that فى هذا النوع من عبارات الوصل.

who = that

تحل who محل فاعل عاقل وتوضع بعد الفاعل الذى تشير إليه، ويمكن استخدام that بدلًا منها .

- Ahmed is my friend. He teaches English well.
  Ahmed, who teaches English well, is my friend.
- This is the boy. He broke the vase.
  This is the boy who (that) broke the vase.

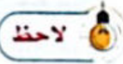
whom = who = that

تحل whom محل مفعول عاقل ويأتى بعدها الفاعل، ويمكن استخدام that/who بدلًا منها.

- Ahmed is my brother. You met him yesterday.
  Ahmed, whom (who) you met yesterday, is my brother.

يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا حل محل مفعول (يأتى بعده فاعل + فعل).

- That's the man. You are talking about.
  That's the man (whom/who/that) you are talking about.
  That's the man you are talking about.


لاحظ

عند وجود حرف جر قبل ضمير الوصل مع العاقل نستخدم whom فقط وليس who – that.

- That's the man about whom you are talking.

فعل + فاعل + حرف جر + **whom** + اسم عاقل   فعل + **who/that** + اسم عاقل

فعل + فاعل + **whom/who/that** + اسم عاقل

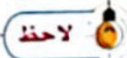
ولكن عند وجود حرف الجر فى نهاية الجملة من الممكن استخدام who – whom – that.

- That is the man who/whom/that you are talking about.

which = that

تحل which محل الفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل وتوضع بعد الاسم الذى تشير إليه، ويمكن استخدام that بدلًا منها.

- The books are all mine. They are on the shelf.
  The books which are on the shelf are all mine. (بعدها فعل فهى تحل محل الفاعل)
- I opened the window. It overlooks the garden.
  I opened the window which (that) overlooks the garden.
- The book is useful. You read it.
  The book which (that) you read is useful. (بعدها فاعل فهى تحل محل المفعول)


لاحظ

إذا حلت which محل المفعول (وجاءت بعدها جملة) يمكن حذفها.

The book you read is useful.

يبقى حرف الجر كما هو بعد الفعل أو يستخدم قبل (which) وليس that.

- He bought a new car. He drove us to the cinema with it.
  = He bought a new car which he drove us to the cinema with.
  = He bought a new car with which he drove us to the cinema.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cleopatra, ... was very beautiful, was the last pharaoh of Egypt.
   a) that b) whose c) which d) who
2. Alexandria, ... is Egypt's second biggest city, is a wonderful place for a holiday.
   a) that b) which c) where d) in which
3. Raneem El Welily, ... was born in 1989, is a famous squash player.
   a) whose b) that c) who d) whom
4. The sweater .... my father bought me is very big.
   a) what b) whose c) whom d) which
5. Damanhour, in .... my mother was born, is in northern Egypt.
   a) who b) which c) that d) where

whose

تستخدم whose للملكية (عاقل وغير عاقل) وتحل محل ('s) أو صفات الملكية (his, her, its, their) أو ما يعبر عن الملكية.

- The boy got high marks. His father is a teacher.
  = The boy whose father is a teacher got high marks.



يمكن استخدام حرف الجر قبلها ولا تستخدم that بدلًا منها.

- My uncle travelled abroad. We live in his house.
  = My uncle in whose house we live travelled abroad.

الاسم بعد whose لا يأتي قبله أى أداة أو ضمير ولا يكون اسم شخص.

اسم + whose + اسم

- I met Ali ~~whose his father~~ is a doctor.
- I met Ali whose father is a doctor.



who's = who is/ who has

- Mohammad Salah is the player who's wearing T-shirt number 10. = who is
  Mona is the student who's done all her homework. = who has

where

تستخدم where مع المكان.

- This is the house. We live here now.
  = This is the house where we live now.
- Alexandria is a nice city. I like to live there.
  = Alexandria is a nice city where I like to live.



عند وجود حرف جر يدل على المكان نستخدم which ولا نستخدم where

- Alexandria is a nice city. I like to live in it.
  = Alexandria is a nice city in which I like to live.
  = Alexandria is a nice city which I like to live in.



نستخدم which مع المكان عندما يأتى كمفعول (وهنا يأتى بعدها فعل).

- This is the house. It was built last year.
  = This is the house which was built last year.

when

تستخدم مع الزمن (الوقت).

- Summer is a hot season. We usually go to Alexandria in summer.
  = Summer is a hot season when we usually go to Alexandria.



- عند وجود حرف جر يدل على الزمان نستخدم which ولا نستخدم when.

- This is the time at which I like to have my lunch.

- نستخدم which مع الزمان إذا لم يكن هناك حدث أو نشاط يحدث فى ذلك الوقت.

- Summer is the time which is very hot.



Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The house, ... was built in 1889, was famous for its huge entrance.
a) where b) which c) that d) when

2 I met the doctor .... car was stolen last week.
a) who's b) that c) whose d) which

3 Mr Alaa .... is standing there is my neighbour from the old district.
a) which b) that c) whom d) with whom

4 My sister, ... is now living in Alexandria, has just had a baby.
a) whose b) who c) that d) where

5 I visited my uncle in the new factory .... he works in. (Longman)
a) where b) which d) who c) when

6 The manager, ... secretary is seriously ill, has to type the letters by himself.
a) who b) whose c) who's d) that

7 Cairo .... is Egypt's biggest city is full of historical places.
a) in which b) which c) where d) whose

8 The river .... runs through our city is the main source of our water.
a) where b) whose c) which d) what

9 The room .... I sleep is very nice. I really feel comfortable.
a) when b) where c) that d) which

10 Amany is an Egyptian Paralympic powerlifter .... has won a bronze medal. (Longman)
a) whom b) which c) who's d) who

11 There's a library nearby .... I like to spend my time reading.
a) that b) whom c) where d) whose

12 The dog barked نبح at the time .... it saw a stranger entering the house.
a) where b) when c) which d) that

13 The writer .... books have been translated into many languages, is a famous children's writer.
a) who b) whose c) whose d) whom

14 The boy, ... leg was broken, was taken to hospital.
a) who b) that c) whose d) where

15 The car for .... I paid a lot of money is very high-tech.
a) that b) who c) which d) whose

16 I like the manager .... kind and co-operative.
a) who b) who's c) whose d) that

17 This is the shop from .... I bought the new T-shirt. (Longman)
a) what b) that c) which d) where

18 The pen .... you are writing is my brother's.
a) where b) which c) whose d) with which

19 The man next to .... I sat on the plane was talking all the time.
a) who b) that c) where d) whom

20 I would like to live in a country .... there is plenty of sunshine.
a) when b) which c) where d) whose

21 The nurse, ... responsibility is to look after young children, has worked in the hospital for ten years.
a) who b) which c) whose d) who's

22 *Around the World in Eighty Days*, ... I read last week, is a very interesting novel. (Longman)
a) where b) which c) what d) that

23 The man from .... you bought this camera is waiting outside.
a) whose b) whom c) which d) who

24 Ahmed is the manager .... I send this email.
a) to whom b) from whose c) who d) that

25 I like the author .... plays are shown everywhere.
a) who b) whose c) who's d) which

26 I admire the teacher .... I borrowed this wonderful book.
a) who b) from who c) whom d) from whom

27 We phoned Ali .... house we had our lunch to thank him.
a) whose b) in whose c) where d) whom

28 I work for a supermarket chain .... head office is in Cairo.
a) who b) where c) whose d) which

29 Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is .... my father was born. (Longman)
a) where b) which c) what d) where's

30 The top drawer is the one .... I keep my odds and ends مقتنيات صغيرة.
a) what b) which c) when d) where

31 The waiter, ... is wearing a white shirt, helped us a lot.
a) who b) that c) whom d) which

32 The street .... we cleaned yesterday was so dirty.
a) where b) when c) what d) which

33 Countries .... imports are more than their exports have economic problems.
a) whose b) which c) that d) who's

Test yourself



Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 Karam Gaber won two Olympic .... in wrestling.
a) tablets b) medals c) metals d) models

2 Regular exercise will help strengthen your ....
a) muscles b) achievements c) competitions d) miracles

3 We respect Dr Magdi Yocoub because he .... his life to his country.
a) shared b) brought c) participated d) dedicated

4 The UN ran a .... against illiteracy all over the world.
a) campaign b) company c) attitude d) polio

5 My brother has been .... from assistant manager to the manager of the company.
a) lifted b) promoted c) retired d) competed

6 My friend had an accident and, as a result, he'll be in a .... for the rest of his life.
a) competition b) charity c) condition d) wheelchair

7 It is forbidden to fight with each other on a college ....
a) campus b) battle c) podcast d) issue

8 .... are needed at exits and entrances for wheelchair users.
a) Stairs b) Ladders c) Ramps d) Races

9 The issue of "unemployment" has been discussed a lot in the ....
a) charity b) laboratory c) condition d) media

10 The show was organised in order to raise money for ....
a) loyalty b) policy c) identity d) charity

11 The company sales improved greatly after a .... campaign.
a) determination b) polio c) marketing d) powerlifting

12 If we lost this match, we would be out of the ....
a) championship b) practice c) media d) complement

13 The conference was an important social .... to discuss our problems.
a) incident b) accident c) event d) happening

14 Life is not easy; the more you grow up, the more you face highs and ....
a) laws b) lows c) raws d) toes

15 My son was willing to make any .... in order to succeed.
a) campaigns b) podcasts c) sacrifices d) benefits

Language

16 Sadio Mané, ... was born in 1992, is a famous footballer.
a) whose b) that c) who d) whom

17 He has a beautiful son .... name is Osama.
a) whose b) which c) who's d) that

18 Alexandria, ... my mother was born, is in northern Egypt.
a) to which b) which c) that d) where

19 Naguib Mahfouz, ... books have been translated into many languages, is a remarkable writer.
a) who b) whose c) that d) whom

20 I want you to know the name of the actor .... played the role of King Lear.
a) which b) whose c) whom d) who

21 They have bought a machine .... prints names on badges.
a) that b) what c) who d) whose

22 Egypt is the land .... people of different cultures can live peacefully.
a) no word b) where c) when d) which

23 The room .... we decorated last year needs new decoration now.
a) where b) that c) in which d) when

24 I like the cat .... hair is soft.
a) who b) whom c) whose d) which

25 The man .... I met for lunch yesterday was an old friend of mine.
a) whom b) who's c) whose d) which

26 Isn't that the pharmacy .... you get your medicine?
a) which b) from which c) on which d) by which

27 My teacher, ... very clever, makes me study hard.
a) who b) that is c) whose d) who's

28 There is a florist's over there .... I usually get flowers for my wife.
a) whom b) where c) which d) that

29 March is the month .... my brother was born.
a) where b) which c) in which d) while

30 This is the mobile phone for .... I paid a lot of money.
a) that b) which c) what d) whose



A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

book (v) – ed	يحجز	sales (n)	مبيعات
bother (v) – ed	يضايق	soup (n)	حساء/شوربة
department (n)	قسم	staff (n)	هيئة العاملين
employee (n)	موظف	support (v) – ed	يدعم
hole (n)	ثقب	train (v) – ed *	يتدرب
loud (adj)	مرتفع (للصوت)	training (n)	تدريب
polite (adj)	مهذب	undercooked (adj)	نيء/غير مطهي جيدًا

Mohamed Salah **trains** hard to achieve his dreams. ★

Workbook Vocabulary

afraid (adj)	آسف/خائف	noisy (adj)	مزعج
apologise (v) – d	يعتذر	perhaps (adv)	ربما
interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية للحصول على وظيفة أو حوار صحفي	regards (n)	تحيات/تمنيات
manager (n)	مدير	repair (v)	يصلح

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My father dug a .... and planted a tree in our garden.
a) hell b) hill c) hall d) hole

2 The prize will go to the most .... student during the year.
a) training b) polite c) naughty d) comfortable

3 The clock was so .... that it kept me awake.
a) noisy b) noise c) calm d) nosy

4 Our TV has broken down, but someone is coming to .... it tomorrow.
a) reform b) reclaim c) reuse d) repair

5 All that you need is to .... hard to strengthen your muscles.
a) do b) gather c) mislead d) train

6 The ship sank and unfortunately all the .... were lost.
a) staff b) flight attendants c) crew d) flock

7 Everyone came to .... him in his campaign against taking drugs.
a) support b) let c) allow d) give

8 All companies should employ clever propagandists مسئولى دعاية to increase their ....
a) industries b) production c) products d) sales

9 If playing music .... you, I can stop it at any time you want.
a) interests b) neglects c) improves d) bothers

10 My son is mistaken. He has to .... to his friends.
a) continue b) request c) apologise d) thank

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

get home	يعود للمنزل	receive training	يتلقى تدريبًا
make a complaint	يقدم شكوى	sorry about	يأسف بشأن
make a noise	يصدر ضوضاء	take place	يحدث
make sure	يتأكد	turn the music down	يخفض صوت الموسيقى
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	reply to	يرد على
apply for	يتقدم إلى	respond to	يستجيب لـ
hear from	يسمع من	response to	رد على
interest in	اهتمام بـ	suitable for	مناسب لـ
qualified for	مؤهل لـ	afraid of	خائف من

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
employ*	يوظف	employer employee employment	صاحب العمل موظف توظيف	employable	قابل للتوظيف
repair	يصلح	repair	إصلاح	repairable	يمكن إصلاحه
support	يدعم	support supporter	دعم داعم/مشجع	supportive supporting	داعم
manage	يدير	manager management	مدير إدارة	manageable	يمكن التحكم فيه/سلس

- Employers employ hard-working employees.
- Few graduates are employable nowadays.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
support	يدعم	encourage/aid	neglect/ignore	يتجاهل
bother	يضايق	annoy/harass	please/satisfy	يسعد/يرضي
loud	مرتفع (الصوت)	noisy/blaring	calm/quiet	هادئ
polite	مهذب	mannerly/civilised	rude/impolite	وقح
repair	يصلح	fix/mend	break/damage	يكسر/يحطم

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This .... is very serious and strict with the workers.
   a) employer b) employee c) employment d) employ
2. The factory is very big and has about 1000 ....
   a) employees b) employers c) employs d) employment
3. You must improve your working skills to be ....
   a) employ b) employable c) employment d) employee
4. Mona is being .... as a flight attendant at the moment.
   a) trainee b) training c) trained d) train
5. Try not to bother your sisters and brothers. The word "bother" gives the same meaning as ....
   a) please b) annoy c) satisfy d) fix
6. This house is very small. It is not really suitable .... a large family.
   a) for b) to c) with d) at
7. I heard a loud bang and then saw black smoke. The opposite of "loud" is ....
   a) noisy b) damaged
   c) calm d) harass
8. The soup was very cold, so he wanted to .... a complaint to the restaurant manager.
   a) do b) have c) give d) make
9. We still haven't received a reply .... our offer.
   a) for b) to c) with d) from
10. If you don't speak German, you're not qualified .... being a secretary in our company.
   a) to b) with c) for d) at

Listening Text

Narrator One

Woman 1 : Excuse me; I'd like to make a complaint[1]. My soup is cold.

Woman 2 : I do apologise[2]. I'll make sure you get another soup which is hot.

Narrator Two

Old Man : I'm sorry to bother[3] you, but the music is really loud.

Man 1 : I'm sorry about that. I'll make sure my son turns the music down.

Narrator Three

Old Woman : I'd like to speak to the manager[4], please.

Woman 3 : I'm afraid she's out at the moment. Can I help you?

Old Woman : Yes, the problem is that my train is now two hours late. How am I going to get home this evening?

Woman 3 : I'm sorry about that. Perhaps we can book[5] a taxi for you.

(1) شكوى
(2) يعتذر
(3) يزعج
(4) مدير
(5) يحجز

Workbook Text

Narrator One

Lama : Excuse me, I'd like to make a complaint. My phone doesn't work.

Assistant: I do apologise. Perhaps we can repair[1] it.

Narrator Two

Hany : I'm sorry to bother you, but you're very tall. I can't see the play[2].

Man : I'm sorry about that. I'll change places with my wife. She is shorter.

Narrator Three

Heba : I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

Waitress : I'm afraid he's out at the moment. Can I help you?

Heba : Yes, the problem is that my meat is undercooked[3].

Waitress : I'm sorry about that. We will give you a new meal[4].

(1) يصلح
(2) مسرحية
(3) غير مطبوخ جيدًا
(4) وجبة

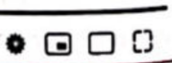
Video Script

To become an award-winning[1] Paralympian is an outstanding[2] achievement. These athletes battle[3] against physical[4] disabilities to prove[5] their strength[6], stamina[7] and determination[8].

Competing in the Paralympics often means a life dedicated[9] to training and often requires[10] a lot of sacrifices[11] to be successful. Even simple tasks can be difficult with a disability which is why they are so inspiring.

Many Paralympians inspire people to persevere[12] to achieve their dreams. They often dedicate their time to promoting[13] their sport and helping young people find opportunities to train.

(1) الحائز على جائزة
(2) رائع
(3) يكافح
(4) جسدي
(5) يثبت
(6) قوة
(7) القدرة على التحمل
(8) عزم/إرادة
(9) مخصصة
(10) تتطلب
(11) التضحيات
(12) يثابر/يصر
(13) تعزيز



Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1	interview	مقابلة شخصية (للوظيفة) / مقابلة (إذاعية/تليفزيونية/صحفية)	- I've got an interview for a job as a reporter. - My favourite player has an interview on TV tonight.
	appointment	موعد/ميعاد (ترتيب لرؤية شخص فى وقت معين)	I have an appointment to see the doctor next Saturday.
	conference	مؤتمر	The company is holding a conference to listen to the activists' demands.
	meeting	اجتماع	They organised meetings on a number of important political issues.
2	crew	طاقم السفينة أو الطائرة	None of the passengers or crew were/was injured.
	staff	هيئة عاملين/موظفين	We have 30 part-time members of staff.
3	hear from	يتلقى رسالة من	Have you heard from Ahmed?
	hear of	يسمع أخبارًا عن	She disappeared and was never heard of again.
4	colleague	زميل عمل	Friends and colleagues will remember him with affection.
	classmate	زميل دراسة	Osama has been my classmate for years. We are in the same class.
5	train	يتدرب	I asked my daughter to train to be an air hostess.
	training	تدريب	The workers of the company will do a training soon.
	trainer	مدرب	Captain Ali is my trainer.
	trainee	متدرب	There are a lot of trainee doctors in hospitals.

take place	يحدث	The story takes place in the nineteenth century.
6 take someone's place = replace	يحل محل شخص	I took my father's place in our shop while he was abroad.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When my brother started his new job, all his .... were friendly and helpful.
a) colleagues b) neighbours
c) classmates d) children

2 We need experienced .... for the new educational system.
a) trainees b) trainers
c) trains d) trainings

3 I think that most young men hear .... Mohammed Salah.
a) from b) by
c) off d) of

4 A terrible accident has taken .... in our street. Many people are injured.
a) part b) turns
c) a place d) place

5 In his latest TV ...., the famous singer talked about his health problems.
a) meeting b) conference
c) interview d) appointment



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Fouad sent me a .... letter thanking me for my invitation.
a) smart b) polite
c) rough d) nasty

2 He didn't watch out for the .... in the middle of the road, so he fell in it.
a) hall b) hill
c) hell d) hole

3 I don't like living in the city as it is always so .... and crowded.
a) quiet b) noisy
c) relaxing d) empty

4 I think that the English .... are the best at any school.
a) crew b) stuff
c) staff d) club

5 The team .... daily at the beginning of every season.
a) train b) trainer
c) trainee d) training

6 The team do hard .... at the beginning of every season.
a) train b) trainer
c) trainee d) training

7 Hana is .... of trying new things as she is very cautious and shy.
a) apologised b) pleased
c) afraid d) polite

8 My uncle is a professor at the .... of economics at Cairo University.
a) department b) equipment
c) development d) improvement

9 Mona likes working in ....; she takes a huge commission on every product she sells.
a) trainings b) sales
c) regards d) seals

10 If you hurt someone's feelings, you should ....
a) inspire b) support
c) apologise d) enjoy

11 All Egyptians .... Mohammed Salah as an Egyptian hero.
a) think b) regard
c) employ d) appoint

12 I made a bad mistake for which I have to .... (Longman)

a) recognise b) realise
c) memorise d) apologise

13 He told me that his father sent me his ....; he wishes to see me.

a) thinking b) regard
c) regards d) guards

14 I didn't like that meal as it was ....

a) well-cooked b) delicious
c) undercooked d) boring

15 Ghada is very ...., she always makes time to listen to her friends problems.

a) support b) supportive
c) supporting d) supported

16 The next election in my area will take .... on April 15th.

a) part b) turns
c) place d) a place

17 I have a/an .... at the governor's office at 9 tomorrow morning.

a) conference b) appointment
c) entertainment d) management

18 Good .... is the key to success in everything in life especially business.

a) department b) movement
c) management d) pavement

19 Parents try to .... their children as much as they can.

a) suspect b) bother
c) support d) punish

20 He .... a holiday for a fortnight in Paris. One week isn't enough to enjoy the city.

a) booked b) preserved
c) kept d) retrained

21 All the employees in this company are efficient and respectful to their ....

a) workers b) employers
c) employments d) enemies

22 I .... for the job of a secretary, but I haven't received a reply yet. (Longman)

a) complained b) applied
c) completed d) responded

23 Please, can you tell me where the accounts .... is?

a) pavement b) movement
c) department d) sector

24 Two members of our .... will accompany the students on a school trip.

a) stuff b) stiff
c) staff d) stuffed

25 The World Youth .... is held in Egypt every year.

a) meeting b) interview
c) conference d) appointment

26 I don't care if he doesn't come to the meeting. It doesn't .... me.

a) please b) matter
c) bother d) inspire

27 You can .... a complaint when you receive bad treatment. (Longman)

a) make b) sit
c) do d) cause

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

28 My father prefers to repair everything by himself. The antonyms of the verb "repair" are ....

a) fix b) damage c) reform
d) support e) break

29 The real leader is the one who supports their employees. The synonyms of the word "support" are "...............".

a) encourage b) neglect c) avoid
d) suspect e) aid

30 When my father .... home, I told him about my exam results.

a) reached to b) arrived at c) got
d) arrived e) looked

31 A robbery .... last week, and a huge amount of money was stolen from the bank.

a) took part b) took place c) took apart
d) occurred e) took the place

32 I'm sorry to .... you, but the music is really loud. (Longman)

a) bother b) believe c) annoy
d) relieve e) deceive

B Language





Important Notes

1 يمكن حذف who – which إذا جاء بعدها مبنى للمجهول ويستخدم P.P. فقط.

who/which + (be) + P.P. = P.P.

- The school which was built last year is wonderful.
  - The school built last year is wonderful.
- The boy who was punished yesterday got the worst marks.
  - The boy punished yesterday got the worst marks.

2 يمكن حذف who – which في حالة المبنى للمعلوم إذا كانت متبوعة بـ be + v.ing ونستخدم v.ing.

who/which + be + v.ing = v.ing

- The man who is wearing the black suit is my father.
  - The man wearing the black suit is my father.

3 يمكن حذف who – which إذا جاء بعدها فاعل وكانت تشير للمفعول مع بقاء الجملة كما هي.

who/which + فاعل + فعل = فاعل + فعل

- The match which/that I watched was great.
  - The match I watched was great.

4 من الممكن استخدام that محل who – which، ولكن لا يأتي قبلها حرف جر ولا يأتي قبلها (,).

- Ali, that is my friend, plays football well. (✗)
  Ali, who is my friend, plays football well. (✓)
- This is the mobile ~~for that~~ I paid a lot of money. (✗)
  This is the mobile for which I paid a lot of money. (✓)

5 عند وجود superlative صيغة التفضيل مع غير العاقل نستخدم that وليس which. أما مع العاقل فمن الممكن استخدام that – who.

- This is the most expensive present that I have ever got.
  Ali is the fastest student that/ who/ whom I have ever met.

6 مع الكلمات التالية نستخدم that (all – the only).

- I didn't get all that you asked me.

7 نستخدم what لتشير إلى مفعول ليس موجودًا في الجملة:

جملة + what + فعل

What + فعل , ...

What + فعل + فاعل , ...

- I didn't try to bring what the teacher asked me.
- He couldn't remember what we told him.
- What makes us happy is to see our children happy.
- What I have said must be done.

8 من الممكن أن تشير which إلى عبارة أو جملة كاملة قبلها.

- We got the full mark in our exams, which made us so happy.
- She went to the zoo with her brother, which was the best thing that happened to her.

9 يتم اختيار حرف الجر على حسب الفعل وما يتناسب معه من حروف الجر المختلفة:

- The problem about which we were talking had been settled.
  The restaurant to which I usually go is clean.

10 تستخدم which للمكان إذا لم يكن هناك حدث أو نشاط يحدث داخل المكان.

- Cairo, which is the capital of Egypt, is very crowded.
  Cairo, which I love most, is the capital of Egypt.

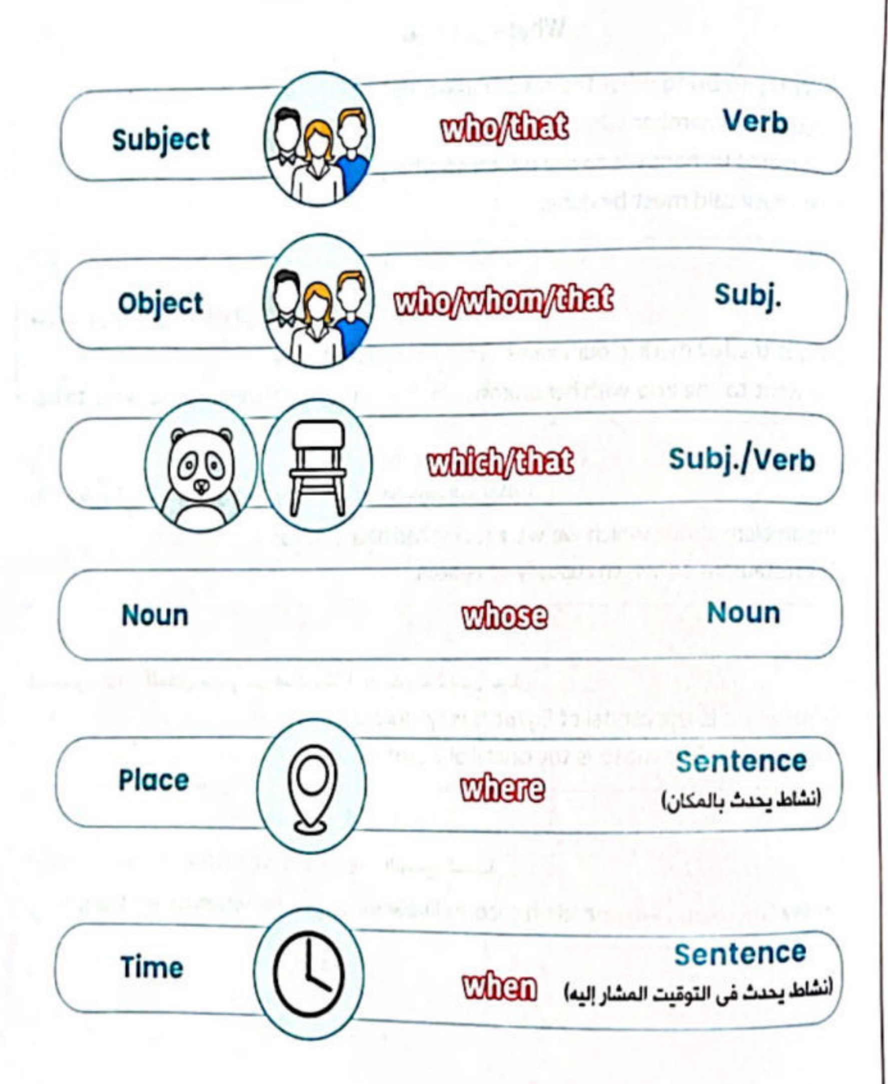
11 the reason why = the reason for which (لتوضيح السبب).

- I knew the reason why he left his job. = I knew the reason for which he left the job.





Relative clauses





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Waffaa is someone .... really honest and hard-working.
   a) who b) whose c) whom d) who's
2. Dr Aisha used to go with her father to meetings, ... she learned to read and write.
   a) in where b) about which c) to which d) at which
3. Have you seen .... I bought from London?
   a) what b) which c) that d) where
4. She asked me where I had been, ... I replied, "I can't tell you."
   a) about which b) in which c) to which d) at which
5. The writer wrote many books .... she argued for a more positive role for women.
   a) in which b) to which c) about which d) at which
6. "Oliver Twist", ... by Charles Dickens, was a great success. *(Longman)*
   a) writing b) written c) was written d) which written
7. They said something very cruel, ... I think they should apologise.
   a) which b) at which c) about which d) for which
8. The man .... that bus is my brother.
   a) that driving b) whom drives c) who driving d) driving
9. People .... stealing are imprisoned.
   a) who caught b) caught
   c) who catch d) who are catching
10. This is all .... I have done.
    a) which b) whose c) that d) where
11. The man .... on the train last week was an old classmate.
    a) whose meeting b) meeting c) who met d) I met
12. I can't achieve all .... I want now but maybe in the future.
    a) which b) whose c) when d) that
13. I can't remember .... you told me about Amin.
    a) who b) which c) whom d) what
14. The girl .... in the street is trying to catch the bus.
    a) runs b) is running c) who running d) running

15 I don't want to tell anyone .... has happened between us.
a) that's b) what c) who d) no word

16 I like the worker .... painting my flat now. (Longman)
a) who's b) whom c) whose d) who

17 Can you show me the road .... to the amusement park, please?
a) leading b) which leading c) leads d) lead

18 These are the fields .... we reclaimed to grow crops.
a) in which b) for which c) at which d) that

19 We bought a big saw, with .... we cut up all the wood. (Longman)
a) which b) whose c) that d) what

20 I can't remember the name of the person .... I got this information.
a) from where b) from which c) to whom d) from whom

21 This is the shelf .... I put my English books.
a) which b) who c) whom d) where

22 Friday is the only day .... I get up late.
a) no word b) which c) on when d) on which

23 The first one .... I met this morning was my father.
a) no word b) which c) where d) whose

24 Students .... late will not be allowed to enter.
a) arrived b) arriving c) arrive d) to arrive

25 My uncle is the person .... I received a letter last week.
a) who b) from whom c) to whom d) whom

26 Making my family happy and relaxed is all .... I want and work for.
a) which b) when c) where d) that

27 .... you told me can't be believed.
a) Who b) Where c) What d) That

28 The woman .... a green blouse is my sister.
a) wears b) wearing c) worn d) wear

29 Vegetables .... a lot of water don't freeze well.
a) which containing b) contain
c) containing d) are containing

30 The big projects .... out all over Egypt will increase the national income.
a) are carried b) carry c) carrying d) carried

31 Nour could finish the book .... the day before.
a) I'd lent her b) that I'd lent her it
c) which I'd lent it her d) what I lent her

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 There was a/an .... with the prime minister on television last night.
a) appointment b) meeting c) interview d) complaint

2 The main hospital in the city has a .... of around 150 people.
a) stiff b) staff c) stuff d) crew

3 My uncle is a supervisor in the accounts .... in a big company.
a) service b) department c) office d) apartment

4 I usually like to start with .... before having my main meal.
a) soap b) soul c) pool d) soup

5 Please, send my .... to your parents. I hope they are well.
a) regrets b) regards c) challenges d) apologises

6 The rice was ...., so Mum took it to the oven again.
a) cooked b) undercooked c) well-cooked d) overcooked

7 Zaki Abdulfattah was the .... of the Egyptian National Team's goal keepers in 2011.
a) training b) trainer c) trained d) training

8 There is a .... in the roof, which needs to be repaired.
a) hole b) hall c) half d) hoof

9 We should receive training in how to .... the disabled.
a) support b) supply c) sort d) export

10 I want to make a ...., please. This shirt shrank when I washed it.
a) campaign b) complement c) complaint d) requirement

11 Is it too late to .... the damage we have done to our planet?
a) prepare b) form c) pair d) repair

12 The street was so .... that it kept me awake all night yesterday.
a) calm b) noisy c) helpful d) annoyed

13 Turn the music ...., please. I have a headache.
a) up b) on c) down d) of

14 If I feel ...., I cry and stop thinking.
a) afraid b) hungry c) happy d) confident

15 He was exhausted, so he looked .... to the end of his shift.
a) for b) forward c) at d) with

16 I always like to buy cotton .... Egypt.
a) that from b) from c) is from d) which from

17 I've just read an article .... the writer suggests solutions to most of our problems.
a) of which b) with which c) in which d) in that

18 She didn't expect .... her friend said about her.
a) when b) what c) where d) who

19 This is the picture .... with natural colours.
a) we painted it b) which we painted it
c) painting d) painted

20 He says he's busy, ... he really means he doesn't want to go out this evening.
a) to whose b) by whom c) for that d) by which

21 I could not decide .... to wear for the wedding party.
a) which b) what c) that d) who

22 Wael did something wrong .... which he said sorry.
a) to b) in c) at d) about

23 I spoke to the worker .... my office.
a) cleaning b) cleaned c) cleans d) who cleaning

24 Did you like the room .... we stayed in?
a) where b) when c) no word d) whose

25 I have been reading about famous women .... I have found interesting.
a) which b) who c) whose d) when

26 The party .... by Ahmed gave us much pleasure.
a) organising b) organised
c) was organised d) which organised

27 She looked in the mirror to see .... the new dress was like.
a) what b) whose c) how d) which

28 I cannot remember the reason .... he left.
a) that b) for c) why d) when

29 I didn't get the job .... because I didn't have the required qualifications.
a) which I applied for it b) I applied for it
c) I applied for d) that I applied for it

30 Mona's father .... goes swimming every day.
a) , that is 60, b) who is 60 c) , who is 60, d) that he is 60





للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



• **How to write a professional email:**

From : The email address of the applicant
To : The email address of the company
Subject : Applying for a job

Dear Sir or Madam,

Introduction

I am writing and sending this email after seeing your advertisement for a vacant job in your company. I am interested in working for your company.

Subject

(Give some details about yourself – your qualifications – your qualities – if you have a disability or not – asking some questions about the company)

Ending the email

I look forward to hearing from you soon.
Best regards.
(Your name)

Model Essay

The person you admire and respect

Introduction

Everyone has an example to follow in their life, someone that they admire and respect. Someone that has a great influence on them. As for me, the person I admire most is neither a world famous nor a millionaire. I admire my great brother.

Main body

Hard work was and still part of his life, but still he smiles all the time. His life can be a good example of a person who has suffered a lot, but has never asked for help or complained. He always advises me not to feel helpless in life and try to live my life in a way that people can remember me with pride and respect.

My brother worked in many places and travelled to many countries to earn his living. Now, he works for himself as he has his own factory in which he makes clothes. He has a wonderful family whom I love very much. He has really helped me a lot to study and have my own private life.

Conclusion

Finally, I can say that my brother is a good example for me and for his family. And we all admire and respect him.



Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It is advisable to know how to invest money in these days of inflation[1]. Some people invest their money by keeping it in a bank. Left in a bank, it will keep its value[2], regardless of the interest rate[3]. Some buy and sell on the stock market[4] to invest their money, but only rich or brave people dare to do so. It's no good putting it in a tin under the bed.

It seems that one of the best ways to protect your savings and even increase your wealth is to buy beautiful objects from the past such as Persian rugs, furniture, silver and above all clocks. We are slaves of time today. The planet Earth is ruled by the clock, without which man cannot do anything.

Whether or not we are slaves of time today depends on our culture and personality. Many years ago, kings kept special slaves to tell the time. Certain men were clever at measuring the time of day according to the beating of their own hearts.

Again, men learned to use the shadow cast by the sun and invented the sundial[5] and later on water clocks. Large wall clocks were invented and hung in public places for all to see. They became cheap as they were mass-produced. Watches were probably first invented in Italy.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Investing in an antique clock is advisable ....
   - a) to be ruled by time
   - b) to be one of the human timekeepers
   - c) to make a future profit
   - d) to be put in public places for all to see
2. A suitable title for the passage is ".................".
   - a) Spending money
   - b) Investing money
   - c) Banking
   - d) Stock Market
3. The pronoun "it" refers to ....
   - a) the market
   - b) money
   - c) investment
   - d) drug
4. Mass production .... prices.
   - a) increases
   - b) reduces
   - c) keeps high
   - d) always keeps unchanged

(1) التضخم (2) قيمة (3) معدل الفائدة (4) البورصة (5) ساعة شمسية

5. .... to put money in a tin under the bed.
   - a) It is advisable
   - b) It is not recommended
   - c) It is gainful
   - d) It is nice but not recommended
6. What is the antonym of the word "slave"?
   - a) Follower.
   - b) Fan.
   - c) Employer.
   - d) Master.
7. What does the writer advise people to do with their money?
   - a) To put it in the bank.
   - b) Not to invest it.
   - c) Not to sell and buy on the Stock Market.
   - d) To put it in a tin under the bed.

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. There are many things to be said in favour of technological advancement. It undoubtedly makes people's lives easier.
   - a) هناك عدة أشياء من الممكن ألا تقال فى صالح التقدم التكنولوجى فهو بلا شك يجعل حياة الناس أسهل.
   - b) هناك عدة أشياء من الممكن أن تعاد فى صالح التطور التكنولوجى فهو بلا شك يجعل حياة الناس أسهل.
   - c) أشياء عديدة من الممكن أن تقال ضد التقدم التكنولوجى فهو بلا شك يجعل حياة الناس أسهل.
   - d) هناك عدة أشياء من الممكن أن تقال فى صالح التقدم التكنولوجى فهو بلا شك يجعل حياة الناس أسهل.
2. Good citizens are those who devote themselves, their time and money to the welfare of their families.
   - a) إن المواطنين الصالحين هم هؤلاء الذين يكرسون أنفسهم وأوقاتهم وأموالهم لرفاهية عائلاتهم.
   - b) إن المواطنين الطالحين هم هؤلاء الذين يكرسون أنفسهم وأوقاتهم وأموالهم لرفاهية عائلاتهم.
   - c) إن المواطنين الصالحين هم هؤلاء الذين يكرسون أنفسهم وأوقاتهم وأموالهم لإرهاق عائلاتهم.
   - d) إن المواطنين الجيدين هم هؤلاء الذين يدخرون أنفسهم وأوقاتهم وأموالهم لرفاهية عائلاتهم.
3. Do you think that punishment stops children from making mistakes? Many experts believe punishment is a negative way to bring up children.
   - a) يعتقد البعض أن العقاب يمنع الأطفال من ارتكاب الأخطاء. الكثير من الخبراء يعتقدون أن العقاب طريقة إيجابية لتربية الأطفال.
   - b) هل تعتقد أن العقاب يمنع الأطفال من ارتكاب الأخطاء؟ الكثير من الخبراء يعتقدون أن العقاب طريقة سلبية لتربية الأطفال.
   - c) هل تعتقد أن العقاب يمنع الأطفال من ارتكاب الأخطاء؟ الكثير من الخبراء يعتقدون أن العقاب طريقة سلبية لإحضار الأطفال.
   - d) تعتقد أن العقاب يمنع الأطفال من ارتكاب الأخطاء؟ الكثير من السياسيين يعتقدون أن العقاب طريقة سلبية لتربية الأطفال.
4. In the past, women were completely deprived of practising their rights, especially political rights.
   - a) لم تكن المرأة مسموحًا لها تمامًا بممارسة أى حقوق خاصة السياسية الصحيحة.
   - b) فى الماضى كانت المرأة محرومة تمامًا من ممارسة أى حقوق خاصة الحقوق الاقتصادية.
   - c) فى الماضى كانت المرأة محرومة تمامًا من ممارسة أى حقوق خاصة الحقوق السياسية.
   - d) كانت ولا زالت المرأة محرومة جزئيا من ممارسة أى حقوق خاصة الحقوق السياسية.

5 Our armed forces stand against any outside or inside threat so that we can live with a feeling of security and safety.

a) تقف قواتنا المسلحة ضد أى تهديد خارجى أو داخلى لكى تتمكن من العيش ونحن لا نشعر بالأمن والأمان.
b) تقف قواتنا المسلحة ضد أى تهديد خارجى أو داخلى لكى تتمكن من العيش ونحن نشعر بالأمن والأمان.
c) تقف قواتنا المسلحة مع أى تهديد من الناس لكى لا تتمكن من العيش ونحن نشعر بالأمن والأمان.
d) إن قواتنا المسلحة تقف ضد أى مساعدة خارجية أو داخلية لكى تتمكن من العيش ونحن نشعر بالعزة والفخر.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 يعتمد الكثير من الكتاب فى كتاباتهم على القصص الواقعية ويعتقدون أنها تكسبنا المزيد من الخبرات فى الحياة.

a) A lot of writers depend in non-fiction novels in their writings, and they think that they give us more experiences in life.
b) In their writings, a lot of writers depend on non-fiction novels and they think that they give us more experiences in life.
c) In their writings, a lot of writers depend on fictional novels and they think that they give us more experiences in life.
d) In their writings, enough writers depend on non-fiction novels and they think that they give us more experiments in life.

7 لقد تزايدت معدلات الجريمة فى الآونة الأخيرة بشكل ملحوظ فى مجتمعنا وهى ظاهرة خطيرة يجب علينا التعاون لإيجاد حل جذرى لها.

a) Criminal rates have recently risen remarkably in our society. It is a dangerous phenomenon which we must cooperate to find a radical solution.
b) Crime rates have recently decreased remarkably in our society. It is a dangerous phenomena to which we must cooperate to find a radical solution.
c) Crime rates has recently risen remarkably in our society. It is a dangerous phenomenon to which we must to cooperate to find a radical solution.
d) Crime rates have recently risen remarkably in our society. It is a dangerous phenomenon to which we must cooperate to find a radical solution.

8 علينا أن نفتخر بلاعبينا ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة والذين حققوا إنجازات رياضية عظيمة لم يستطع تحقيقها اللاعبون الأصحاء.

a) We should be proud of our athletes with special needs who made great sports achievements that able-bodied athletes couldn't make.
b) We must be proud of our athletes with special need who made great sports achievements that normal athletes couldn't make.
c) We should be pride of our athletes with special needs who did great sports achievements that able-bodied athletes couldn't make.
d) We should be proud of our paralympians with special needs who made great sport achievements that strong athletes couldn't make.

9 إن منتدى الشباب الذى يتم عقده كل عام فى مصر فرصة عظيمة للشباب من مختلف دول العالم كى يتبادلوا الخبرات والثقافات.

a) Youth Forum what is held every year in Egypt is a great chance for youth for all over the continent to exchange experience and cultures.
b) Youth Forum that helds every year in Egypt is a great chance for youth from all over the world to change experiences and cultures.
c) Youth Forum that is stood every year in Egypt is a greet chance for youth from all over the world to exchange experience and lectures.
d) Youth Forum that is held every year in Egypt is a great chance for youth from all over the world to exchange experiences and cultures.

10 كلنا نحمل جوهرة ثمينة داخل الجمجمة والتى تعتبر أكثر أهمية من أى جهاز حاسب آلى. إنه المخ الذى بدونه لا يستطيع الإنسان أن يفكر أو يتحرك.

a) What a precious gem inside the skill which is important than any computer; it is the brain without which man can't move or think.
b) We have a precious gem inside the skull which is more important than any computer; it is the brain without which man can't move or think.
c) We have a precious gem inside the skull which is more important than any computer; it is the mind without that the man can't work or think.
d) What a precious gem inside the skull whom is more important any computer; it is the brain without which man can't move or think.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Someone has achieved success despite many difficulties.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 Hey! Your voice is too loud. The synonyms of the word "loud" are ....
a) noisy b) calm c) blaring d) rude e) low

2 Don't bother your brother while he is studying. The antonyms of the word "bother" are ....
a) neglect b) break c) please d) satisfy e) damage

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3 Women dream of .... full equality in the workplace.
a) achieving b) campaigning c) competing d) improving

4 The company has launched an advertising .... in the hope of attracting new customers.
a) competition b) race c) campaign d) charity

5 Students should find a role model to .... them.
a) hinder b) mean c) inspire d) lift

6 My uncle has joined the .... of a well-known hotel in Cairo.
a) stiff b) staff c) stuff d) crew

7 Taking drugs has always had a serious .... on people.
a) affection b) effect c) perfection d) conflict

8 Our team hope to improve their performance before the new ....
a) championship b) battle c) fight d) dispute

9 Environmental .... accused the factories owners of dumping waste into the Nile.
a) competitors b) fighters c) communicators d) activists

10 He is a famous architect .... designs win a lot of awards.
a) whose b) who c) which d) whom

11 The restaurant .... we are having dinner offers a great service.
a) which b) for which c) where d) that

12 Edison, ... invented the light bulb, was born in London.
a) whom b) who c) that d) when

13 They built a new school in the village .... I had lived.
a) who b) which c) where d) when

14 London, ... is the capital of the UK, has the best palace in the world.
a) what b) where c) that d) which

15 The man .... he had lunch yesterday is my boss.
a) who b) whose c) with whom d) whom

16 I left the company .... for a long time.
a) which I worked b) where I worked c) I was working d) that I worked

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Teenagers today live in a very competitive world. It is more important than ever to succeed at school if you hope to have a chance in the job market afterwards. It's no wonder that many young people worry about letting down their parents, their peers and themselves. In trying to please everyone they take on too many tasks until it becomes harder and harder to balance homework assignments, parties, sports activities and friends. The result is that young people suffer from stress. There are different ways of dealing with stress. Everyone knows that caffeine, whether it is in the form of coffee or soft drinks, keeps you awake and alert. But caffeine is a drug which can become addictive. In the end, like other drugs, caffeine only leads to more stress. A better way to deal with stress is to exercise. Research has proved that physical exercise is a good release for stress, because it increases certain chemicals in the brain which calm you down. Enough sleep is also an important way of avoiding stress and of staying healthy and full of energy. Another way to avoid stress is by managing your time effectively. It is better to do a few tasks really well, than lots of tasks badly. Know your limits and try not to take on too much. Finally, if it all gets beyond your control, don't panic or get hysterical.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The best title for this passage is ....
a) Teen Activity b) Teen Stress c) Teen Hobby d) Teen Culture

18 Having a lot of burdens results in ....
a) happiness b) success c) stability d) stress

19 One of the following DOESN'T help in relieving stress. It is ....
a) exercise b) enough sleep
c) time management d) caffeine

20 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
a) coffee b) sport c) stress d) caffeine

21 The writer advises the teens to do things ....
a) within control b) out of control c) out of reach d) beyond control

22 The writer is for the idea of the .... of work.
a) amount b) quantity c) quality d) mass

23 To avoid stress, we should ....
a) have enough sleep b) do lots of tasks even badly
c) get hysterical d) both b & c

24 Choose the correct English translation:

للرياضة دور كبير فى محاربة وحل المشكلات الاجتماعية مثل الجريمة والعنف والإدمان وأيضًا تساعد الأطفال والشباب على تكوين شخصية مؤثرة.

a) Sport have a great role in fighting and solving social problems as crime, violence and addiction. Also, it helps children and youth to have an effective character.
b) Sports has a great role in fighting and solving social problems such as criminal, violence and addiction. Also, it help children and youth to have an effective character.
c) Sports have a great rule in fighting and solving social problems such as crime, violence and addiction. Also, it helps children and youth to have an accepted character.
d) Sport has a great role in fighting and solving social problems such as crime, violence and addiction. Also, it helps children and youth to have an effective character.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

The films, which are produced every year, can change the community easily, but it is very important to focus on positive changes and constructive criticism.

a) إن الأفلام التى يتم إخراجها كل عام من الممكن أن تتبادل المجتمع بسهولة ولكن من المهم أن نركز على التغييرات الإيجابية والنقد البناء.
b) إن الأفلام التى يتم إنتاجها كل عام من الممكن أن تغير المجتمع بسهولة ولكن من المهم أن نركز على التغييرات الإيجابية والنقد البناء.
c) إن الأفلام التى يتم إنتاجها كل عام لا يمكن أن تغير المجتمع بسهولة ولكن من المهم أن نركز على التغييرات الإيجابية والنقد البناء.
d) إن الأفلام التى يتم إنتاجها كل عام من الممكن أن تغير العالم بسهولة ولكن من المهم أن نركز على التغييرات الإيجابية والنقد البناء.

26 Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Silver think he was right when he came to an agreement with the doctor?
2. Why do you think Silver made George guard the fort all night alone?
3. Prove that Dr Livesy was an honest doctor, whoever he dealt with.

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"How society can help the disabled"

....
....
....
....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 294

Assess your progress	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
★★★★★	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Hard Work

Unit 12

Objectives



Reading : A summary of *Silas Marner*
Writing : A novel review; a short story
Listening : A conversation about how people work
Speaking : Explaining mysteries
Language : Modal verbs of possibility: *can't, might, must*
Critical thinking : Project – research and present a famous mystery



Part (1)
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

disappear (v) - ed	يختفى	mystery (n)	لغز/غموض
engaged (adj)	مرتبط/ة - مخطوب/ة	solve (v) – d	يحل
guilty (adj)*	مذنب/مجرم	weaver (n)	نساج (صانع النسيج)

The worker is guilty because he stole some tools.

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

alone (adv) (adj)	بمفرده	local people (n)	السكان المحليون
artificial intelligence (n)	الذكاء الاصطناعى	look (v) – ed	يبدو
call (v) – ed	يسمى/ينادى	machinery (n)	الميكنة/الآلات
condition (n)	ظرف/شرط/ حالة	manual labour (n)	عمل يدوى
cottage (n)	كوخ/بيت ريفى	offer (v) – ed (n)	يعرض/عرض
crazy (adj)	مجنون/غريب	operate (v) – d	يُشغل
customer (n)	زبون	ordinary (adj)	عادى
decide (v) – d	يقرر	prove (v) – d	يثبت/يبرهن
earlier (adv)	فيما مضى	realise (v) – d	يدرك
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	sick (adj)	مريض
empty (adj)	فارغ/(حياة) بلا هدف	steal (v)	يسرق
fireplace (n)	المدفأة	surprised (adj)	مندهش
instead (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	unpleasant (adj)	غير سار

Workbook Vocabulary

pale (adj)	شاحب/باهت	thin (adj)	نحيف
skill (n)	مهارة	trust (v) – ed (n)	يثق/ثقة
special (adj)	خاص		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was thoughtful of my friend to .... his seat on the bus to an old lady.
   a) stick b) offer c) afford d) support
2. My sister lives in a pretty village with little wonderful ....
   a) villas b) palaces c) castles d) cottages
3. The news I got was .... and made me very upset.
   a) pleasant b) unpleasant c) interested d) amazing
4. Men usually do hard .... labour which means they work with their hands.
   a) manual b) automatic c) machine-made d) computerised
5. After our talk, he moved away and .... into a crowd of people.
   a) smashed b) disappeared c) turned d) appeared
6. The car I bought is 10 years old, but it is still in very good ....
   a) mystery b) portion c) omission d) condition
7. When I got home, I .... that I had left my keys at the office.
   a) understood b) recognised c) surprised d) realised
8. The job of the .... nearly disappeared because machines now do all the work.
   a) interviewers b) teachers c) weavers d) traders
9. .... intelligence means the study of how to make computers do intelligent things that people can do, such as thinking and making decisions.
   a) Normal b) Natural c) Man-made d) Artificial
10. Mr Othman felt .... when he shouted at his secretary in public.
    a) empty b) guilty c) engaged d) alone

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

angry with	غاضب من	important to	هام لـ
(be) engaged to	مخطوب/ة لـ	live lonely lives	يعيش حياة وحيدة
(be) married to	متزوج/ة من	new to the village	جديد بالنسبة للقرية
earn money	يكسب مالًا	solve the mystery	يحل لغزًا
feel sorry for	يشعر بالأسف لـ	take care of	يعتني بـ
come from	يأتي من	join in	يشارك/ينضم
compared to	بالمقارنة بـ	remember about	يتذكر بشأن
disappear from	يختفي من	return to	يعود إلى
forget about	ينسى بشأن	sorry about	آسف بشأن
friendly to	ودود لـ	decide on	يختار بعد تفكير
guilty of	مذنب بشأن	the early years	السنوات الأولى
hide from	يخفي من		

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
disappear يختفي	disappearance اختفاء	disappeared مختفٍ
————————	guilt ذنب guiltiness ذنب	guilty مذنب
mystify يحير/يسبب غموضًا	mystery لغز/غموض	mysterious غامض
prove يثبت	proof دليل/برهان	proven مثبت
realise يدرك	realist شخص واقعي reality واقع	real حقيقي realistic واقعي
solve* يحل	solution حل	solvable قابل للحل
trust يثق	trust ثقة	trusting يثق في الآخرين بسهولة trusted موثوق فيه
weave ينسج/يصنع النسيج	weaving صناعة النسيج weaver نساج (صانع النسيج)	————————

- Don't escape, and solve your problems.
- There must be a solution for any problem.
- All problems on earth are solvable.



Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
disappear	يختفي	vanish/conceal	appear/come out يظهر
earlier	فيما مضى	former/previous	later/next فيما بعد
empty	فارغ	blank/unfilled/vacant	filled/full مملوء
guilty	مذنب	convicted/accusable	guiltless/innocent غير مذنب
pale	شاحب/باهت	faint/faded	bright/glowing لامع/متوهج
prove	يثبت	confirm/determine	disprove/deny ينكر/ينفي
special	خاص	particular/specific/private	general/public عام
surprised	مندهش	astonished/shocked	unsurprised/aware غير مندهش
unpleasant	غير سار	nasty/undesirable	pleasant/cheerful سار

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. As I was new .... the village, I got lost while searching for a supermarket.
   a) of b) with c) to d) by
2. You must organise your time and work .... to succeed.
   a) efficient b) inefficiently c) efficiently d) efficiency
3. Have you decided .... a date for the wedding?
   a) on b) for c) to d) that
4. My father was a very cheerful person. The synonym of "cheerful" is "..............".
   a) unpleasant b) nasty c) pleasant d) awful
5. When I got home, I found a .... message stuck to the front door.
   a) mystery b) mastery c) mysterious d) mist
6. It is better for anyone to forget .... their problems to be able to work well.
   a) about b) with c) from d) at
7. It's really hard for a mother to bring up children ....
   a) lonely b) loneliness c) a lone d) alone
8. I wish he'd stop trying to prove himself all the time. The antonym of "prove" is "..................".
   a) deny b) determine c) confirm d) appear
9. The police are still investigating the .... of the rich man's disappearance.
   a) mysterious b) mystify c) mystery d) master
10. I .... for the people who tried so hard but still didn't win.
    a) feel happy b) make sorry c) make happy d) feel sorry

Reading Text (1)

Silas Marner



Silas Marner is a weaver[1] who lives in the village of Raveloe in England. The other people in the village aren't very friendly to Silas because he's new to the village and he lives alone[2]. Fifteen years earlier, Silas had been engaged to be married to a girl called Sarah. One day, while Silas was taking care[3] of a friend who was sick, a bag of money disappeared[4] from under the friend's bed. A man called William Dane finds the empty[5] bag and Silas's friends decide that he is guilty[6] of stealing the money. Later, William marries Sarah instead, and Silas decides to move to the village of Raveloe. The only thing he cares about is his work as a weaver. All Silas wants to do is work as hard as he can to earn as much money as he can. The richest man in Raveloe, Squire Cass, has two sons: Dunstan and Godfrey. The two sons have their own problems which they hide[7] from their father and they always want to have more money. One night, a bag of gold is stolen[8] from Silas's house and the whole village joins in[9] to look for it. The local people feel sorry for him and are more friendly to him. Silas is angry and wants to solve the mystery[10].

(1) صانع النسيج
(2) وحيد
(3) يرعى
(4) اختفى
(5) فارغة
(6) مذنب
(7) يخفي
(8) سرقت
(9) شاركت
(10) لغز

Reading Text (2)



One evening, Silas returns to his cottage[1] and finds a small girl sleeping near the fireplace[2]. The girl is cold and hungry. Silas thinks something must have happened to her parents. They might have had an accident. He decides to look after her. He calls[3] her Eppie. The other people in the village are surprised[4], but they think that Silas can't be a bad person because he wants to look after[5] the girl. They also help him. Silas is now happier. He realises that his new daughter is more important to him than gold. When Eppie is eighteen, Silas's gold is found and returned to him. It was Dunstan who took the money all those years ago because he did not want to ask his father for money. Godfrey is sorry about what his brother did and thinks Silas must be angry with him. He and his wife offer[6] to look after Eppie. However, Eppie wants to stay with Silas. Silas decides to return to his old village with Eppie. He wants to prove[7] that he wasn't guilty of stealing all those years earlier. When he arrives, he finds that everything has changed and he can't find anyone that he used to know. Silas feels that he can now forget about this unpleasant[8] part of his history and he returns happily to Raveloe.

(1) كوخ
(2) مدفأة
(3) يسمي
(4) مندهش
(5) يعتني بـ
(6) يعرض
(7) يثبت
(8) غير سار



Listening Text

Woman : Hello, husband[1]! Come and sit down, and I will get you some water.

Man : Look! It's eight o'clock at night and Silas Marner is still[2] working!

Woman : He must have got another new customer[3].

Man : Yes, that must be why he's working so late. I don't understand why he always works so much.

Woman : He might have lost[4] a lot of money while he was living in the north.

Man : But all his customers are so happy with the things he makes. He can't have lost money. I've heard that he could stop working now if he wanted to — he's got bags and bags full of gold coins[5].

Woman : Really? I just don't really like weavers[6]. I think weaving is a very strange[7] job to have. Why can't he work as a farmer or a fisherman instead of[8] working with these crazy[9] new machines?

Man : I know what you mean. What is happening to the world today? Soon there won't be any jobs for people like us who don't want anything to do with these machines.

(1) زوج
(2) مازال
(3) زبون
(4) خسر
(5) عملات ذهبية
(6) صناع النسيج
(7) غريب
(8) بدلاً من
(9) غريب جداً

Workbook Text

The story of *Silas Marner* begins in the English countryside in the early years of the nineteenth century. There were only a few weavers in the countryside[1], and they usually looked pale[2] and thin compared to[3] the people who worked in the fields. These people didn't trust[4] anyone who was clever and they didn't like anyone who had seen the world outside their small village. Weavers had a special skill[5] and they usually came from large towns, so they often lived lonely lives.

(1) الريف
(2) شاحب
(3) مقارنة بـ
(4) يثق
(5) مهارة

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1	decide to + inf. يقرر	He decided to sleep early before the exam.
	decide on + (noun) يقرر/يحدد (بعد تفكير)	She decided on her goal in life.
	decide that + جملة يقرر أن	He decided that his wife will attend the party.
2	steal + (something) يسرق (شيئًا)	She stole my money last week.
	rob + (place) يسرق (مكانًا)	He robbed the bank with his gang yesterday.
	rob + (someone) + of + (something) يسرق شيئًا من (شخص)	The thief robbed Ali of his wallet two days ago.
3	only a few + (countable noun اسم يعد) فقط القليل من	There are only a few students in the class today.
	only a little + (uncountable noun اسم لا يعد) فقط القليل من	There is only a little sugar in the kitchen.
4	cloth قماش (اسم لا يعد ويعامل معاملة المفرد)	My father bought a suit made of grey cloth.
	clothes ملابس (اسم جمع دائمًا وليس له مفرد ويعامل معاملة الجمع)	Don't forget to bring some clean clothes with you.
	clothe (v) يلبس/يكسو	My children are fed and clothed by their mother.
	clothed (adj) مرتدٍ/لابس	I was fully clothed when they arrived.
	clothing (n) ملابس/ثياب (لا يعد)	You will need waterproof clothing.
	a cloth قطعة من القماش لغرض معين (اسم يعد)	I want a cloth to dust the table.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The gang planned to .... the exchange الصرافة, but the guards stopped them.
   a) steal b) rob
   c) lift d) take
2. There's milk on the floor over there; could you get a piece of .... to mop يمسح it up?
   a) cloth b) clothing
   c) clothe d) close
3. The gang .... the bank and .... all the money last week.
   a) tied/stole b) robbed/stole
   c) stole/robbed d) missed/took
4. Ali met only .... friends before going to school yesterday.
   a) few b) little
   c) a few d) a little
5. My wife has decided .... change the decoration of our room.
   a) on b) that
   c) to d) for
6. In rainy places, people may need waterproof .... to protect them.
   a) cloth b) clothing
   c) clothe d) clothings
7. I couldn't return home as I had only .... money to take a taxi or a bus.
   a) a few b) few
   c) a little d) much
8. A thief .... my son of his mobile while walking alone in a dark street.
   a) robbed b) stole
   c) kidnapped d) took



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The police could arrest the thieves who .... the jewellery.
   a) borrowed b) stole c) robbed d) owned
2. Rahma has to work hard to .... that she really deserves the job.
   a) improve b) trust c) prove d) think
3. I'm a regular .... and you should give me a big discount.
   a) customer b) doctor c) mystery d) weaver
4. As my children have left home, my life seems ....
   a) comedy b) a lone c) empty d) lone
5. I .... to carry the old lady's shopping bags for her.
   a) offered b) proved c) stole d) denied
6. I felt really .... about not helping my friend when he asked me.
   a) innocent b) guilty c) suspected d) relaxed
7. Twenty years after the event, the old man's death has been a ....
   a) play b) mystery c) quiz d) miracle
8. My uncle is a skilled .... in the linen factory; he makes wonderful clothes. *(Longman)*
   a) baker b) barber c) weaver d) waver
9. The police are looking for the two girls who .... while walking home from school.
   a) appeared b) missed c) disappeared d) lost
10. I was sitting on the balcony when I saw a .... man entering our block of flats.
    a) hidden b) surprised c) mysterious d) concealed
11. I couldn't understand how to .... the new washing machine.
    a) regulate b) cooperate c) operate d) stimulate
12. I couldn't go to the parents' meeting, so my wife went ....
    a) instead b) instead of c) unless d) instill
13. Makram could .... any maths problem مسألة when he was at school.
    a) control b) solve c) fix d) engage
14. Hala .... to be an honest girl when she delivered the bag of jewellery she had found to the police. *(Longman)*
    a) moved b) approved c) removed d) proved
15. Rania is .... to a respected young man. They are going to get married soon.
    a) married b) occupied c) engaged d) paired

16 Mai is .... to a respected young man. They have two children now.
a) married b) occupied c) engaged d) paired

17 It was very cold, so we sat in front of the .... until late in the evening.
a) fire engine b) fire alarm c) fireplace d) fire blanket

18 The boys decided to rent bikes, and Adam .... in the activity.
a) came b) proved c) avoided d) joined

19 Under what .... do you think plants grow best?
a) conditions b) customers c) skills d) options

20 Although the students are finding the beginning of the course difficult, their .... in their teacher is stopping them from giving up.
a) mystery b) weaver c) truth d) trust

21 Karma was angry after her .... conversation with her sister Haneen.
a) unpleasant b) cheerful c) pleasant d) surprised

22 One of the tips that I learnt to be an efficient leader is to be friendly .... all the team.
a) at b) of c) in d) to

23 The tunnel was dug with the aid of heavy ....
a) conditions b) tools c) instruments d) machinery

24 In this shop, you can only take two items of .... into the changing room.
a) cloth b) clothe c) clothing d) clothed

25 The police are looking for a suspect who .... a corner shop yesterday.
a) stole b) robbed c) took d) hacked

26 The robber attacked the shopkeeper and .... the store of jewellery. *(Longman)*
a) robbed b) provided c) stole d) restored

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

27 Half the classroom was empty because of the bad weather. The synonyms of the word "empty" are "..........".
a) blank b) faint c) pleasant d) vacant e) full

28 As my son went out without having his breakfast, his face looked pale. The synonyms of the word "pale" are "..........".
a) dark b) faint c) faded d) coloured e) full

29 Mothers always do great work to .... their children.
a) take care b) look for c) care for d) take care of e) take after

30 To .... enough money for your family, you must work hard and be creative.
a) earn b) win c) beat d) do e) make



Modals of Deduction الاستنتاج

(must – can't – might)

must + inf. بالتأكيد (تعبر عن استنتاج مؤكد فى المضارع والمستقبل)

- تستخدم عندما نكون متأكدين من شيء ما.

- He has an expensive car. He must be rich.
- This watch is made of gold; it must be expensive.
- He is a policeman. He must carry a gun.

must + have + P.P. بالتأكيد (تعبر عن استنتاج مؤكد فى الماضى)

- تستخدم عندما نكون متأكدين من شيء ما فى الماضى.

- He never comes late. Something must have delayed him.
- He ate a lot. He must have been hungry.
- They are all wearing coats. It must have been cold when they took this photo.

لاحظ

- من الممكن أن يكون زمن الجملة مضارعًا ولكن الاستنتاج فى الماضى والعكس كما يلى:

- Hala got full marks in the exam. She must be clever.
- He is a successful professor. He must have been a clever student.

can't + inf. استحالة (تعبر عن استنتاج مؤكد منفى فى المضارع والمستقبل)

- تستخدم عندما نكون متأكدين من عدم حدوث شيء ما فى المضارع.

- He has an expensive car. He can't be poor.
- He can't be cold. He is sweating يعرق.
- You have met Nader once. You can't know him very well.

can't + have + P.P. استحالة (تعبر عن استنتاج مؤكد منفى فى الماضى)

- تستخدم عندما نكون متأكدين من عدم حدوث شيء ما فى الماضى.

- It can't have been winter in this photo. They are wearing summer clothes.
- Marwan is still abroad. You can't have seen him at the party yesterday.
- They can't have had lunch. Their food is still in the fridge.



لاحظ

. تستخدم must + inf./must have + P.P./can't + inf./can't have + P.P. ... مع التعبيرات التالية:

I'm sure/I'm certain/I think/I believe/Certainly

ويتم التفرقة بينها على حسب المعنى.

- He is rich. I'm certain he is happy. = He is rich. He must be happy.
- She was absent yesterday. I am sure she was ill.
  = She was absent yesterday. She must have been ill.
- He can't buy this car. I am sure he isn't rich.
  = He can't buy this car. He can't be rich.
- She is tired. I think she didn't have enough sleep.
  = She is tired. She can't have had enough sleep.

may/might/could + inf. (ربما - من المحتمل) تعبر عن استنتاج محتمل فى المضارع والمستقبل.

. تستخدم عندما نعتقد أن شيئًا ما ممكن أو محتمل، ولكن لسنا متأكدين فى زمن المضارع.

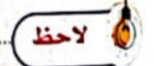
- They may/might be at home, but we aren't sure.
- It is possible that Ahmed is tired. = Ahmed may/might be tired.

Mahmoud has already finished the exam. It could be easy.

may/might/could + have + P.P. (ربما - من المحتمل) تعبر عن استنتاج محتمل فى الماضى.

- تستخدم عندما نعتقد أن شيئًا ما كان ممكن أو محتمل، ولكن لسنا متأكدين فى زمن الماضى.

- He may/might have been tired. Perhaps, he was tired.
- It is possible that Ahmed was tired. = Ahmed may/might have been tired.
- Sally is still crying. She could have heard nasty words from her father.



لاحظ

- تستخدم may + inf./may have + P.P./might + inf./might have + P.P. ... مع التعبيرات التالية:

Not (very) sure/(very) uncertain/It is possible/I don't think/I don't believe

- I'm uncertain about what you said. It might be true.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm not sure who is ringing the doorbell. It .... be Adel.
   a) must b) can't c) mustn't d) might
2. She .... ill. I am not sure.
   a) must have been b) must be
   c) might be d) can't have been
3. She always gets the full mark in her exams. She .... clever.
   a) must have been b) must be
   c) can't be d) had to be
4. Amira was at the doctor's yesterday. She .... ill.
   a) must be b) must have been c) can't be d) can't have been
5. He has been travelling all day. He .... be very tired.
   a) ought b) needn't c) must d) can't
6. A: I don't know where my school bag is, mum.
   B: It's not here! You .... have left it on the train.
   a) may b) can't c) should d) mustn't
7. I don't know where Mr Adel is; he .... be busy working. I have no idea. *(Longman)*
   a) can't b) must c) might d) mustn't
8. Mona was in a very difficult situation. It .... have been easy for her.
   a) may b) can't c) must d) might
9. The thieves .... in through the window; the flat is on the 14th floor!
   a) can't have got b) must get
   c) should have got d) must have got
10. My son was given a reward at school. He .... have worked hard.
    a) must b) can't c) should d) mustn't
11. The businessman .... have accepted all the terms we suggested; he has signed the contract. *(Longman)*
    a) must b) can't c) might d) shouldn't
12. My friend's car is not here. He .... out.
    a) must go b) must have gone
    c) should have gone d) can't have gone

13 A: Who's knocking on the door?
B: It .... my friend Ali. I asked him to come.
a) must be b) can't be
c) must have been d) might have been

14 You .... have seen Dr Ahmed here yesterday. He is still in Paris.
a) may b) must c) can't d) mustn't

15 Shorouk is not here yet. She .... be stuck in traffic; who knows? (Longman)
a) might b) should c) can't d) must

16 Salma came to school late. She .... caught the school bus.
a) must have b) may have c) can't have d) might have

17 Our neighbours are breaking one of their windows. They .... their keys.
a) must have lost b) can't have lost
c) mightn't have lost d) may have lost

18 My friend is a doctor. He .... clever at school.
a) must have been b) can't have been
c) might have been d) may have been

19 When I knocked on the door, there was no answer. They .... out.
a) must be b) must have been c) can't be d) can't have been

20 The thief .... away after he robbed the bank. The police are still searching.
a) must run b) must have run c) mustn't have run d) can't run

21 All the customers like that shop assistant, so he .... be a good man. (Longman)
a) must b) shouldn't c) can't d) might

22 The streets are all muddy. It .... heavily yesterday night.
a) can't have rained b) must rain
c) must have rained d) would have rained

23 There is water all over the floor. Someone .... the tap on.
a) must forget b) can't forget
c) must have forgotten d) can't have forgotten

24 He .... up in Egypt. He doesn't speak Arabic.
a) must grow b) can't grow
c) must have grown d) can't have grown

25 No one knows where the tourist comes from; he .... be Italian. (Longman)
a) must b) shouldn't c) could d) can't

26 I have just seen Omar at school now. He .... be at home.
a) can't b) mustn't c) can d) must

27 Mona couldn't answer the questions. They .... have been difficult for her.
a) can't b) must c) should d) mustn't

28 I can't find my new pair of shoes. They .... I have no idea.
a) might have been stolen b) might have stolen
c) must have been stolen d) can't have been stolen

29 The door of the cell زنزانة was broken, so, the prisoners .... through it.
a) must escape b) must have escaped
c) can't escape d) can't have escaped

30 I .... written down the number incorrectly. I've just called a hospital, not the restaurant.
a) don't have b) can't have c) must have d) may have

31 Fatma walked past me without speaking. Surely, she .... me.
a) might have seen b) must have seen
c) can't have seen d) should have seen

32 Surely, he .... his experiment. He's only been in the laboratory for ten minutes.
a) can't finish b) must finish
c) can't have finished d) must have finished

33 She must have misunderstood the lesson. This means that ....
a) I'm sure that she understood the lesson
b) I'm not sure that she misunderstood the lesson
c) I'm sure that she misunderstood the lesson
d) I'm not sure that she understood the lesson

34 "I might have left the air conditioner on. Please, can you check?" This means that ....
a) it's possible that I have left the air conditioner on
b) I don't think that I have left the air conditioner on
c) I feel sure that I have left the air conditioner on
d) I feel sure that I have left the air conditioner off

35 "It can't be easy for him to look after three kids on his own." This means that ....
a) we think this is easy for him, but we're not sure
b) we feel sure that it is easy for him to do so
c) we feel sure that it isn't hard for him to do so
d) we feel sure that it isn't easy for him to do so

Test yourself



Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 He shouldn't get .... treatment just because his father is the school director.
a) expensive b) guilty c) unpleasant d) special

2 The cause of the accident is still a complete .... for all of us.
a) mess b) mysterious c) mystery d) guilty

3 I think .... labour is more tiring than office work.
a) automatic b) manual c) annual d) manufacture

4 He is really ...., he did many bad things against the law.
a) guilt b) guiltless c) guilty d) guiltiness

5 Mr Ramadan sets the schedules .... All the employees are satisfied.
a) efficiently b) nastily c) currently d) hardly

6 The cooler was .... so we couldn't drink.
a) missing b) empty c) guilty d) lonely

7 She decided to .... a small carpet on her own.
a) invent b) create c) work d) weave

8 I saw a/an .... man in the street. He was behaving in a very strange way.
a) crazy b) dead c) pale d) ordinary

9 The police could .... the mystery of the crime with difficulty.
a) solve b) pull c) call d) clean

10 The .... of one of my neighbours is still a mystery. No one has an idea where he is.
a) disappear b) disappearance c) appearance d) appear

11 She admitted .... the money from the safe of the company.
a) giving b) knowing c) robbing d) stealing

12 My sister had such a/an .... experience at the park that she refused to go there again.
a) attractive b) horrified c) pleasant d) unpleasant

13 Everyone was friendly .... us, so it was an amazing journey.
a) for b) from c) to d) at

14 I saw the moon for a while before it .... in the dark clouds.
a) emptied b) lost c) disappeared d) weaved

15 It was very difficult for me to .... that she was lying.
a) improve b) compare c) prove d) provide

Language

16 That person over there .... a doctor. He's only eighteen.
a) must be b) may be c) should be d) can't be

17 It is Ali's house, not Ahmed's as you say. You .... mistaken.
a) must be b) might be c) can't be d) mustn't be

18 My father .... be angry with me. He doesn't talk to me as usual.
a) mustn't b) might c) need d) can't

19 A: Do you think he is annoyed?
B: I am not sure, he .... be.
a) must b) can't c) should d) might

20 Mona .... have telephoned me as I was in all day and didn't hear the phone ringing.
a) must b) may c) might d) can't

21 The train .... late. Look at all the people waiting on the platform.
a) must have been b) must be
c) can't have been d) can't be

22 I cannot find my handbag. Someone .... it by mistake.
a) must take b) cannot take
c) must have taken d) cannot have taken

23 I am sure I lost one of my school books. I .... have dropped it somewhere.
a) must b) can't c) shall d) will

24 Surely, they .... have brought these heavy pieces of metal by boat. The boat would have sunk.
a) can't b) must c) may d) ought to

25 Winning the first prize last year .... Kareem very proud.
a) will have made b) must have made
c) can't make d) mustn't make

26 He can hardly walk. He .... be very ill.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) should

27 You .... the door. It was open when I got home.
a) can lock b) can't have locked
c) can have locked d) can't lock

28 She didn't see her brother this morning. He .... the flat very early.
a) must have left b) can't have left c) must leave d) can't leave

29 These statues .... by ordinary people. They were too heavy.
a) must move b) can't have moved
c) mustn't have been moved d) can't have been moved

30 It .... very windy during the night. There are too many leaves on the ground.
a) must be b) must have been c) can't be d) can't have been



Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

characters (n)	شخصيات	plot (n)	حبكة الرواية
pace (n)	سرعة/ خطوة	theme (n)	موضوع الكتاب/القصة
page-turner (n)*	كتاب شيق		

★ *Treasure Island* novel is an interesting page-turner.

Vocabulary on Reading Texts

abandoned (adj)	مهجور	happiness (n)	سعادة
adopt (v) – ed	يتبنى	interesting (adj)	شيق
check (v) – ed	يفحص/يتأكد	legend (n)	أسطورة
close (adj)	قريب	puzzle (n)	لغز
community (n)	مجتمع	recommend (v) – ed	يوصى بـ
crime (n)	جريمة	share (v) – d	يشارك
divide (v) – d	يُقسم	show (v)	يظهر
ensure (v) – d	يتأكد/يضمن	stones (n)	أحجار
equally (adv)	بشكل متساو	surprise (n)	مفاجأة
explain (v) – ed	يشرح/يفسر	warehouse (n)	مستودع

Workbook Vocabulary

archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار	coast (n)	ساحل
around (prep)	حوْلَ	deep (adj)	عميق
BCE = Before Common Era	قبل الميلاد	describe (v) – d	يصف
bear (n)	دب	distant (adj)	بعيد
believe (v) – d	يصدق/يؤمن/يعتقد	funny (adj)	مضحك
bury (v) (y) – buried	يدفن	lake (n)	بحيرة
laugh (v) – ed	يضحك	shape (n)	شكل
lie (v)	يقع	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
monster (n)	وحش	treasure (n)	كنز
pharaohs (n)	فراعنة	unusual (adj)	غير عادى
pirate (n)	قرصان		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We all consider bullying a sort of .... that needs punishing.
   a) technology b) pride c) legend d) crime
2. There is only one room available, so we have to .... it.
   a) divide b) share c) provide d) bear
3. It is .... to eat salted fish with green onions in Sham El Nessim.
   a) modern b) traditional c) tradition d) economical
4. I like reading about the .... of Robin Hood.
   a) plot b) theme c) legend d) puzzle
5. The murderer was described as a/an .... as he killed many people.
   a) pirate b) monster c) treasure d) omission
6. My great grandparents lived in this house years ago, but now it's ....
   a) lost b) abandoned
   c) crowded d) cleaned
7. The expression ".............." means a book that is very exciting.
   a) page-follower b) page-burner
   c) page-turner d) page-corner
8. The factory owns a big .... in which the products are stored.
   a) ward b) cottage c) warehouse d) club
9. We discovered that our grandmother .... her gold necklace in the house garden.
   a) recommended b) closed
   c) adopted d) buried
10. The workers found hidden .... in the old yard of the house.
    a) pleasure b) measure c) pressure d) treasure

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a lonely man	رجل وحيد	in the north of	في الشمال
all the gold was gone	ضاع كل الذهب	mystery stories	قصص الغموض
bring them back into	يعود بهم إلى	take photos of	يلتقط صورًا لـ
drive across	يقود عبْر	work better as	يعمل أفضل كـ
feel like	يشعر وكأنه	know about	يعرف عن
go back to	يعود إلى	live on	يعيش في
agree to	يوافق على	recommend ... to	يوصي/يرشح ... لـ
belong to	ينتمي إلى	sense of community	الشعور بالإنتماء للمجتمع
full of	مملوء بـ	return to	يعود إلى
happen to	يحدث لـ	take ... to	يأخذ ... إلى
go wrong	يخطئ/يتعطل		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
abandon	يهجر	abandonment	هجر/ترك	abandoned	مهجور
bury	يدفن	burial	دفن	buried	مدفون
close	يقرب	closeness	قرب	close	قريب
deepen	يعمق	depth	عمق	deep	عميق
distance	يبعد	distance	مسافة	distant	بعيد
equalise*	يعدل/يعادل	equality	مساواة	equal	مساوٍ
laugh	يضحك	laugh/laughter	ضحك	laughable	مضحك

- A good referee should **equalise** between the two teams.
- Women always ask for **equality**.
- All people are **equal** in civilised countries.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
abandoned	مهجور	deserted/discarded	inhabited/occupied	مسكون
close	قريب	nearby/near	distant/far/remote	بعيد
equally	بشكل متساوٍ	evenly/fairly	unequally/unfairly	بشكل غير متساوٍ
happiness	سعادة	delight/pleasure	displeasure/sadness	سخط/حزن
interesting	شيق	amusing/entertaining	boring/unattractive	ممل
deep	عميق	rooted/buried	shallow/superficial	ضحل/سطحي
distant	بعيد	far/remote	near/nearby/close	قريب
funny	مضحك	humorous/comical	serious/tragic	جاد/مأسوي
traditional	تقليدي	conventional/usual	non-traditional/ modern	غير تقليدي/ حديث
unusual	غير عادي	extraordinary/exceptional	ordinary/common	عادي

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was an interesting movie and we had fun. The antonym of the word "interesting" is "..................".
   a) amusing b) comfortable c) boring d) excited
2. This is the house which belonged .... my grandfather when I was young.
   a) from b) at c) with d) to
3. Some Indians do not .... the dead. They burn them instead.
   a) burial b) buried c) burring d) bury
4. Egypt is located in the .... Africa.
   a) northern b) north c) north of d) northern of
5. We don't like the traditional way of weaving. The synonym of the word "traditional" is ....
   a) unusual b) up-to-date c) modern d) conventional
6. He lives in a house that is very close to mine. The opposite of "close" in this sentence is "..................".
   a) near b) distant c) nearby d) open

7 The dead man's money was divided .... between his children.

a) equal b) equality c) equalism d) equally

8 The stream was not ...., so we were able to walk across it.

a) deep b) deepen c) depth d) shallow

9 It is .... for most people to visit each other more often on feast days.

a) unexpected b) deep c) traditional d) strange

10 I couldn't put anything in the bag as it was full .... books.

a) in b) with c) of d) off

Reading Text

Ismail

I had to read *Silas Marner* when I was at school and I didn't enjoy it very much then. However, I've just finished reading it again and I liked it a lot more. It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Eliot's other books. The pace[1] was quite fast and the plot[2] is full of surprises[3].

I couldn't stop reading because I really wanted to know what was going to happen to these wonderful characters[4]. I would recommend[5] this book to anyone who enjoys mystery[6] stories.

Nadia

This is a very interesting story of a sad and lonely man who finds happiness when he adopts[7] a girl. It isn't a page-turner[8], but I liked the way Eliot used the theme[9] of community[10]. She shows us how some people, like Silas, can feel like they don't belong[11] to their community but events[12] can bring them back into it. However, I think the novel is too long. The story of *Silas Marner* might have worked better as a short story rather than a novel.

What happened to the gold?

Last week, three people, John, Jake and Jane, found gold in an abandoned[13] warehouse[14]. They agreed to share[15] it equally[16]. Jane found some boxes and put all the gold in one. John checked to see if anyone else was close[17]. John and Jake took it to a house to divide[18] it. Jane went to ensure[19] they had bags for the gold. When she arrived, she opened the box, but it was full of stones and all the gold was gone. What happened to the gold?

(1) سرعة/إيقاع الأحداث
(2) الحبكة
(3) مفاجآت
(4) شخصيات
(5) يوصى
(6) غموض
(7) يتبنى
(8) كتاب شيق
(9) موضوع
(10) مجتمع
(11) ينتمى
(12) أحداث
(13) مهجور
(14) مستودع
(15) يشارك
(16) بالتساوى
(17) قريب
(18) يقسم
(19) يتأكد من

Workbook Text

Boy: This book is about people living on a farm near a small village in the mountains. The theme[1] is how life in a village is changing in the modern world. The pace is very slow and it is quite sad because many traditional[2] parts of their life will never be the same again. But it is beautiful to read and I enjoyed it.

Girl: This book is very funny! It is about a family who drive across the country for a holiday. They have to return their car to the airport before the end of the day. The plot is full of things that go wrong! The car is stopped by a bear[3], and they meet a lot of strange[4] people. My favourite character[5] is a police officer who is not very good at his job! I laughed[6] a lot and would recommend this book.

Cleopatra VII

Cleopatra VII died in around 30 BCE. The famous writer, Plutarch, described[7] the beautiful place where she was buried[8]. However, although archaeologists[9] have found much older pharaohs[10], nobody knows where Cleopatra lies[11] today. In 2010, a famous archaeologist called Zahi Hawass found many things from Cleopatra's time at Taposiris Magna, near Alexandria, but he did not find Cleopatra.

Oak Island

Oak Island is on the east coast[12] of Canada. People believe[13] that a pirate[14] called Captain William Kidd stole some treasure[15] and buried it on the island in the seventeenth century. He wanted to go back to the island to get his treasure, but he never returned. Since that time, hundreds of people have tried to find the treasure, without success.

Loch Ness

Loch Ness is a very deep[16] lake in the north of Scotland. Since the seventh century, people have seen a large, strange animal that lives in the deep water of the lake. They call it the Loch Ness Monster[17]. Some people have even taken photos of a distant[18] shape that could be the monster. However, scientists have studied the lake and they have not found anything unusual[19]. But people still believe that something lives in the lake.

(1) موضوع الرواية
(2) تقليدى
(3) دب
(4) غريب
(5) شخصية
(6) ضحك
(7) وصف
(8) دُفنت
(9) علماء الآثار
(10) الفراعنة
(11) تقع
(12) الساحل الشرقى
(13) يعتقد
(14) قرصان
(15) كنز
(16) عميق
(17) وحش
(18) بعيد
(19) غير عادى

Video Script

One hundred and sixty years ago, hard[1] work would have looked very different for an ordinary person[2]. Manual labour[3] could be very difficult; the machinery[4] was often heavy and dangerous to operate[5], and working conditions[6] were not good.	(1) شاق
Today, hard work can look very different. We are able to work more efficiently[7] with the help of modern machinery and technology. Modern workplaces[8] are even using Artificial Intelligence[9], so that computers can do much more work for us. The workplace is changing, and technology will continue to be part of the workplace of the future.	(2) شخص عادي
The question is: are we still working hard or are computers doing all the work for us?	(3) العمل اليدوي
	(4) الألات
	(5) يشغل
	(6) ظروف العمل
	(7) بكفاءة
	(8) أماكن العمل
	(9) الذكاء الاصطناعي

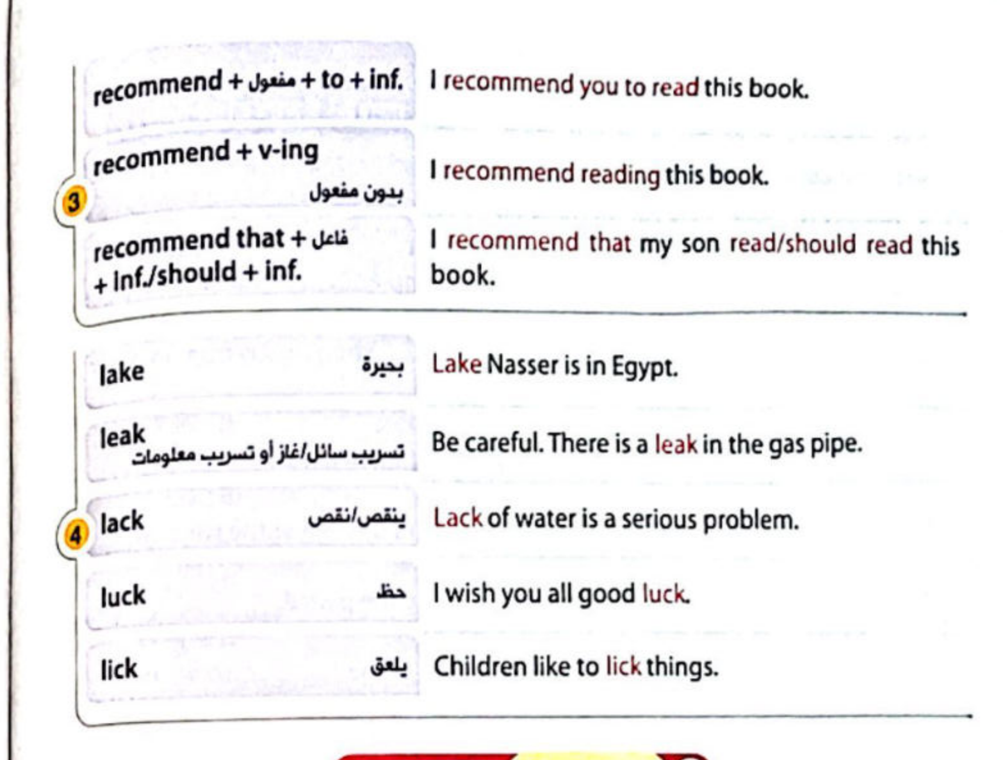
0:00

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

	Word	Meaning	Example
1	lay – laid – laid	يضع (شيئًا)/تضع البيض/يجهز	- He laid his hand on my shoulder. - The flies lay their eggs on uncovered food. - John was laying the table for lunch.
	lie – lay – lain	ينام/يرقد/يقع	Don't lie in the sun for too long as it is very harmful.
	lie – lied – lied	يكذب	She lied to her father about her exam results.

	Word	Meaning	Example
2	coast	ساحل	Alexandria is located on the north coast of Egypt.
	shore	شاطئ البحر (البحيرة)	I saw some boats on the shore of the sea.
	beach	البلاج (الجزء الرملي عند حافة البحر)	We sat on the beach and ate ice cream.
	bank	ضفة النهر أو القناة	Trees grow along the bank of rivers.



	Structure	Example
3	recommend + مفعول + to + inf.	I recommend you to read this book.
	recommend + v-ing بدون مفعول	I recommend reading this book.
	recommend that + فاعل + inf./should + inf.	I recommend that my son read/should read this book.

	Word	Meaning	Example
4	lake	بحيرة	Lake Nasser is in Egypt.
	leak	تسريب سائل/غاز أو تسريب معلومات	Be careful. There is a leak in the gas pipe.
	lack	ينقص/نقص	Lack of water is a serious problem.
	luck	حظ	I wish you all good luck.
	lick	يلعق	Children like to lick things.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. At nine o'clock, the .... was already crowded with people.
   a) coast b) sea c) limit d) beach
2. We could see a boat about a mile from the .... of the sea.
   a) shore b) bank c) border d) limit
3. We spent our holiday in a town which .... halfway between Rome and Florence.
   a) lies b) lays c) stays d) locates
4. The teacher recommends that my brother .... early.
   a) to come b) came c) comes d) come
5. If someone suspects a gas ...., they must phone emergency number at once.
   a) lake b) luck c) lick d) leak



Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Bravery is traditionally part of the Arab ....
a) pace b) theme c) plot d) character

2 We all admire the film because it has a very simple .... suitable for all ages.
a) plot b) character c) community d) incident

3 If you need bread or milk, ask about a/an .... shop to buy from in order not to be late.
a) attached b) far c) remote d) close

4 The robbers .... the stolen money among themselves.
a) divided b) shaved c) put d) paid

5 The naughty boy picked up a small .... and threw it at the window.
a) rock b) plot c) stone d) cliff

6 The cause of the fire has remained a .... to the police.
a) crime b) plot c) puzzle d) legend

7 At six o'clock, there were a few people sitting at the ...., so we had a nice time.
a) coast b) bank c) edge d) beach

8 The old lady gave a cry when she realised that her purse was ....
a) closed b) gone c) adopted d) shown

9 The most frightening situation for me was when I saw a real .... in front of me.
a) gear b) beard c) bear d) cat

10 I usually try to .... that the door is locked before I leave the house.
a) ignore b) ensure c) predict d) share

11 The abbreviation ".................." refers to the period before the birth of Christ.
a) BEC b) BCE c) CEB d) BCR

12 I get very angry when things in my work .... wrong.
a) go b) make c) have d) get

13 The inheritance was shared .... among the three sisters.
a) greatly b) equally c) beautifully d) clearly

14 Could you please slow down? I can't keep .... with you.
a) pace b) piece c) peace d) pack

15 A group of .... discovered a large tomb in the the desert near Giza last week.
a) chemists b) archaeologists c) psychologists d) doctors

16 The goods have been stored in a/ an .... for months as there was a problem with transportation.
a) household b) warehouse c) equal house d) market

17 The incredible "Hulk" is a character in a film that turns from a scientist into a huge ....
a) pirate b) pharaoh c) archaeologist d) monster

18 The old beggar .... her bag of money under her cottage to hide it.
a) buried b) lied c) checked d) puzzled

19 Apparently, it is a very funny novel but it has an underlying ....
a) pace b) legend c) theme d) checker

20 The news of his disappearance was .... to the press.
a) lucked b) leaked c) licked d) lacked

21 Most teachers recommend that students .... regularly all the year round.
a) revising b) to revise c) revise d) revises

22 The house had been .... for several years before they decided to demolish it.
a) deepened b) abandoned c) buried d) abandonment

23 Tamer will always .... the day he joined the faculty he liked most. (Longman)
a) forget b) remind c) forge d) remember

24 I like my neighbourhood as there is a strong sense of ....
a) society b) community c) minority d) gathering

25 Salah is a sports .... in England and also in his homeland, Egypt.
a) legend b) theme c) plot d) page-turner

26 A literary .... is the main idea or the moral a writer explores in a novel, short story, or other literary work. (Longman)
a) pace b) plot c) setting d) theme

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

27 Happiness is more important than money. The antonyms of the word "happiness" are "..................".
a) delight b) displeasure c) boredom d) deepness e) sadness

28 Do you remember any funny stories about work? The synonyms of the word "funny" are "..................".
a) comical b) humorous c) tragic d) shallow e) serious

29 Aswan is in .... Egypt.
a) the southern b) the south of c) southern of d) southern e) south

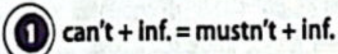
30 As he lives .... to me, I usually visit him.
a) next b) far c) remote d) distant e) close

31 The Ministry of Education is trying to change the traditional ways of teaching. .... is an antonym for "traditional". (Longman)
a) Ancient b) Untraditional c) Strange d) Recognised e) Up-to-date

B Language

Modal Verbs الأفعال الناقصة

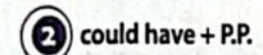
Extra Points



1 can't + inf. = mustn't + inf.

من الممكن استخدام can't للتعبير عن أنه ليس من الممكن القيام بالفعل (It is impossible)

- You can't drive the car, you haven't got the licence yet.
- = You mustn't drive the car, you haven't got the licence yet.



2 could have + P.P.

من الممكن استخدام could have + P.P. للتعبير عن فعل كان من الممكن حدوثه في الماضي ولم يتم.

- I travelled by train, but I could have travelled by car.

3 couldn't have + P.P. = can't have + P.P.

تستخدم couldn't have + P.P. للتعبير عن فعل كان من المستحيل حدوثه في الماضي ولم يتم.

- He couldn't have passed the exam, even if he had studied harder. It's a really difficult exam.

4 should (ought to) have + P.P.

تستخدم should have + P.P. للتعبير عن شيء كان ينبغي حدوثه في الماضي ولم يتم.

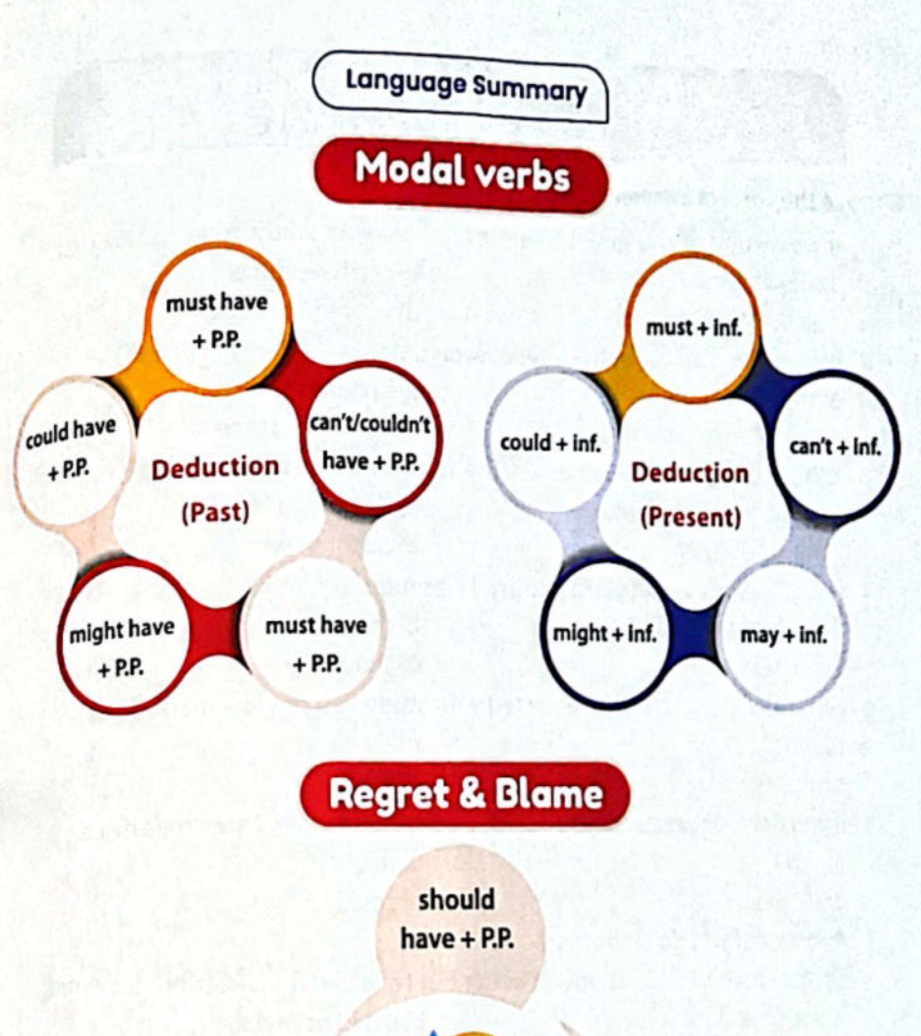
- You got a very bad mark. You should have studied hard.
  (This means that you didn't study hard and it was wrong not to do so.)
- I'm sorry! I ought to have come on time.
  (This means that I didn't come on time and it was wrong not to do so.)

5 shouldn't (oughtn't to) have + P.P.

تستخدم shouldn't have + P.P. للتعبير عن شيء لم يكن ينبغي حدوثه في الماضي ولكن تم.

- He ate bad food and he became ill. He shouldn't have eaten it.
  (This means that he ate the bad food and it was wrong to do so.)
- You shouldn't have arrived late for your exam.
  (This means that he arrived late and it was wrong to do so.)

Language Summary





Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was wrong of you to sleep before finishing your study. You .... that.
   a) shouldn't do b) can have done
   c) shouldn't have done d) ought to have done
2. I'm sorry! I .... for the interview on time.
   a) shouldn't come b) ought to have come
   c) must come d) can't have come
3. You .... late for your lesson. The teacher will be angry.
   a) shouldn't have been b) should not be
   c) must have been d) ought to be
4. I .... angry with you. I'm sorry, I was rude.
   a) ought not to have been b) must be
   c) can't be d) should be
5. You really .... have neglected your study. You got low marks.
   a) can't b) shouldn't
   c) mustn't d) mightn't
6. If you don't understand, you .... ask your teacher. That's my advice.
   a) can b) might
   c) should d) could
7. A: How did you do in the test?
   B: Not so well. I .... much better but I misread the directions for writing.
   a) will have done b) could have done
   c) must have done d) may have done
8. You .... take photographs near a military area.
   a) can't b) should
   c) needn't d) ought to
9. It's unusual to see Mr Omar taking a bus. His car .... broken down.
   a) couldn't be b) maybe
   c) must be d) might
10. Because we were young, we .... to the swimming pool alone.
    a) couldn't go b) must have gone
    c) can't have gone d) could have gone

11. You .... have seen my dad in the club; he is still away on business. *(Longman)*
    a) must b) should
    c) couldn't d) might
12. Drivers .... park their cars here. If they do this, they will be fined.
    a) needn't b) should
    c) can't d) must
13. We spent the weekend on the farm, but we .... it in Cairo.
    a) couldn't have spent b) can't have spent
    c) could have spent d) must have spent
14. I didn't know you were going to the hospital yesterday. You .... me.
    a) should have told b) must have told
    c) may have told d) might have told
15. Don't take a risk like this again, we .... have been hurt.
    a) must b) can't
    c) could d) should
16. Lamiaa .... that necklace. I am sure she had no money at that time. *(Longman)*
    a) might have bought b) can't buy
    c) can't have bought d) might buy
17. Mona .... all the food alone. She is ill now.
    a) must eat b) can't have eaten
    c) should have eaten d) shouldn't have eaten
18. Ali fell off his bike this morning. He hurt his head. He .... more careful.
    a) must have been b) should be
    c) might have been d) should have been
19. You .... have shouted at your elder brother. It was wrong of you to do that.
    a) oughtn't b) mustn't
    c) wouldn't d) shouldn't
20. You .... to do as he has told you so that he doesn't get angry.
    a) must b) needn't
    c) ought d) should
21. His home .... far because he always walks to work. *(Longman)*
    a) might have been b) can't be
    c) must have been d) must be

22 I .... have taken the children to the park yesterday. I'm sorry I didn't.

a) can't
b) must
c) needn't
d) should

23 I .... to university, but I decided to get a job.

a) couldn't have gone
b) must have gone
c) could have gone
d) could go

24 I .... you the money. Why didn't you ask me?

a) can lend
b) could have lent
c) can't have lent
d) must have lent

25 She .... there. Her car keys are still here. (Longman)

a) may have driven
b) shouldn't have driven
c) must have driven
d) can't have driven

26 A: Do you think she saw us?
B: No, she was too far away. She .... us.

a) could have seen
b) might have seen
c) must have seen
d) couldn't have seen

27 I was lucky yesterday. I .... myself when I crashed into a tree, but I am fine with no injuries.

a) hurt
b) must have hurt
c) could have hurt
d) can't have hurt

28 The printer's been broken for a week, so she couldn't have printed out the report. This means that ....

a) we draw the conclusion that she possibly didn't do it
b) perhaps she had the possibility but she didn't do it
c) we know it was impossible for her to do it
d) she didn't think about printing the report

29 I could have stayed up late, but I decided to go to bed early. This means that ..... .

a) it was possible for me to stay up late but I didn't
b) it wasn't possible for me to stay up late but I did
c) I had the ability to stay up late but I didn't
d) Both a & c

30 I couldn't have arrived any earlier. There was a terrible traffic jam. This means that ....

a) it was impossible for me to have arrived any earlier
b) it wasn't impossible for me to have arrived any earlier
c) it was possible for me to have arrived any earlier
d) I had the ability to have arrived any earlier

31 I should have gone to bed early. This means that ....

a) it would have been a good idea to go to bed early and I did
b) I didn't go to bed early and it was OK
c) I went to bed late and now I regret that
d) All answers are correct

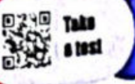
32 I shouldn't have eaten so much cake! This means that ....

a) I did eat a lot of cake and now I regret that
b) it wasn't a good idea to eat so much cake, but I did it anyway
c) it would have been a good idea to eat so much cake, but I didn't do it
d) Both a & b

33 He couldn't have passed the exam, even if he had studied harder. This means that ....

a) it was impossible for him to pass the exam
b) it wasn't impossible for him to pass the exam
c) it was possible for him to pass the exam
d) he had the ability to pass the exam

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. The officer .... our passports before we boarded the plane.
   a) looked b) researched c) checked d) pulled
2. .... is something that is very valuable.
   a) Treasure b) Pressure c) Pleasure d) Treason
3. Kareem .... the idea of setting up this project in the New Administrative Capital.
   a) adapted b) adopted c) took d) came
4. Some women usually .... to men about their age.
   a) lay b) lie c) lean d) lain
5. The government announced a new plan to reduce .... in the country.
   a) crimes b) goals c) achievements d) aims
6. A .... is a large building for storing large quantities of goods.
   a) workhouse b) warehouse c) farmhouse d) sports house
7. I tried to solve the ...., but I gave up as it was too difficult.
   a) confusion b) maze c) puzzle d) tale
8. The businessman .... his time between his two companies.
   a) shared b) equaled c) divided d) provided
9. Everyone should be treated .... as we are all humans.
   a) equal b) different c) differently d) equally
10. Ancient Egyptians used to .... their dead with some food and clothes.
    a) carry b) prove c) deepen d) bury
11. I've performed in a play before, but my role wasn't one of the main ....
    a) themes b) characters c) incidents d) plots
12. Could you .... your reasons for choosing this job?
    a) tell b) explain c) inquire d) advise
13. Today's newspaper has a very .... report from one of their correspondents in India.
    a) close b) deep c) abandoned d) interesting
14. This film is very serious. I'd prefer to watch something that will make us ....
    a) laugh b) cry c) wipe d) sad
15. The police officer asked my friends to .... the robbers who stole the money.
    a) realise b) describe c) know d) specialise

Language

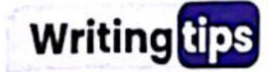
16. My advice is to try again and again. You .... give up.
    a) needn't b) must c) shouldn't d) oughtn't
17. In summer, tourists should wear a hat and .... sit in the sun.
    a) must b) can't c) should d) ought not to
18. Look, it's raining! I .... have brought an umbrella.
    a) must b) ought to c) can't d) shouldn't
19. That was a mistake, I .... on time to take the job.
    a) should have applied b) must have applied
    c) can't have applied d) mustn't apply
20. Why did you run across the road? You .... killed.
    a) could have been b) must have
    c) can't have d) could have
21. It was really wrong of him. He .... you before using your car.
    a) must have asked b) should have asked
    c) can't have asked d) might have asked
22. He exceeded تجاوز the speed limit and was fined. He .... done that.
    a) must have b) can't have c) shouldn't have d) mustn't have
23. You .... met my brother. I haven't got any siblings اخوة.
    a) must have b) may have c) couldn't have d) could have
24. Maher went to the movies السينما last night, but he .... at home and revised his lessons.
    a) might stay b) might have stayed
    c) must have stayed d) should have stayed
25. I .... that horror film; I had terrible nightmares.
    a) could have watched b) must watch
    c) shouldn't have watched d) must have to watch
26. They .... about the robbery, but nobody told them anything about it.
    a) shouldn't have known b) must know
    c) must have known d) could have known
27. A: I talked to your science teacher at school yesterday.
    B: You .... to her because she wasn't there yesterday.
    a) couldn't have talked b) shouldn't have talked
    c) could have talked d) must have talked
28. Ali could have gone to school by bus, but he went on foot. This means that ....
    a) I'm sure that Ali went to school by bus
    b) I'm not sure that Ali went to school by bus
    c) I'm sure that Ali didn't go to school by bus although it was possible
    d) I'm sure that it was impossible for Ali to go to school by bus
29. I had L.E. 5,000. I .... a bike, but I decided to buy a smart watch.
    a) could have bought b) should buy
    c) couldn't have bought d) shouldn't have bought
30. I'm tired today. I .... have stayed up too late last night.
    a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) should d) can't



Part (3)
Lessons 5 & 6



للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



What's a book review?

It is a form of literary criticism in which a book is analysed based on the content, the style and the background.

How to write a book review?

1. Read the book carefully and take notes.
2. Highlight the main ideas of the book.
3. Start writing your opinion about the overall book.
4. Try to illustrate your points briefly in not more than 3 paragraphs.
5. You can be objective and express general points of view or subjective and express your own experiences.

Model Essay

A book I have read

One of my hobbies is reading. I have read a lot of books, most of which I bought from the nearby bookshop, but sometimes I borrow some books from my friends or the library. Recently, I have read a wonderful book named "How to make friends and influence people" which was written by Dale Carnegie. I found the book very useful and I can recommend it to everyone.

In the book, the writer told the stories of many successful people who achieved their targets by influencing others. He really taught me how to have a conversation with partners or friends without arguing. He also showed the best way to persuade people and some tips for communication.

The book also urges the readers to show genuine interest in others, smile and be a good listener, remember and use people's names, avoid criticism and argument and learn from others.

The principles in the book are meant to guide the readers in building stronger relationships and communicating effectively. It's important to apply them genuinely and adapt them to different situations. I think this book is necessary for everyone.

We can also write reviews about films. Choose a favourite film and try to write a review about it.



1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In 1945, the first bomb was dropped on Hiroshima, Japan. It produced an explosion[1] equal to 20,000 tons of T.N.T. (until then the most powerful explosive that the world had known). It killed about 200,000 people. If this bomb had not been used then, the world wouldn't have realised the full potential[2] of such a destructive[3] power. Since then, the hydrogen bomb has been perfected by certain world powers. It is believed that this terrible bomb, if it is exploded, will release energy equal to 100 megatons, that is, one hundred million tons, of T.N.T. The Hiroshima bomb killed 200,000 people which is a terrible number of deaths; but if a single hydrogen bomb is used in warfare, it will kill about a thousand million people. If five such bombs are dropped on the five inhabited continents, the entire population of the world, which is estimated at about seven thousand million people, will be destroyed. This is the reason why the great mass of people in the world do not want another war. If there were another war, and if hydrogen bombs were to be used in it, the whole world would be destroyed.

It is a pity[4] that in this atomic age, countries compete in the field of armament[5], and every day we are threatened to have a destructive war.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Certain world powers should be blamed because ....
   a) an atomic bomb is filled with T.N.T
   b) a hydrogen bomb has been perfected
   c) most people are not afraid of another war
   d) one megaton equals hundred tons
2. The passage clearly shows that ....
   a) the hydrogen bomb could kill far fewer people than the atomic bomb
   b) the atomic bomb is more powerful than the hydrogen bomb
   c) the hydrogen bomb is less powerful than the atomic bomb
   d) the hydrogen bomb could kill far more people than the atomic bomb



(1) انفجار (2) قدرة/إمكانية (3) تدميري (4) مؤسف (5) التسلح

3) If the atomic bomb had not been dropped on Hiroshima, ...

a) the hydrogen bomb would have been invented
b) the world would be destroyed
c) the world would not have known how powerful the atomic bomb was
d) it would have destroyed the whole world

4) The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) the world
b) the Hiroshima bomb
c) another war
d) the hydrogen bomb

5) People are afraid of another war as they fear that ....

a) the whole world would be destroyed
b) there will be pollution
c) countries of the world would be poorer
d) animals and plants would die

6) After the first atomic bomb, the world realised ....

a) the importance of these kinds of bombs
b) the great power of such destructive weapons
c) the importance of cooperation
d) the pains of people

7) It is a fact that ....

a) the first atomic bomb was not dropped on a Japanese city
b) the population of the world is about a thousand million people
c) an atomic bomb is far more powerful than any bomb used before
d) a new bomb will be less destructive

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1) Close friendship is the most effective form of social support; it relieves the effects of stress and leads to better mental and physical health.

a) إن الصداقة المغلقة هى أقل أشكال الدعم الاجتماعى تاثرًا فهى تهدئ من آثار الشدة وتؤدى إلى صحة نفسية وبدنية أفضل.
b) الصداقة القريبة هى أكثر أشكال الدعم الاجتماعى تاثرًا فهى تهدئ من آثار التوتر وتؤدى إلى صحة نفسية وبدنية أقوى.
c) إن الصداقة المغلقة هى أكثر أشكال الدعم الاجتماعى تاثيرًا فهى تزيد من آثار التوتر وتؤدى إلى صحة نفسية وبدنية أفضل.
d) إن الصداقة الحميمة هى أكثر أشكال الدعم الاجتماعى تاثيرًا فهى تهدئ من آثار التوتر وتؤدى إلى صحة نفسية وبدنية أفضل.

2) Sports have become one of the most effective means of achieving peace and stability throughout the world.

a) قد تصبح الرياضة واحدة من أكثر الوسائل تأثيرًا فى تحقيق السلام والاستقرار فى كل أنحاء العالم.
b) لقد أصبحت الرياضة واحدة من أكثر الوسائل تأثيرًا فى تحقيق القطعة والاستقرار فى كل أنحاء العالم.
c) أصبحت الرياضة واحدة من أقل الوسائل تأثيرًا فى تحقيق السلام والاستقرار فى كل أنحاء العالم.
d) لقد أصبحت الرياضة واحدة من أكثر الوسائل تأثيرًا فى تحقيق السلام والاستقرار فى كل أنحاء العالم.

3) There are some very simple measures that may keep you healthy for a long time. The first of these is to brush your teeth twice a day.

a) يوجد بعض الأفعال البسيطة والتى من الممكن أن تحافظ على صحتك لفترة طويلة وأول هذه الإجراءات هى أن تغسل أسنانك مرتين يوميًا.
b) يوجد بعض الإجراءات البسيطة والتى من الممكن أن تحافظ على صحتك لفترة طويلة وأول هذه الإجراءات هى أن تغسل أسنانك مرتين يوميًا.
c) يوجد بعض الإجراءات البسيطة والتى من الممكن أن تحافظ على صحتك لفترة طويلة وأول هذه الإجراءات هى أن تغسل أسنانك مرتين أسبوعيًا.
d) يوجد بعض الإجراءات المعقدة والتى من الممكن أن تحافظ على صحتك لفترة طويلة وأول هذه الإجراءات هى أن تغسل أسنانك يوميًا.

4) The government should work hard to improve the infrastructure of many slums, or we will have many disasters.

a) يجب على البلدية أن تعمل بجد لتحسين البنية تحت الحمراء للكثير من القرى وإلا سنواجه الكثير من الكوارث.
b) يجب على الحكومة أن تعمل بجد لتحسين البنية السفلية للكثير من المنتجعات وإلا سنواجه الكثير من الكوارث.
c) يجب على الدولة ألا تعمل بجد لتحسين الانفراستراكتشر للكثير من العشوائيات وإلا سنواجه الكثير من القضايا.
d) يجب على الحكومة أن تعمل بجد لتحسين البنية التحتية للكثير من العشوائيات وإلا سنواجه الكثير من الكوارث.

5) In the past, women suffered a lot from illiteracy and gender discrimination. Also, they didn't have any political rights.

a) فى الماضى كانت النساء تعانى كثيرا من الأمية والتمييز من حيث النوع وأيضًا لم يكن لديهن أى حقوق سياسية.
b) فى الماضى عانت النساء كثيرا من المرض والتميز من حيث النوع وأيضًا لم يكن لديهن حقوق سياسية.
c) فى الماضى كانت النساء لا تعانى كثيرا من الأمية والتمييز من حيث النوع وأيضًا لم يكن لديهن أى حقوق سياسية.
d) فى الماضى كانت النساء تعانى كثيرا من البطالة والتميز من حيث القدرة وأيضًا لم يكن لديهن أى حقوق حياتية.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

6) من المعروف أن الخوف الزائد من الامتحانات سلاح ذو حدين فأحيانا يساعدك على المذاكرة وأحيانا يجعلك متوترا.

a) It is known that much fear of exams is a weapon in two blades; it sometimes makes you study and sometimes makes you stressed.
b) It is known that much fear of exams is a weapon with two edges; it sometimes makes you study and sometimes makes you stressed.
c) It is known that much fear of exams is a double-edged weapon; it sometimes makes you study and sometimes makes you stressed.
d) From known that much fear of exams is a double-edged weapon; it sometimes makes you study and sometimes makes you stressful.

7) يجب علينا أن نضع فى الاعتبار أن هناك بعض الأشخاص فى حاجة للمساعدة للتغلب على مخاوفهم.

a) We must take into consideration that there are some people who are in thing of help to overcome their diseases.
b) We must take into consideration that there are many people who are in need of help to overcome their fears.
c) We must take in consideration that there is some people who are in need of help to overcome their fears.
d) We must take into regard that there are some people who are in need of help overcoming there fears.

8) الأمية والجهل والفقر هم الأعداء الحقيقيون لإعاقة تقدم أى دولة ومن هنا يجب أن يكون هناك حلول مناسبة للتخلص منهم.

a) Motherhood, ignorance and the poor are the real enemies that protect the progress of any nation. Thus, there must be suitable solutions to get rid of them.
b) Illiteracy, ignorance and disease are the real enemies that prevent the progress of any nation. Thus, there must be suitable solutions to upgrade them.
c) Illiteracy, ignorance and poverty are the real enemies that prevent the progress of any nation. Thus, there must be suitable solutions to get rid of them.
d) Illiteracy, negligence and poor are the real enemies who prevent the progress of any nation. Thus, there must be suitable solutions to get rid of them.

9) إن احترام المعلم وتقديره واجب على كل فرد فى المجتمع لأن المعلم هو أساس العملية التعليمية.

a) Respecting and appreciating the teacher is the duty of all individuals in society, so the teacher is the basis of the educational process.
b) Respecting and appreciating the teacher is the duty of every individual in society, because the teacher is the basis of the educational process.
c) That respecting and appreciating the teacher is the right of every individual in society, because the teacher is the basic of the educational process.
d) Respecting and appreciate the teacher is the duty of every individual in society, because the teacher is the basis of the educational operation.

10) بالتأكيد السيارة معطلة، فهى لم تتحرك من مكانها منذ أشهر ولا أحد من أصحابها يأتى لأخذها.

a) For sure the car is broken down; it hasn't moved for ages and no one of its owners comes to take it.
b) The car must be broken down; it hasn't moved for months and no one of its owners comes to take it.
c) The car could be broken down; it hasn't moved for months and no one of its owners comes to take it.
d) Surely the car may be broken down; it didn't move for months and no one of its owners came to take it.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

From your own point of view, what is the most influential invention?

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.

Unit 12 Question Bank Al-Adwaa Test 40

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1) I found the book quite interesting. The synonyms of the word "interesting" are "..........".
a) amusing b) deep c) rooted d) entertaining e) humorous

2) The castle is on an island surrounded by a deep lake. The antonyms of the word "deep" are "..........".
a) rooted b) shallow c) buried d) near e) superficial

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3) The worker was found .... after attacking his boss in his office.
a) innocent b) guilty c) mysterious d) proved

4) George, our next-door neighbour, is a very .... man. He has nobody to communicate with.
a) lonely b) alone c) insulated d) along

5) Our teacher told us that Alexandria .... in the north of Egypt.
a) lies b) lays c) locates d) places

6) All the necessary steps have been taken to .... the passengers' safety.
a) share b) ensure c) divide d) bring

7) You can recognise a tree by the .... of its leaves.
a) structure b) form c) root d) shape

8) A/An .... is someone who studies the buildings, graves, tools and other objects of people who lived in the past.
a) archaeologist b) architect c) monster d) pirate

9) We must all cooperate to .... our problems.
a) answer b) prove c) solve d) reply

10) I got really wet walking home last night, I .... a waterproof jacket.
a) needn't have taken b) should take
c) should have taken d) must have taken

11) Maged .... the bus. It doesn't run on Sundays.
a) must have caught b) couldn't have caught
c) may catch d) must catch

12) It was wrong of him to leave the door open. He .... that.
a) shouldn't do b) should do
c) shouldn't have done d) should have done

13 You .... to bed earlier. Now, you have missed the train.

a) may have gone
b) should have gone
c) must have gone
d) shouldn't have gone

14 I .... my friend yesterday, but I couldn't find his telephone number.

a) should call
b) could have called
c) have to call
d) must have called

15 The exam was too difficult. He .... it.

a) couldn't have passed
b) shouldn't have passed
c) must have passed
d) can't have failed

16 Yesterday, I left the car unlocked. It .... stolen, but luckily it wasn't.

a) could have
b) must have been
c) can't have been
d) could have been

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Have you ever been to a forest? Have you ever watched a documentary about wildlife? Forests of different kinds are rich in wildlife. There, you can see thousands of species of plants and animals. These plants and animals form one of the most complicated circles of life. Every single species plays a part in maintaining natural balance.

There are similarities between animals living in wide-open spaces. The lion is an animal that lives in open areas. The lion is the largest member of the family of cats. It lives in Africa. When it is irritated by flies, the lion whips its tail around. The favourite food of the lion is raw meat. The lion gets its food from the animals it kills every day. It hunts at night but during the day, it lies in the shade of the trees. The lion kills only for food. The male always eats first. When it finishes, the rest of the family, the lioness and cubs, have their turn.

The zebra also lives in wide-open spaces. Its enemy is the lion because lions like zebra meat. Both zebras and lions like to live in open areas where they can run and play. Water is very important for the zebra. Almost every day, it goes to the waterhole where, its enemy, the lion, is sitting there waiting for it. The zebra is somehow brave enough to face its enemy while going to drink.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The underlined word "irritated" means ....

a) annoyed
b) interested
c) discouraged
d) afraid

18 Lions don't hunt ....

a) if they are hungry
b) unless they are hungry
c) when they are hungry
d) in case they are hungry

19 A .... is a place where you can see different species of plants and animals.

a) fossil
b) foresail
c) form
d) forest

20 The passage talks about ....

a) lions
b) cats
c) water
d) trees

21 Lions .... zebras because they like their meat.

a) conquer
b) demolish
c) attack
d) save

22 What maintains the natural balance?

a) The lion.
b) The zebra.
c) The trees.
d) Animals and plants.

23 .... is the main meal for the lion.

a) Lioness
b) Cub
c) Zebra
d) Cat

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- يعترض الكثير من الناس على ما يسمى بالعولمة لأنهم يعتقدون أنها تخدم الدول الغنية وليست الدول الفقيرة.

a) Many people object to the so-called globalisation because they think that it surfs rich countries not the poor ones.

b) Many people object to what is called global because they think that it serves rich countries not poor ones.

c) Many people object to the so-called globalisation because they think that it serves rich countries not the poor ones.

d) Many people react to the so-called globalisation because they think that it serves rich countries not the poor.

25 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

One of the first measures to solve the problem of overpopulation is to educate the masses about the need to have one or two children at the most.

a) أحد إجراءات حل مشكلة التلوث هى تعليم الأعداد الكبيرة فهم الحاجة إلى أن يكون لديهم طفل أو اثنين على الأكثر.

b) أحد إجراءات حل مشكلة الزيادة السكانية هى تعليم الأعداد الكبيرة فهم عدم الحاجة إلى أن يكون لديهم طفل أو اثنين على الأكثر.

c) أحد طرق حل مشكلة الزيادة السكانية هى تعليم الأعداد الكبيرة فهم الحاجة إلى أن يكون لديهم طفل أو اثنين على الأقل.

d) أحد إجراءات حل مشكلة الزيادة السكانية هى تثقيف الكثير من الناس بضرورة إنجاب طفل أو طفلين على الأكثر.

26 **Answer the following questions:**

1. Although the pirates heard some frightening voices, they didn't run away and continued. Why do you think?
2. The pirates' happiness with finding the place of the treasure turned into a shock. What do you think happened?
3. Dr. Livesey is the one who must be appreciated by all. Do you agree?

27 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

"Summer camps for students"

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 337

Assess your progress	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Treasure Island

Story

Chapter (7)

Vocabulary

advantage	أفضلية/ميزة	guard	حارس/يحرس
attack	يهجم	gun fire	نيران البنادق
blow	تهب (الرياح)/ينفخ	hide	يخفي/يختفي
bring	يحضر	hill	تل
chains	سلاسل/قيود	hit	يضرب بـ (عصا/بندقية)
cook	طباخ	hurt	يؤذي/يضر
corners	زوايا/أركان	mist	ضباب
cough	يسعل/يكح	offer	عرض
crazy	مجنون	pirate	قرصان
crew	طاقم (سفينة)	supplies	مؤن
fence	سور/حائط	trial	محاكمة
fight	يقاتل	trick	خدعة
firewood	حطب	truce	هدنة
fort	حصن	win	يفوز بـ ...

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

accept an offer	يقبل عرضًا	get home	يعود إلى وطنه
become ill	يصاب بالمرض	have an advantage	لديك ميزة/أفضلية
call out	ينادي على	keep busy	يبقى مشغولًا
come up	يقترب	leave safely	يغادر بأمان
end well	ينتهي على نحو جيد	look for	يبحث عن
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	put chains	يقيد بالسلاسل

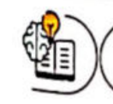
Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: I walked with Ben Gun and we soon saw the fort[1]. "Your friends will be inside, Jim," said Ben. "It might be the pirates," I replied. "No, look at the flag! They will be good men," he answered. "The fort was made by Flint. He was a clever man and he wasn't frightened of anyone, except Silver." "Let's go inside," I said. "I can't go in there," Gun replied. "I don't trust anyone. I'll wait for you. Remember what I told you. I can help you. Come and find me tomorrow." Before I could go to the fort, there was the sound of more gunfire and I had to hide so I wouldn't be hit. From the trees where I waited, I could now see the *Hispaniola*. It was also flying a flag, but it was the black pirate's flag. When it was nearly dark, I walked round to the back of the fort and called out. The door opened, and Dr Livesy let me inside. I sat down and told them my story. The wind blew sand[2] inside the fort and we found it everywhere, in our clothes, in our food and in our eyes. There was a fire to keep us warm, but the room was also full of smoke and we all coughed. Captain Smollett gave us all jobs: some looked for firewood, others went to cook food, and I was asked to guard the door. He kept us all busy, and that made us all feel better. "Captain Smollett is a good man," said Dr Livesy later that day. "And what about Ben Gun? Is he a good man?" "I don't know," I answered. "I think he's a little crazy." "Any man on an island for three years will be a bit crazy," explained the doctor. "Did you say that he wanted some good food?" "Yes," I replied. "I've brought some cheese with me on this journey. Let's give it to Ben Gun!" said the doctor. That evening, the men talked about how little food we had. We hoped that the pirates would leave the island with the *Hispaniola*. The doctor said that they would become ill if they slept outside on the island for long. And if the pirates left, we could wait until help arrived. I slept very well that night. The next morning, a voice woke me up. I heard someone say, "Some pirates are coming to the fort with a white flag. Look, it's Silver! He wants a truce!"[3] I got up and looked from the fort. It was a cold morning, and although it was sunny, there was a low mist[4]. We could only see the head of Silver and another pirate. "Stay in the fort," said Captain Smollett. "I'm sure that this is a trick[5]." Then he called out to Silver, "Tell us what you want." "I want a truce," said Silver. Captain Smollett quietly told us to move to different corners of the fort and to watch Silver carefully.

(1) حصن
(2) رمل
(3) هدنة
(4) ضباب
(5) خدعة

Then he called to Silver, "What do you want us to do?" "Come to my ship and we can talk about how to get home," said Silver. "Your ship? I didn't know you had a ship here," replied Captain Smollett.

"Well, the crew chose me to be their captain after you left the ship," said Silver. "If you have something to say, you can come into the fort and say it," said Captain Smollett. The other pirate tried to stop Silver, but he laughed and walked quickly towards the fort. He climbed over one of the fences and walked slowly up the hill. Soon he was standing in front of Captain Smollett, who was waiting for him outside the door to the fort. "Can't I come inside?" asked Silver. "It's a cold morning." "If you were an honest[1] man, you could come inside," said Captain Smollett. "But are you my ship's cook, who I looked after, or Captain Silver, a pirate?" "OK, we can stay here," said Silver, sitting down on the sand. "You've got a nice place here. Look, there's Jim! Good morning." "If you have anything to say, say it now," said Captain Smollett. "Captain, we want the treasure, and we're going to find it. However, I think you all want to leave the island safely. You have the map, don't you?" asked Silver. "Perhaps," said Captain Smollett. "I know you have it," said Silver. "We don't want to hurt you. Give us the map and then we will take you home on the ship. We'll take you to somewhere safe. Or, if you prefer, we'll leave you some supplies and you can stay on the island. Then we can ask another ship to come and take you home. It's a kind offer[2], and I hope you all want to take it." He said this last part loudly, so that we could all hear in the fort. "Is that all you can offer?" said Captain Smollett. "It is, and if you don't accept my offer, all you will hear from me is the sound of guns!" "Now you can listen to me," replied Captain Smollett. "If you come up to the fort, one by one, without any guns, I'll put you all in chains[3] and take you back to England for trial[4]. If you don't, you'll have problems. You can't find the treasure. You don't have enough men to sail the ship, and you can't fight us here in the fort." Silver looked very angry. "This will not end well for any of you," he said, and then he walked slowly back down the hill. Captain Smollett came back into the fort and said to us, "He'll be back in an hour to attack us. There are more of them than us, but we have the advantage[5] inside the fort, and I am sure that we can win."



(1) أمين/ صادق
(2) عرض
(3) سلاسل/ أغلال
(4) محاكمة
(5) ميزة/ أفضلية

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. Why didn't Ben Gun want to go inside the fort?
   He didn't trust anyone. So, he was worried about going inside.
2. Why did Jim have to hide before he could go to the fort?
   In order not to be shot as there were sounds of gun fire.
3. What color is the Hispaniola's flag?
   It was flying a black pirate's flag.
4. What was the effect of the smoke that was in the room on the men?
   It made them cough badly.
5. What was the doctor's opinion about Ben Gun?
   He thought that he was a little crazy.
6. Why did Dr. Livesy think that Ben Gun was a little crazy?
   He thought that anyone who is on an island for three years will be a bit crazy.
7. What did Captain Smollett ask Jim to do inside the fort?
   He asked him to guard the door of the fort.
8. According to the doctor, what would happen to the pirates if they slept outside on the island for long?
   He thought that they would become ill.
9. Why did Silver arrive at the fort with a white flag?
   He wanted a truce.
10. Why didn't Captain Smollett allow Silver to enter the fort?
    He didn't trust him and he thought that it was a trick.
11. What did Silver ask the men in the fort to do?
    He asked them to come to the ship to talk about how to get home.
12. What happened after Captain Smollett left his ship?
    The crew chose Silver to be their captain.
13. What two offers did Silver give to Captain Smollett and his men?
    1. He offered to help them leave the island and get home.
    2. To leave them some supplies so they can stay on the island.
14. On what condition did the pirates offer to take them home on the ship?
    On the condition that Captain Smollett gives them the map.
15. Did Captain Smollett accept Silver's offers? Why?
    No, he didn't, as he didn't trust him and he didn't want to give him the map.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. How do you think Ben knows that Jim's friends, not the pirates, were inside the fort?
   From the flag which was in white colour.
2. How can you differentiate between bad people and good people according to the story here?
   From the colour of their flag. As the black one belongs to the pirates who are bad, while the white one is for the good.
3. Having a fire in the fort had one advantage and one disadvantage. Explain!
   It kept them warm, but also made them cough as the room was full of smoke.
4. Why do you think that Captain Smollett gave them all jobs inside the fort?
   To keep them all busy to feel better and not to think about any problems outside the fort.
5. What would happen to the men if the pirates didn't leave the island?
   They would die of hunger as they had little food left.
6. Why do you think that Captain Smollett asked his men to watch Silver carefully?
   As he didn't trust him and he was sure that it was a trick.
7. Do you think that Silver had the right to be the captain of the ship? Why?
   No, as Captain Smollett was the real captain of the ship.
8. Captain Smollett made fun of Silver. When?
   When Silver told him to come to his ship and Captain Smollett said that he didn't know he had a ship here.
9. Silver didn't come into the fort, but he stayed at the door. Why do you think so?
   I think Captain Smollett didn't allow him, as he didn't trust him.
10. Why do you think that Silver said the last offer loudly?
    He wanted all those who were inside the fort to hear that he offered to help them get back home to make them influence Captain Smollett to agree to give him the map.



Novel Exercises Chapter (7)

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A .... is a criminal who plunders ينهب merchant vessels at sea.
a) pirate b) burglar c) sailor d) thief

2 My brother shows me all the .... that he's learned to do with his new magic set.
a) trials b) tricks c) tracks d) triangles

3 This team is going to .... the cup. The players are training hard to achieve their goal.
a) lose b) hide c) win d) guard

4 They should try to collect more .... to keep warm. It is very cold here.
a) firewood b) chains c) offers d) truces

5 The two countries accuse each other of violating انتهاك the .... agreement signed last year.
a) conflict b) fight c) truce d) struggle

6 The trial my friend .... on proved that he was innocent.
a) went b) had c) offered d) became

7 After the crime, the policeman decided to .... the door of the office and not to allow anybody in.
a) accept b) unlock c) open d) guard

8 The soldiers wanted to break into the ...., of the enemy, so they directed all the guns against it.
a) hill b) door c) room d) fort

9 I bought a .... to put on the gate not to let anyone enter my garden.
a) fort b) chain c) flag d) firewood

10 He accepted the .... of the new company and decided to work for them.
a) mistake b) fool c) offer d) cook

11 I like to go to the beach and lie on its .... to relax.
a) guns b) chains c) fish d) sand

12 The .... around our school makes it difficult to enter it except from the door.
a) firewood b) truce c) fort d) fence

13 The offer the team had .... to the new player, was rejected by his father.
a) done b) made c) become d) gone

14 The dog was digging a hole to .... its bone in.
a) hide b) eat c) drink d) bite

15 The factory was surrounded by a high .... to protect it against theft.
a) firewood b) window c) tree d) fence

(B) Answer the following questions:

1. Ben was an observant man. Do you agree or not? Why?
....

2. Do you think that Jim was careful or not? How do you know?
....

3. Prove that Captain Smollett was a wise man when dealing with others inside the fort.
....

4. Dr. Livesy had an opinion about Ben Gun. What was that opinion and why?
....

5. Do you agree that any man who lives on an island for three years will be a bit crazy? why? why not?
....

6. Why do you think Captain Smollett put up a flag earlier on the fort?
....

7. If you were Captain Smollett, would you ask Silver to come inside the fort? Why? Why not?
....

8. Silver, himself, thought that he wasn't an honest man. Why did he think so?
....

9. Why do you think Ben Gun refused to go inside the fort?
....

10. If you were in Captain Smollett's place, would you accept Silver's offer or not? Why?
....

11. Silver's came with a truce which had offers and a threat. Do you think it was a trick?
....

12. Do you think Silver really wanted a truce?
....

13. Why do you think that Flint was a brave man?
....

14. Do you think that Dr. Livesy was a generous man? Why?
....

15. Why do you think the other pirate tried to stop Silver from getting into the fort?
....

Chapter (8)

Vocabulary

anchor	مرساة السفينة	parrot	ببغاء
badly	بشكل سيئ	pirate flag	علم القراصنة
cape	لسان داخل البحر	prepare	يعد/يجهز
cliff	منحدر	quietly	بهدوء
climb	يتسلق	return	يعود
completely	تماما	rope	حبل
cry	صرخة/يصرخ	shoot	يطلق النار
dead	ميت	steer	يوجه/يقود
distant	بعيد	sword	سيف
fire	يطلق النار	the west	الغرب
mist	ضباب	thick	سميك/كثيف
nearly	تقريبا	wave	موجة
noise	ضجيج	weakly	بضعف
paddle	مجداف	weapon	سلاح

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the east	باتجاه الشرق	lie down	يستلقي
be in trouble	يقع في ورطة	look into	يتفحص/يلقي نظرة
get better	يتحسن	made from	مصنوع من
get inside	يتجه إلى الداخل	pick up	يلتقط
go quiet	يهدأ	stay by	يبقى بقرب
go down	ينزل	take time	يأخذ وقتا

Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: We prepared our weapons and the captain told us what to do. "Doctor, you stay by the door. Hunter, stay at the east of the fort. Joyce can stand in the west. Gray and Trelawney will stay at the north. If the pirates get inside the north of the fort, we're in trouble." After an hour, Joyce said that he saw someone coming. We all looked and listened, and we got our weapons ready. Suddenly, Joyce fired his gun. Then, we heard guns firing at us from all sides of the fort. There was a lot of noise[1] and smoke, but nobody was hurt. Then everything went quiet again. "Did you hit anyone?" the captain asked Joyce. "I don't think so," he replied. "How many people fired on your side, Doctor?" asked Captain Smollett. "There were three," he replied. "How many on your side, Trelawney?" Trelawney and Gray were not sure. They thought seven, eight or nine. There was only one shot fired from the east and west. So, we knew that the pirates wanted to attack mostly from the north. But Captain Smollett told us to stay where we were. We didn't have much time to talk. A group of pirates ran from the trees towards the north of the fort, and their guns started firing again. Some of the pirates tried to climb the fence, but Joyce shot two of them and one ran back to the trees. However, four were now inside the fences and seven more continued to fire at us from the trees. Our men fired at the four pirates, but did not hit them. They were now running up the hill to the fort, and one of them climbed up and took Hunter's gun.

Another ran in through the door, where the doctor killed him. Captain Smollett then told us to go to the other side of the fort. I ran there quickly, and suddenly found one of the pirates, Anderson, in front of me. He was going to attack me with his sword, but Gray saw him and killed him before I was hurt. At the same time, the pirates inside the fences were killed by our guns. I was safe, but others were not. Poor Joyce and Hunter were dead and Captain Smollett was hurt. "Have the pirates gone?" asked Captain Smollett weakly. "Some of them have gone," said Doctor Livesy, "but five of them will never walk again." "That's good," said Captain Smollett. "There are fewer pirates for us to fight. I know that we can win." The pirates did not return that day, so we had time to eat and look after the people who were hurt. Doctor Livesy said that Captain Smollett would get better, but he should not walk or even talk if he didn't need to. In the early afternoon, Doctor Livesy took his hat and a gun, then he put the map in his pocket and left the fort. "What is he doing?" asked Gray when we saw him walk into the trees. "Is he crazy?" "The doctor has a plan," I said. "I think he's going to visit Ben Gun." That afternoon, I thought about where the doctor was. I remembered how good it felt to walk through the trees and on the beach. It was much nicer than staying inside the hot fort. I decided to take some biscuits and a gun. I wanted to go down to the rocks where Ben Gun said there was a boat.



(1) ضوضاء

When nobody was looking, I quietly left the fort. I walked quickly towards the east of the island. It was now late afternoon but the sun was still high. As I went nearer to the coast, the wind became stronger and it wasn't as hot. Soon I could see the big waves of the blue sea and then I walked down the beach, feeling happy.

At the end of the beach, I climbed a hill. I could see the *Hispaniola*, with the pirate flag flying in the wind. And I could see Silver in one of the small boats, talking to his men. I could not hear what they said, although I could hear the cry[1] of the parrot, Captain Flint. The sun was going down and soon there was a mist. I knew that I needed to be quick and find the boat that evening. It took me a long time to walk to the white rock where Ben Gun said his boat was. It was nearly dark when I finally found it inside a tent made of animal skins. It was badly made from old wood and it was very small, although I thought that it would be very fast on water. Now I had my own plan. I thought that I could go to the *Hispaniola* in the night and cut the rope[2] to the anchor[3]. So, I ate my biscuits while I waited for it to become dark. When I stood up later, there was mist everywhere. I picked up the boat and carried it to the beach. In the darkness, I could just see a fire where the pirates were sleeping in the trees, and another distant light from the *Hispaniola*. I put the small boat into the water, and began my journey to the ship. I found that the boat was very difficult to steer[4], but the wind helped me to get to the *Hispaniola*. Soon, I was next to the big ship and I began cutting the thick[5] anchor rope.

I could now hear some of the pirates talking on the ship. One of the men was called Hands, but I did not know the other man. They both seemed angry. The rope finally broke, and I moved away from the ship. As I was leaving, I saw a light in one of the windows where the sailors were talking. I don't know why, but I decided to look into the window. I saw that Hands and the other pirate were fighting each other. I sat down in the boat, but I realised that the wind was taking me quickly out to sea.

Now it no longer had the anchor rope, the wind was moving the *Hispaniola*, too! The wind took my boat into large waves. I closed my eyes and waited for a terrible end, dreaming of my home and the *Admiral Benbow*. The next thing I knew, it was light and I found myself in the boat on the south-west end of Treasure Island. The sun was up, but I couldn't see it because of the high cliffs on this side of the island. There were big waves hitting the rocks below, and it would be impossible for me to take the boat to the shore. I remembered that on the map, there was a place called Cape of Woods. This was a place of tall trees and it also had a beach. I would try to get there. The boat sailed well, but when I tried to steer it, the boat hit the waves and I was soon completely wet. I realised, however, that if I lay down in the boat, it found its way through the waves on its own. I used a paddle[6] to steer the boat a little, and it moved very slowly towards the Cape of Woods.



(1) صرخة
(2) حبل
(3) مرسى/مرساة
(4) يغير اتجاه/يقود
(5) سميك
(6) مجداف

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. According to Captain Smollett, when will they be in trouble?
   If the pirates get inside the north of the fort.
2. How did Captain Smollett prepare the men inside the fort to face the pirates?
   He asked each one of them to guard a certain place. Dr. Livesy would stay by the door. Hunter would stay in the east of the fort. Gray and Trelawney would stay in the north. Joyce would stay in the west.
3. Who was the first one to fire his gun at the pirates?
   Joyce did.
4. How many pirates fired their guns at the side of the doctor?
   There were three pirates at the doctor's side.
5. Who saved Jim's life? How?
   Gray saved his life when he killed the pirate, Anderson, who was about to kill Jim with his sword.
6. How many pirates did Joyce shoot?
   Joyce shot two of the pirates.
7. Who did the pirates kill inside the fort?
   The pirates killed Joyce and Hunter.
8. Why did Jim leave the fort?
   He wanted to go down to the rocks, where Ben Gun said there was a boat.
9. What did Jim do while waiting for it to be dark?
   He ate his biscuits.
10. Where did Jim find the boat?
    He found it inside a tent made of animals' skins.
11. Who did Jim see fighting on the ship when he looked into the window?
    A pirate called Hands and another pirate.
12. Where was Jim when he opened his eyes?
    He found himself in the boat on the south-west end of Treasure Island.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Do you think Captain Smollett is a good captain? Why/ Why not?

Yes, I think so, as he can prepare the men inside the fort for the pirates' attack very well.

2. Captain Smollett is sure that the pirates want to attack mostly from the north. How does he know?

As most shots are coming from this side, but there is only one shot from the east and west.

3. Why did Dr Livesy leave the fort? Do you agree that he is crazy, as Gray said?

He was going to visit Ben Gun.

Yes. I think that he is crazy, as he might have been shot by the pirates.

4. Why do you think that Captain Smollett says, "I know that we can win" after the fight?

As they could kill five of the pirates and so there were few pirates left for them to fight.

5. Why do you think that Jim felt happy when he reached the beach?

As it wasn't hot anymore and the wind became stronger.

6. What was Jim's opinion of the boat that Ben Gun made? Do you agree with his opinion?

He thought that it could be fast, although it was old and badly made from old wood. And I agree with this opinion as there was a storm to make it fast.

7. Why do think that Jim wanted to be quick and find the boat as he said?

I think that he wanted to find the boat before the pirates could find him and kill him.

8. Do you think that Jim's plan was a good one? Why?

Yes, I think it was a good one, as the storm would take the ship of the pirates away, giving them a chance to run.

9. Why do you think Jim expected a "terrible end"?

As there was a storm and it took his boat into large waves which could have destroyed it and so he could have been killed.

10. Why do you think that it was possible for Jim to take the boat to the shore?

As there were big waves hitting the rocks below and he wasn't strong enough to be able to pull the boat alone.



(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The ship crew dropped the .... to stop the ship.
a) weapon b) anchor c) flag d) tent

2 He managed to .... his car carefully into the parking space.
a) reach b) link c) aim d) steer

3 At night, I listened to the sound of the crashing .... against the shore.
a) waves b) sand c) masts d) weaves

4 The policemen .... at the terrorists to prevent them from escaping.
a) frightened b) fired c) feared d) terrified

5 Keep away from the edge of the ....; you might fall.
a) calf b) cliff c) beach d) mist

6 Unfortunately, the motorcyclist was .... on arrival at the hospital.
a) death b) dead c) die d) deadly

7 I don't mind where we go on vacation as long as it's not .... from the beach.
a) in front b) distant c) closed d) close

8 My uncle lives near a busy road, and the .... from the cars is terrible.
a) fire b) shout c) noise d) cry

9 She used to keep a .... in a cage as she likes to hear it singing.
a) lion b) parrot c) cat d) dog

10 They attached a/an .... around the car and pulled it from the river.
a) rope b) string c) mast d) anchor

11 There was a thick .... in the morning and I could not see the road.
a) sun b) mist c) air d) water

12 You probably .... up my keys instead of yours.
a) picked b) took c) sent d) stole

13 "The pain seems to have eased a little with these new tablets," he said ....
a) nearly b) weakly c) weekly d) widely

14 I was .... the breakfast when the lights went out.
a) preparing b) digging c) painting d) watering

15 Did you see the children .... the tree yesterday?
a) walking b) driving c) climbing d) digging

(B) Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Jim, would you leave the fort? why?

....

2. Why do you think that Jim wanted to leave the fort? Do you agree with his reasons?

....

3. Why do you think that Ben Gun hides the boat in the tent made of animals' skins?

....

4. Was Jim right to cut the rope on the Hispaniola? Why/ Why not?

....

5. The wind was a great help for Jim. Do you agree with this and why?

....

6. Why do you think Dr Livesy wanted to find Ben Gun?

....

7. What was Jim's plan when he saw the little boat? Was his plan successful till the end?

....

8. Captain Smollett is a good leader. Do you agree or not? Why?

....

9. Prove that Hunter was not strong enough to fight the pirates.

....

10. What do you think Dr. Livesy means by saying, "But five of them will never walk again?"

....

11. Jim likes open spaces. How can you prove that?

....

12. Why do you think that it was easy for Jim to carry the boat into the water alone?

....

13. Jim is a curious man! Do you agree with this? Why?

....

14. Why do you think Jim closed his eyes when the wind took his boat into large waves?

....

15. Prove that the men in the fort were brave and well well-commanded.

....

Chapter (9)

Key Vocabulary

bandage	ضمادة	paddle	يجدف
call	يطلق لقبًا على شخص	painfully	بشكل مؤلم
close	قريب	rocky	صخرى
deck	ظهر السفينة	sail	شراع /يبحر
empty	فارغ/يفرغ	thirsty	متعطش
fight	يقاتل	wound	جرح
knife	سكين	wreck	حطام السفينة
mud	طين		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

climb up	يتسلق للأعلى	hold onto	يتمسك
get closer	يقترب	look better	يبدو أفضل
go east	ينحب شرقًا	take down	ينزل
go downstairs	ينهب إلى الطابق السفلى	take off	يخلع ملابس
go under	ينحب أسفل		

Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: It was very hot and I was thirsty. The trees were near now, but before I could feel happy, I saw the *Hispaniola* sailing around. I was so thirsty that I did not know whether I would be happy or sad if the pirates found me. I watched the *Hispaniola* and saw that it went east, then west, then stopped. Then it did the same again and again. Nobody was sailing it! But where were the men? I thought if I could get onto the ship, I could return it to Captain Smollett. I started to paddle the boat, sometimes hitting waves, but slowly getting closer to the ship. As I got nearer, I saw nobody on the ship. It was so close that I could almost touch it. Suddenly, the wind changed and the ship was almost on top of me. I held onto a rope at the side of the ship just before it hit my little boat, which went under the waves. So, I found myself on the *Hispaniola*, with no other boat to save me. I climbed up onto the deck[1], which seemed empty. The wind blew and the sails moved to the right, and then I saw them: Hands and the man he was fighting. I thought they were both dead, but then Hands said weakly: "Water!" I went downstairs. The pirates had broken all the cupboard doors when they were looking for the map, and the floor was dirty with sand and mud from the island. I found some water and some food, which I put in my bag, and I went back to give the water to Hands. He drank all of it, very quickly. "Are you hurt?" I asked him. "With a doctor, I'll be fine," he said. "And where have you been?" "Well, I've decided to take the ship, so you must now call me Captain," I said. He looked at me angrily, but he also looked very ill.

"Also, Mr Hands, we can't have this flag on the ship," I said, and then I went to take down the black pirate flag. Hands looked at me, and then said, "You'll want to go to the island, won't you, Captain Hawkins? Let's talk." "That's a good idea," I agreed. "I don't think you can sail this ship," Hands said. "So if you give me food and drink, and help me with my wound, I'll help you." "OK," I said, "But I'm not going back to where the ship was before. We're going to the north of the island." "The north?" he asked. "Of course, I'll sail the ship wherever you want to go!" So, I agreed to help him. I found a bandage[2] to put on his wound and I also gave him some food and some more water. He soon looked better. He told me how to sail the ship. It moved quickly along the coast of Treasure Island and soon we could see the rocky north of the island. I felt good. I had water and food. The only thing that worried me was Hands. He looked at me all the time and I knew that he was planning something. We arrived near the north of the island, and Hands told me how to stop the ship without an anchor. Then we sat down to eat. "Could you go downstairs and get me some more water?" he asked. I did not think for a minute that Hands was an honest man. He wanted me to leave the deck for a reason, but I did not know what this was.

(1) سطح السفينة (2) ضمادة

However, I also knew that. Hands was not a clever man, so I agreed to go. I went downstairs, made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and went quietly to another part of the ship, where I could see him. He was moving slowly and painfully across the deck, where he picked up a knife. He then hid the knife in his jacket and sat down where he was. Now I knew that he could move, that he had a weapon, and that he planned to hurt me. I did not know what he planned to do after that, but I knew that he could not hurt me until the ship stopped in a safe place near the island. I went back downstairs, put on my shoes and returned with a bottle of water. Hands was sitting quietly, and took the bottle without saying thank you. Then he said, "Look, the wind has changed. If we move the ship now, we'll be safe."

We had only two miles to go to the shore. It was difficult to get to the correct place on the coast, but Hands told me what to do. This part of the island was full of trees and we could see the wreck[1] of an old ship lying on a flat[2] beach. "We can stop there, on the beach," said Hands. I steered the ship slowly onto the beach, where it stopped with a low noise. I was so excited to arrive back at the island that I forgot to watch Hands. I suddenly turned round and there he was, standing with a knife in his hand. I cried out and he jumped at me. I moved quickly to one side and he fell on the deck. Before he could stand up again, I took a gun from my jacket. However, the gun was wet from my journey and it did not work. I was very angry with myself. I was surprised at how fast he could move with the wound in his leg. As he ran towards me, I got ready to run away from him again, and he stopped. I remembered a game that I used to play with my friends in Black Hill Cove when one of us would try to catch the other. I was always good at this game and I thought that I could easily run away from this older pirate with a bad leg. At that moment, a wave hit the *Hispaniola*. When the ship moved, we both fell over and I nearly fell onto Hands. Before he could stand, I decided to climb up the mast[3] of the ship. Up in the sails, I had time to repair my gun and soon it would be ready to fire again. Hands looked up at me and saw my plan. He, too, started to climb the sails, but he could only climb slowly because of his bad leg. Before he was near me, I had the gun ready. "If you come any closer, Mr Hands, you will be dead!" He stopped and I could see he was thinking about what he could do. "You're clever, Jim Hawkins," he said. "You've won." I started to laugh, thinking I was clever, when suddenly he threw something at me. His knife flew through the air and hit me in the shoulder[4]. I was so surprised that, without knowing how, my gun fired. Hands gave a cry and fell down into the sea. I never saw him again. The knife passed through my shoulder into the wood of the mast, so I could not move. It hurt badly. It took a long time before I could think. When I finally looked at the knife, I saw that it only went through a small piece of skin. It was not difficult to take out. I climbed back to the deck and found a bandage for my wound. I was now alone on the ship and it was nearly dark. I quickly took down all the sails I could reach[5] and then jumped down into the shallow[6] water. I walked onto the sand, leaving the *Hispaniola* half on the beach and half in the water.

(1) حطام (2) مسطح/مستو (3) صارى (4) كتف (5) يصل (6) ضحل/غير عميق

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. Where did the Hispaniola go when Jim saw it?
   It went east, then west, then stopped.
2. Why did Jim start to paddle the boat?
   He wanted to get nearer the ship to be able to see inside it.
3. What happened when Jim got closer to the ship?
   The wind changed and the ship was almost on top of him.
4. What happened to the boat when the wind changed?
   The ship hit the little boat and it went under the waves.
5. Who did Jim see when he found himself on the deck of the ship?
   He saw Hands and the man he was fighting. Hands was still alive, but the other man was dead.
6. Why were all the cupboard doors broken?
   Because the pirates broke them when they were searching for the map.
7. Why did Hands look at Jim angrily?
   As Jim told him to call him Captain as he decided to take the ship.
8. What offer did Hands make to Jim Hawkins?
   He offered to help him sail the ship if Jim gave him food, water and helped him with his wound.
9. Where did Jim decide to sail the ship?
   He decided to go to the north of the island.
10. How did Hands help Jim on the ship?
    He taught him how to sail the ship and how to stop it without an anchor.
11. What did Jim see Hands do when he went to get water for him?
    He saw him move and put a knife in his clothes.
12. How did Jim escape from the pirate, Hands?
    He climbed up the mast.
13. What happened after Hands threw a knife at Jim?
    The knife hit Jim's shoulder. And so Jim shot Hands and killed him.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. If you were Jim, would you feel happy or sad when seeing the Hispaniola? Why?
   I wouldn't feel happy, as I would be sure that the pirates would kill me.
2. Why do you think that the Hispaniola was moving in different directions and stopped several times?
   I think that it was sailing by itself, as nobody was sailing it.
3. Prove that Jim was very kind and liked Captain Smollett!
   He wished to get on the ship and take it back to Captain Smollett.
4. Did Jim feel safe after getting on the deck of the ship? Why?
   I don't think that he felt safe at first, as he thought that he had no boat to save him. But then he began to feel safe when he found nobody except Hands, who was injured.
5. Why do you think that Jim decided to take the pirates' flag down?
   I think that he did so to make his friends feel secure on seeing the ship.
6. Jim felt good with water, food and a ship, but there was only one thing that worried him. What was it and why?
   The only thing that worried Jim was Hands, as he didn't trust him and felt that he was planning to do something bad to him.
7. Jim Hawkins is a clever and cautious man. Prove that by giving an example.
   When Hands asked to get him some more water, Jim felt that Hands was planning to do something. So he pretended to make a lot of noise and took off his shoes to watch Hands. He saw him get a knife and put it in his clothes to hurt him.
8. Why do you think Hands wants to hurt or kill Jim?
   I think that he wanted to kill him to be able to control the ship.
9. How do you think Jim was good to Hands on the ship?
   He was kind, as he gave the pirate food and water. Also, he helped him with his wound.
10. Killing Hands was by accident. Do you agree or not? Why?
    I agree completely as Jim didn't intend to kill him, but when the knife hit Jim's shoulder, he said, "Without knowing how, my gun fired."



Novel Exercises
Chapter (9)

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If both of you don't stop .... about what to watch, I'll turn it off.
a) exchanging b) fighting c) playing d) laughing

2 Doctors should ensure that the wound is free from dirt before putting the ....
a) glue b) bandage c) mast d) flag

3 They found the .... of the old German ship lost two months ago.
a) knife b) bandage c) wreck d) wound

4 Mothers should keep the .... in a place not easily reachable by their children.
a) knives b) ships c) paddles d) sails

5 The tourists came on to the .... when the ship arrived in the port.
a) wound b) deck c) sail d) mast

6 Your .... is not deep. It doesn't need a bandage.
a) wound b) mast c) sail d) wreck

7 By the end of the game, all the kids were covered in .... They looked terrible.
a) wind b) mud c) mist d) bandage

8 I like living in a place which is .... to a beach, so I like living in Alexandria.
a) far b) distant c) closed d) close

9 Can you take .... all the pictures on the wall, please? We're painting it tomorrow.
a) down b) up c) away d) off

10 The ship .... along the coast during our voyage around the world.
a) clapped b) saddened c) sailed d) sold

11 Without a surgery, this man will die slowly and ....
a) painfully b) painful c) painless d) carefully

12 My son .... downstairs to open the front door of our villa.
a) made b) did c) went d) took

13 The lake was quite .... so ships were not able to sail across it.
a) shallow b) deep c) hello d) shawl

14 The gardener said that the flowers looked pale because they were ....
a) thirsty b) angry c) serious d) empty

15 The children have gone .... in the sea.
a) packing b) sinking c) paddling d) drawing

(B) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think that nobody was sailing the Hispaniola?
....

2. Do you think that Jim was lucky when he went closer to the ship? How?
....

3. Why do you think that there was sand and mud on the ship?
....

4. Why do you think Jim agreed to help Hands on the ship?
....

5. If you were Jim, would you trust Hands? Why? Why not?
....

6. Hands was a deceitful man. Do you agree with this or not? Prove your opinion.
....

7. Why do you think that Jim agreed to get Hands water although he doubted that he was planning to do something?
....

8. Hands was an ungrateful man. Do you agree or not? Prove your opinion.
....

9. "I went downstairs, made a lot of noise, then took off my shoes and went quietly to another part of the ship." What does this tell you about Jim?
....

10. The pirate Hands was very strong. Can you give an example of this?
....

11. Do you think that Jim was really going to kill Hands? Why? Why not?
....

12. Do you think that all the pirates were dead? Why? Why not?
....

13. Why do you think that Jim was lucky when he was fighting with Hands?
....

14. What do you think Jim thought about Hands at first?
....

15. A wave helped Jim on the Hispaniola, but he was clever enough to help himself. Do you think he was really clever?
....

Chapter (10)

Key Vocabulary

adventure	مغامرة	mean	يعنى/يقصد
alive	على قيد الحياة	realise	يدرك
anchor rope	حبل المرساة	remain	يبقى
frighten	يخيف	rule	قاعدة
gang	عصابة	save	ينقذ
guard	حارس	surprised	مندهش
join	ينضم	torch	كشاف
kill	يقتل	trap	فخ
latest	احدث/آخر	trial	محاكمة
leader	زعيم	unusual	غير عادى
lose	يخسر	waste	يسرف/يبذر

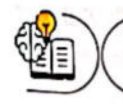
Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at last	أخيرًا/فى النهاية	look round	ينظر حول
be back	يعود	ready for	جاهز لـ
be more of a man than any of you	أكثر رجولة من أى واحد منكم	run away	يهرب
be trapped	يقع فى فخ	run into	يصطدم بـ
come down	ينزل	stay on your own	يبقى وحيدًا
hold on	يتمسك بـ/يتشبث بـ	take back	يسترجع
look out	ينظر خارجًا	care about	يهتم بـ

Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: At last, I was back on the island. The ship was safe from the pirates, ready for our men to go back to sea. I looked forward to telling my friends about my latest adventure and started to walk back across the island. I remembered the map, so I knew how to return to the place where I had met Ben Gun for the first time. As I continued, it was very dark. It was difficult for me to find my way, but the light of the moon helped me. When I was near the fort, I went more slowly. I did not want my friends to think I was a pirate. Suddenly, I saw a red light through trees. What was it? Then I saw that there was a big fire next to the fort. I thought that this was unusual, as Captain Smollett was always very careful not to waste wood for the fire. I quietly went back inside the dark fort, and I was very pleased to hear the men inside talking quietly. However, I realised that they were not good guards because nobody saw me return. I was about to climb into my bed when I heard the words, "Who is it? Who is it?" I realised that it was Captain Flint, Silver's parrot! Everyone in the room woke up, and I heard someone call out: "Who's there?" It was Long John Silver! I turned to run away but I ran into a man, who held on to me. I was trapped[1]. "Bring a torch[2], Dick," said Silver. When he returned with a torch, I could see inside the room. I realised that the fort was now full of pirates. Our food was on the table, too, but I could not see any of my friends. Was it possible that they were all dead? There were five pirates standing in the room. Another pirate lay in bed. He looked badly hurt. Silver looked tired. His parrot was on his shoulder, and his clothes were dirty. "So, Jim Hawkins!" said Silver. "It's nice of you to visit us. You don't have to stand up for Jim!" he told his men and they lay down on their beds again. "I knew you were clever," Silver said to me. "I always wanted you to be one of us because I was like you when I was a boy. Now, you can't go back to your friends because they think you've left them. So, unless you want to stay on your own, you'll have to join us now." I was pleased to hear that my friends were still alive[3], but I was not happy to hear that they did not want me anymore. "Now, you don't have to say yes," said Silver.

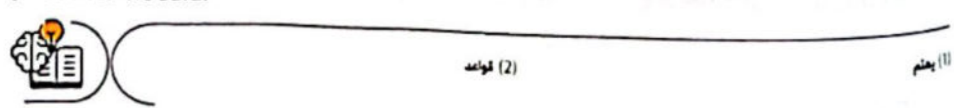
"I can't tell you what to do." "I'll answer you," I said, in a weak voice. "First, I want to know where my friends are." "Yesterday morning," explained Silver, "Dr Livesy came down with a white flag. He told me that the *Hispaniola* was not there anymore. We looked round and he was right! The ship was gone! Then the doctor said that we



(1) محبوس
(2) كشاف
(3) حى

could have the fort. I asked him how many of them were in the fort, and he said there were four, and one of them was hurt. And he said he did not know or care[1] where you were. So here we are. I don't know where they are now." "Do I have to decide now?" I asked. "Yes, you have to decide now," said Silver. "Very well. But there are some things you need to know. First, you have lost your ship, you have lost your treasure and you have lost many of your men. How did you lose them? It was me! I heard your plans on the *Hispaniola* and told Captain Smollett. And I cut the anchor ropes of the ship, and took it to a place that you don't know. I'm not frightened of you! You can kill me if you want, but remember: if you don't kill me, I'll help you at your trial. So, now you have to decide. What will you do with me?" I stopped talking and all the men looked at me angrily. "That was the boy who knew Black Dog in Bristol!" said one of the pirates called Morgan. "And he was the boy who got the map from Billy Bones!" Morgan then stood up with a knife. "Stop!" called Silver. "Do you think that you're the captain now? You do as I say!" Morgan and the other pirates were quiet. "I like this boy," Silver continued. "I've never seen a better boy than him. He's more of a man than any of you."

The other pirates did not look happy and they started to talk quietly to each other. "What are you saying?" said Silver. "We don't like all of your rules[2]," said one of the pirates. "We're going to talk together without you. You can't stop us." Soon, all the men left the room, and only Silver and I remained. "Listen Jim," said Silver. "I don't think that they want me to be the captain anymore. But I can look after you, if you look after me." "Do you mean that they want to kill you?" "They don't need me now that I don't have the ship. But if you save me, I can save you." I was surprised to hear this. He was the leader of the gang of pirates, and now he wanted the help of a boy. "I'll do what I can," I told him. "You're a good boy!" he said. "I know you've got the ship safe somewhere. I don't know how you did it, but you did. Remember, I'm now with Mr Trelawney and his men. So, why did the doctor give me the map, Jim?" He saw that I was surprised. "Yes, he gave it to me. He must have a plan, you know. Let's hope it's a good one." I looked out of the fort and saw the pirates talking in a group. One of the men had some paper and a knife and the others were watching him. Then they started to walk back towards us. "They're coming!" I told Silver. "Let them come!" he said.



(1) يهتم (2) قواعد

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. What condition is the ship in when Jim returns to the island?
The ship is safe from the pirates.
2. Who did Jim look forward to telling about his latest adventure?
Jim looked forward to telling his friends.
3. What did Jim remember to help him return to where he met Ben Gunn?
Jim remembered the map.
4. What did Jim see through the trees near the fort?
Jim saw a red light.
5. How did Jim describe his approach to the fort to avoid being seen as a pirate?
He went more slowly near the fort.
6. Who interrupted Jim's attempt to climb into his bed inside the dark fort?
Long John Silver interrupted Jim.
7. How many pirates did Jim see inside the fort when he returned?
Jim saw five pirates inside the fort.
8. What was the condition حالة of the pirate lying in bed in the fort?
The pirate in bed looked badly hurt.
9. How did Jim describe the physical state الحالة البدنية of Long John Silver in the passage?
Silver looked tired, his parrot was on his shoulder, and his clothes were dirty.
10. According to Silver, what happened to the Hispaniola yesterday morning?
Dr. Livesy came with a white flag and informed Silver that the Hispaniola was gone.
11. What confession اعتراف did Jim make regarding losing the ship, treasure and men?
Jim confessed that he played a role in losing the ship, treasure, and men.
12. How did Jim explain his role in the loss of the ship?
He claimed that he heard Silver's plans on the Hispaniola, told Captain Smollett, and cut the anchor ropes.
13. What surprising information did Silver reveal about the map that Dr. Livesy gave him?
Silver revealed that Dr. Livesy gave him the map and suggested that the doctor must have had a plan.
14. How did Silver describe Jim when defending him from the other pirates?
Silver described Jim as a clever boy, saying, "I've never seen a better boy than him."

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. What do you think is the unusual observation ملاحظة غير معتادة that Jim made about the fire next to the fort?
   Jim found it unusual, as Captain Smollett was careful not to waste wood on the fire.
2. What do you think Jim felt as he approached اقترب the fort, knowing there were pirates inside?
   I think he felt a mix of fear and worry as he approached such a dangerous place.
3. Why do you think Jim moved slowly when he reached the fort?
   I think he didn't want his friends to think he was one of the pirates.
4. What do you think of of the red light which Jim saw?
   It was the big fire next to the fort.
5. Do you think there were good guards in the fort? Why?
   No, because no one realised that Jim had returned until he reached his bed.
6. Why do you think Jim thought that his friends were all dead?
   Because he didn't find any of them in the fort when he returned. There were only pirates.
7. Jim had two different feelings when he realised that his friends were still alive. What do you think these feelings are?
   He was pleased to know that they were still alive, but he was sad to know that they didn't want him anymore.
8. Jim was brave while talking to Silver. Discuss
   He was very brave, as he told him that he wasn't afraid of him and he could kill him if he wanted.
9. Why do you think Jim caused the mutiny of the pirates against Silver?
   When Jim confessed that he was the one who destroyed their plans, they were angry and wanted to kill him, but Silver stopped them, so they were very angry at their leader.
10. What do you think of the general atmosphere الجو العام as Silver says, "Let them come!"?
    The atmosphere is tense متوتر, indicating Silver's confidence in facing the approaching group of pirates.

Practice



Novel Exercises Chapter (10)

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. As they wanted to understand the lesson well, they .... silent throughout the lesson.
   a) contained b) realised c) remained d) wasted
2. The police are looking for the .... who robbed the bank and escaped.
   a) crew b) staff c) band d) gang
3. He was the main suspect, but he was set free after a fair ....
   a) trial b) adventure c) triangle d) try
4. Most children like reading and listening to .... stories that make them excited.
   a) comic b) adventure c) dramatic d) depressing
5. We all should cooperate to .... the factory from being closed.
   a) save b) safe c) trap d) discourage
6. The door closed suddenly behind me and I had no keys, so I was ....
   a) killed b) trapped c) tubed d) clapped
7. Many of our young men .... a lot about old people and try to help them.
   a) take b) have c) look after d) care
8. I couldn't see because of the darkness, so I asked my son for a/an ....
   a) anchor b) gang c) torch d) trench
9. My son said that he didn't .... to injure his friend. It was an accident.
   a) main b) purpose c) trap d) mean
10. There was a terrible crash, but we all were happy to find all people ....
    a) dead b) live c) alive d) died
11. The .... say that you can't park your car here.
    a) rules b) roles c) ruler d) rolls
12. There was nobody home, so I had to move the furniture ....
    a) lonely b) on own c) on my own d) my self
13. My friend .... a lot of money on cigarettes, and I want to persuade him to stop.
    a) earns b) misses c) faces d) wastes
14. He was driving fast and so the car ran .... a tree.
    a) in b) into c) away d) out
15. Surprisingly, the little child was still .... although he had been trapped under the destroyed building for a week. (Longman)
    a) killed b) dead c) escaped d) alive

(B) Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think the light of the moon helped Jim?

2. Jim thought that Captain Smollett wasn't the one who made the fire. Why do you think Jim said that?

3. Why do you think Silver wanted Jim to be one of his men?

4. According to Silver's opinion, Jim couldn't return to his friends. Why do you think he thought like that?

5. Jim caused many troubles for Silver and the pirates. Do you think he intended that?

6. Why do you think the pirates were angry at Jim?

7. What do you think helped Jim find his way in the dark to the fort?

8. Do you think the pirates really wanted to kill Jim?

9. There was a win-win agreement between Jim and Silver. Do you think it was good for the group?

10. Why do you think the pirates didn't need Silver?

11. Although Silver was the leader of the gang of pirates, he wanted the help of a boy. What do you think of Silver's character?

12. Do you think the doctor gave Silver the map because he had a plan?

13. What did you think of the character of Silver when he said, "Let them come!"?

14. Why do you think Silver admires Jim so much?

15. If Silver had his ship and treasure, do you think the pirates would be angry at him?

Chapter (11)

Vocabulary

agreement	اتفاقية/اتفاق	nod	إيماءة/إشارة
arrest	يقبض على	patient	مريض/صبور
follow	يتبع	promise	وعد/يعد
good	الخير	remind	يُذكّر
jump	قفزة	trust	يثق في
malaria	ملاريا (مرض)	useful	مفيد
negotiate	يتفاوض	voice	صوت بشري

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

come to agreement	يتوصل إلى اتفاق	stay safe	يأمن
except for	باستثناء	try a trick on	يجرب حيلة على
feel well	يشعر بحالة جيدة	wake up	يستيقظ
keep close	يبقى قريبًا	walk away	يمشي بعيدًا
look after	يعتني بـ	walk forward	يمشي إلى الأمام
sound different	يبدو مختلفًا	walk in through	يمشي من خلال
stay close	يبقى قريبًا	with wonder	باندهاش

Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: The pirates walked in through the door. One of the men was holding a piece of paper, and he nervously walked forward to give it to Silver. Silver read it. "So, I'm not the captain now, is that it?" he said. "Can I have the torch for a minute, so I can read it better?"

"Don't try your tricks on us," said one of the pirates, called George. "I'm still the captain until you tell me why I shouldn't be," said Silver. "We can tell you," said George. "First, your plans haven't worked. Second, you let Trelawney and his men leave the fort, and we're sure that they have a plan. Third, you wouldn't let us follow them. And fourth, there's the boy!" "Is that all?" asked Silver. "That's enough, isn't it?" said George. "I'll answer each reason," said Silver. "First, who didn't do what I asked them to do? Anderson, Hands and you, George! If we are arrested[1] when we return to England, it is because of those people! Second, we have a doctor on the island. He's important because some of us are very ill at the moment. The doctor and I came to an agreement[2] so that he would help us. And the boy? He'll be useful if we need to negotiate[3]. And what about reason three? Well, this is why we didn't follow them!" he continued, and showed them the treasure map. I was very surprised and I did not understand why the doctor had given the map to him. The pirates, however, looked at it with wonder.

"That's Flint's map!" said George. "But how are we to take his treasure home if we don't have a ship?" "Listen, George," said Silver. "You lost my boat, but I can find the treasure. So, who should be captain now?" "Silver's right," said Morgan, and the other pirates agreed. Silver was still the captain. The pirates now seemed happy, except for George. Silver made him guard the fort all night while the other men laughed and sang. I lay down and thought about Silver. I understood that he was very clever. He knew how to be friends with all the pirates, at the same time as only thinking about himself. He would do and say anything to stay safe. The next morning, a voice woke us all up (and I mean all of us, even George, the guard). It was Dr Livesy calling us. I was very happy to hear him, but also worried. I had left my friends and now I was with Silver's gang. What would Dr Livesy think? "Good morning, Doctor," said Silver. "Come in! George will open the door for you. We've got a surprise for you, too!" "Do you mean Jim?" asked Dr Livesy. He looked surprised as he came near us. "That's right," said Silver.

(1) يقبض على
(2) اتفاق
(3) يتفاوض

The doctor did not speak for some time. Then he said, "Let me see your patients." He walked into the fort and, with a small nod[1] to me, walked up to the ill pirates. He talked to them as if they were any English patient, although he knew they were all dangerous men.

"I hope you took your medicine?" he said to George. "Yes, sir, I did," he replied. "Good, because now I'm a pirate's doctor, I want to keep you all healthy so we can get you back to England for trial," he said. The pirates looked at each other but they said nothing.

"Dick doesn't feel well," said Morgan. "Let me look at you," the doctor replied. "Yes, you have malaria[2]. That's what happens when you sleep outside on an island like this. I'm surprised that a clever man like Silver didn't realise." He gave Dick some medicine, then said, "Now I'd like to talk to the boy, please." "No!" said George.

"Be quiet!' shouted Silver. "Doctor, you've been kind to help us with our medicine, so you can talk to the boy. But first, he must promise[3] not to run away." I agreed. "Good. Now you can go outside, doctor, and you can talk to the boy through the window. He can stay inside," said Silver. When the doctor went outside, the other pirates told Silver that they were not happy that the doctor could talk to me. Silver reminded them they did not know where the treasure was yet. They needed my help, and perhaps the doctor's help as well, until the time was right. Silver took me to a window where I could talk to the doctor. When he knew the pirates could not hear, he spoke to the doctor, but he sounded different. "Tell the others that I helped you, doctor," he said. "The boy will tell you how I saved him, too. If you help me, you will also help the boy stay safe." "I think you're frightened!" said Dr Livesy. "I'm not frightened," said Silver, "but I know you're a good man and you'll see the good in me. Now I'll let you and Jim talk." Silver walked away and sat down, where he could not hear us. "Jim, what happened? Why did you leave us when we needed you?" the doctor asked me. I felt very bad and started to cry. "I'm sorry, doctor! I was wrong. They were going to kill me, but Silver saved me. I must stay here now." "No," said the doctor. "You can't stay here. One jump and you're out of the fort, and we can run." "I can't," I said. "Silver trusts me now. But if they hurt me, I will have to tell them where the ship is. Because I got the ship! It's in the north of the island, half on a beach." "You've got the ship!" said the doctor. I quickly told him my story. "You've saved our lives many times on this journey," said the doctor. He then turned to Silver. "It'll be dangerous to look for that treasure, Silver," he said. "Don't try to find it." "But I can only save my life and the boy's life if I find it," Silver replied. "OK, then keep the boy close to you. If you need help, shout. Goodbye, Jim," he said, and left the fort. "We can look for the treasure now, Jim," said Silver. "You stay close to me. We'll look after each other."



(1) إيماءة
(2) مرض الملاريا
(3) يعد وعداً

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. Why did one of the pirates nervously approach Silver with a piece of paper?
To inform him that he was no longer the captain.
2. Why did Silver show the treasure map to the other pirates?
To prove to the pirates that he could lead them to Flint's treasure, emphasising his value as their captain.
3. Why did Jim feel conflicted when talking to Dr Livesy?
Because he left his friends to join Silver's gang, and he was unsure of how Dr Livesy would react to his decision.
4. What information did Jim share with Dr Livesy about the ship's location?
Jim revealed that he had the ship, and it was located in the north of the island, half on the beach.
5. How did Silver respond to Dr Livesy's advice not to search for the treasure?
Silver argued that finding the treasure was essential for his and Jim's safety and claimed he could only save their lives by locating it.
6. What condition did Silver impose on Jim during the conversation with the doctor?
Jim had to promise not to run away during the conversation with the doctor.
7. How did Silver manipulate تلاعب بـ the doctor when they were alone?
Silver asked the doctor to tell the others that he helped him, emphasising that it would also help Jim stay safe.
8. What did Silver want in return for helping the doctor and Jim?
Silver wanted the doctor to acknowledge his assistance, believing it would help him gain favour and safety.
9. What did the doctor say to George regarding his health?
The doctor asked George if he took his medicine, emphasising the importance of keeping the pirates healthy for the journey back to England.
10. How did the doctor respond to Silver's claim that finding the treasure is essential for their safety?
The doctor acknowledged the danger, but advised Silver to keep Jim close and help if needed.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Do you think Silver wanted the torch to read better or for a trick?
I think it was a trick from Silver.
2. Silver could answer each reason for George. What does this show about his character?
This shows that it was a tricky character.
3. Why do you think the doctor gave Silver the map?
I think he had a plan.
4. Why do you think all the pirates were happy after seeing the map, except for George?
As George wanted to be the leader of the gang, but Silver destroyed his plan.
5. In your opinion, why did Silver make George guard the fort all night?
As a punishment as he wanted to be the leader of the gang.
6. Silver knew how to be friends with all the pirates. What does this show about his character?
This shows that he had all the qualities of a good leader.
7. Why do you think Silver wanted Dr Livesy to tell the others that he helped him and saved him?
Perhaps he wanted them to trust him.
8. Silver told Dr Livesy that he was a good man. Do you agree with him? Why?
Yes, I agree with him, because he really wanted to help them not the pirates.
9. Jim refused to run away with Dr Livesy because Silver trusted him. What does this show about his character?
This shows that he was acting as a man who had principles.
10. Why do you think George didn't want Dr Livesy to talk to Jim?
Maybe he was afraid that Jim would escape.





Novel Exercises
Chapter (11)

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I asked Marwan if he wanted a sweet and he .... his head to say yes.
a) pushed b) took c) nodded d) jumped

2 My mother .... me that I should take my medicine to be better.
a) remembered b) reminded c) warned d) avoided

3 The thief tried a .... on the old lady to rob her but in vain.
a) trust b) truck c) trick d) triumph

4 I couldn't hear what he said, so I asked him to raise his ....
a) voice b) sound c) shoulder d) hand

5 Do you think Ukraine and Russia can .... to end the war between them? (Longman)
a) compete b) quarrel c) negotiate d) forgive

6 Eventually, the two countries could reach a/an .... to end the war.
a) agreement b) disagreement c) call d) greeting

7 A good teacher must be clever, honest, knowledgeable and ....
a) patient b) dishonest
c) impatient d) rich

8 This shop is open every day from 8 to 11 .... for Friday.
a) expect b) accept c) expert d) except

9 My brother warned me not to .... Ali as he is a big liar.
a) trace b) trust c) rust d) contrast

10 Marwa is a fashionable woman who always .... the latest fashions.
a) flows b) unfollows c) follows d) chases

11 Finally, the two robbers were .... and sent to prison. (Longman)
a) amused b) arrested c) set free d) rested

12 To be reliable, you should never break a/an .... you give.
a) exception b) promise c) suggestion d) reminder

13 The police .... the men after they had stolen some phones from a shop.
a) forget b) forgave c) rewarded d) arrested

14 Before going shopping, I keep reminding my children to .... close.
a) tie b) lie c) run d) stay

15 Vegetables and fruit are .... for our health as they contain vitamins.
a) close b) useful c) patient d) tricky

(B) Answer the following questions:

1. Do you agree with Jim not to escape with Dr Livesy? Why?
....
2. How do you think Silver uses his words and reasoning to maintain leadership among the pirates?
....
3. Do you think Silver's responses to George were persuasive? Why?
....
4. Do you think Dr Livesy is right when he treats the criminals?
....
5. What do you think Jim felt when he decided to stay with the pirates?
....
6. The treasure map affected the pirates' actions and decisions. Do you think that's right?
....
7. When Jim heard the voice of Dr Livesy calling, he had a mix of feelings. What do you think they were?
....
8. Why do you think Dr Livesy talked to the ill pirates as any patients although he knew they were all dangerous men?
....
9. Why do you think Silver agreed that Dr Livesy could talk to Jim?
....
10. When Silver knew that the pirates couldn't hear, he spoke to the doctor, but sounded different. Why do you think?
....
11. Dr Livesy was an honest doctor. Do you agree?
....
12. Silver thinks that he was right when he reached an agreement with the doctor. Do you agree?
....
13. George was afraid of Silver's tricks. Why do you think?
....
14. Do you think that the doctor was right to give Silver the map? Why?
....
15. The doctor wanted Jim to escape, but Jim refused. What does this show about the relationship between them?
....

Chapter (12)

Vocabulary

attach	يربط/يرفق	point	يشير
cave	كهف	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
crew	طاقم السفينة	smile	يبتسم
dig	يحفر	spade	جاروف/ مِجْرَفَة
drink	مشروب	supplies	مؤن
excited	فرح/منفعل	terrible	رهيب
ground	أرض	useless	عديم الفائدة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

call out	ينادي	look worried	يبدو قلقًا
find out	يكتشف	play a trick	يخدع
go home	يعود إلى الوطن	pointing north	مشيرًا إلى اتجاه الشمال
get into	يدخل	slow down	يبطئ
look tired	يبدو متعبًا		

Chapter Text

Jim Hawkins: Silver went back to the pirates and said, "I've found out that the doctor's men have the ship. I don't know where it is, but when we find the treasure, we'll find the ship. That will give us the advantage. We'll keep Jim with us before then. When we go home, we can leave him on the island." The pirates looked happy with this news, but it worried me. What was Silver really planning? When he found the treasure, was he going to help Dr Livesy and Mr Trelawney or these terrible pirates? I did not know. We all left the fort. The pirates were carrying supplies, spades and their weapons. We then got into the small boats and looked at the map to see where we should go. We took the boats down a river, then we left them and walked through some tall trees. The pirates attached[1] me to Silver with a rope so that I could not escape, and we walked up a hill. We walked for many hours. It was very hot, but this side of the island was very beautiful, with many flowers and birds. Then we heard a shout. Morgan was looking at something with a frightened face. It was the skeleton[2] of a man lying on the ground[3]. "The skeleton is pointing[4] north!" said Morgan. "He is," said Silver. "I think this was one of Flint's games. He killed the man and put him there." "Flint was a terrible man," said Morgan. The pirates looked worried and when we continued, they were much quieter. Suddenly, we heard a voice singing from the trees in front of us.

"That sounds like Flint!" said George. "Flint's dead," said Silver. "It is someone playing a trick." Then the voice called out, "McGraw, bring me a drink, please!" "That was what Flint said, just before he died!" said Morgan. Now the pirates all looked very frightened.

"Listen men," said Silver. "There's a lot of treasure near here. I don't think that was Flint.

I think it was Ben Gun." "I thought he was dead, too, but I'm not frightened of him," said George. The pirates looked happier and continued walking, although Dick looked tired and ill. Soon we saw a very tall tree. The tree was on our map and we knew that we were now close to the treasure. I could see that all the pirates were excited. Silver, too, looked different. His eyes looked crazy and dangerous, and I thought he would do anything to go home safely with the treasure. The pirates all ran to the bottom of the tree. George was in front of them, but he suddenly stopped with a cry. "Look!" he said. We saw what he was pointing at. Near the bottom of the tree, there was a big hole in the ground. Someone had been there before us. The treasure was gone! The pirates said nothing, but I could see that Silver was already making a plan. "Take this, and be ready for trouble," he said quietly, and he gave me a gun. Then the pirates all jumped into the hole and started digging with their spades. Perhaps there was treasure still there. Morgan found a gold coin and held it up for the others to see. "One coin? You told us there was seven hundred thousand pounds here,



(1) يربط
(2) هيكل عظمي
(3) الأرض
(4) مشيرًا

Silver!" shouted George angrily. "You knew about this, didn't you?" The pirates looked very angry. They climbed out of the other side of the hole, looking dirty and hot. "Let's get them, men!" said George. Suddenly, there was the sound of guns from the trees. Two of the pirates fell down and the other three started to run. We were safe! Dr Livesy, Gray and Ben Gun came out from the trees. "Thank you, doctor," said Silver. "You saved us. And look, it's Ben Gun!" Ben Gun said hello to Silver, but I could see that he was frightened of him.

As we walked back to the boats, we heard how Ben Gun had helped us. Ben Gun had dug up the treasure and put it in a **cave** in the north of the island before we arrived on the *Hispaniola*. Ben Gun told all of this to Dr Livesy, when the doctor gave him some cheese. The doctor then thought of a plan. He gave the map to Silver because he knew it was useless[1]. Then he took his friends up to the cave, where Ben Gun had supplies as well as the treasure. When he knew that Silver was taking me and the men to look for the treasure, the doctor came back with Ben Gun and Gray. To slow the pirates down, Ben Gun sang a song to frighten them. This had given the others time to wait for the pirates by the hole. After a few hours, we reached the coast again. Ben Gun helped Gray to destroy one of the boats so that the other pirates could not use it. We took the other boat around the island. After three miles, I was surprised to see the *Hispaniola*! The wind had blown it from the beach and it was sailing empty on the sea. We helped Gray to get onto the ship so that he could look after it, and we continued to the beach. We then climbed the hill to Ben Gun's cave, where Trelawney was looking after Captain Smollett. "Silver," Trelawney said when he saw him.

"You are a pirate and a thief, but the doctor says that you have helped us. I must thank you." Silver said nothing, but he smiled. Inside the big cave, Captain Smollett was lying by a fire. Behind him, I could see lots of coins and gold. It was Flint's treasure. The next morning, we began to take the treasure down the hill to the boat. It was heavy work, and it took us days to move all the coins and gold. We knew there were still three pirates on the island. We looked for them all the time, but we did not see them again. We decided to leave the island without them, but we left some food and medicine. It was a difficult journey back on the *Hispaniola* because the crew was so small. Captain Smollett lay on his bed and told us what to do. After a few days, we reached a town in South America, where we went to find more people for our crew. When we returned to the *Hispaniola* later that day, Ben Gun told us that Silver had taken a boat and some money. He was gone, but nobody was sad about that. With a bigger crew, it was easier to return to Bristol. The treasure helped us all back in England. Captain Smollett stopped working and Gray decided to buy his own ship. Ben Gun quickly spent all of his money. I have a comfortable life now. I often think about the island and Long John Silver, but I never saw him again.



(1) عديم الفائدة

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. Why did Silver go back to the pirates?
   To inform the pirates that the doctor's men had the ship, and he believed finding the treasure would give them an advantage.
2. What worried the narrator about Silver's plan?
   The narrator was concerned about Silver's true intentions—whether he would be with the doctor's men or the pirates when the treasure was found.
3. Why were the pirates quiet when they saw the skeleton?
   The pirates were worried because the skeleton seemed to be pointing north, possibly part of Captain Flint's mysterious games.
4. Who did the pirates think was singing in the trees?
   The pirates thought it might be Flint, but Silver dismissed it, suggesting it was someone playing a trick.
5. Why did the pirates become less frightened after hearing the singing?
   Silver claimed it was not Flint but likely Ben Gun, which reassured the pirates, making them less fearful.
6. What did the pirates discover near the tall tree?
   The pirates found a big hole in the ground near the tree, indicating that someone had been there before them and that the treasure was missing.
7. How did Silver react when the treasure was found to be gone?
   Silver quickly devised a plan, handing a gun to the narrator and preparing for trouble.
8. Who came to the rescue when the Jim and Silver were in trouble?
   Dr Livesy, Gray, and Ben Gun emerged خرجوا from the trees and saved them by firing guns at the approaching pirates.
9. What did Ben Gun reveal about the treasure?
   Ben Gun had dug up the treasure and stored it in a cave in the north of the island before the arrival of the Hispaniola.
10. Why did the doctor give the useless map to Silver?
    The doctor gave the map to Silver as part of a plan to mislead him since Ben Gun had already moved the treasure.
11. How did Ben Gun help delay the pirates?
    Ben Gun sang a song to frighten the pirates, giving the doctor and others time to wait for them by the hole.
12. How did they prevent the remaining pirates from using a boat?
    Ben Gun and Gray destroyed one of the boats, making it unusable for the other pirates.
13. What happened to the Hispaniola during their absence?
    The wind had blown the Hispaniola from the beach, and it was sailing empty on the sea when they returned.

14. Who did they find looking after Captain Smollett in Ben Gun's cave?
Trelawney.
15. What did the doctor say to Silver when they met in the cave?
The doctor acknowledged Silver's assistance despite being a pirate and a thief and thanked him.
16. What did they find behind Captain Smollett in the cave?
Behind Captain Smollett, they found lots of coins and gold, which was Flint's treasure.
17. How did they transport the treasure from the cave to the boat?
It took them days of heavy work to move all the coins and gold down the hill to the boat.
18. How did the treasure impact the lives of the characters after returning to England?
The treasure provided a comfortable life for the characters—Captain Smollett stopped working, Gray bought his own ship, and Ben Gun spent all his money.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Why do you think Long John Silver decided to reveal information about the ship being in the hands of the doctor's men to the pirates?
Long John Silver likely shared this information to maintain trust among the pirates.
2. What do you think is the significance of the pointing skeleton?
The pointing skeleton could be a message from Captain Flint, guiding the pirates in a particular direction.
3. Why do you think the narrator is worried about Silver's plan, and what aspects of Silver's character might contribute to this concern?
The narrator's worry could come from uncertainty about Silver's loyalty.
4. What do you think is the emotional impact on the pirates when they discover the treasure is missing?
The pirates likely feel shocked and disappointed.
5. Why do you think Ben Gun played both hindering and helping roles in the events, and what motivations might drive his actions?
Ben Gun's actions could be motivated by a desire to hinder the pirates.
6. What do you think is the purpose behind the doctor giving Silver a useless map?
The doctor's decision to give Silver a useless map is likely to mislead the pirates.
7. Why do you think Captain Smollett guides the crew from his bed, and what does this reveal about his character?
Captain Smollett's guidance from his bed shows leadership qualities.
8. What do you think motivates Silver to give the narrator a gun?
Silver may give the narrator a gun for trust or strategic reasons.
9. Why do you think the pirates react differently to the singing voice in the trees?
The pirates' varied reactions may be influenced by fear.
10. What do you think of the characters' decisions to retire, buy a ship, or spend money reveal about their individual desires and motivations?
The characters' choices reflect their unique aspirations طموحات and motivations دوافع.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Before you go climbing, it is important to .... yourself to the rope.
a) put b) attach c) make d) take

2 It was raining on the mountain, so we waited in a .... until it stopped.
a) cave b) river c) pool d) wave

3 We should know that before planting a tree, we need to .... a hole.
a) put b) dig c) catch d) win

4 My sons took their .... and buckets to the beach to play there.
a) sides b) spiders c) spades d) spies

5 When we received the .... news of his father's death, we couldn't stop weeping.
a) terrified b) satisfactory c) terrible d) terrific

6 There was a storm and nearly all the .... of the ship drowned.
a) staff b) pilots c) servants d) crew

7 As he had a .... on his face, I know that he has passed the exam.
a) smell b) small c) spell d) smile

8 Poor countries are always in bad need of .... of food.
a) applies b) supplies c) spades d) replies

9 He didn't eat for too long and he became like a ....
a) dinosaur b) skeleton c) spade d) plump

10 You shouldn't waste your time on this website as it is full of .... information.
a) useful b) beneficial c) used d) useless

11 There are no buildings in this area because the .... is too soft to build on.
a) ground b) deck c) top d) ceiling

12 The girls were .... tricks on their classmates during their school journey.
a) making b) doing c) playing d) having

13 If you don't know the English word, you can .... at the food you want.
a) mark b) sign c) suggest d) point

14 You're driving so fast; you must .... down or you will have an accident.
a) sit b) break c) fall d) slow

15 My room at our new house is large and ....
a) comfort b) comfortable c) uncomfortable d) relaxed

(B) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think the doctor chose to share the useless map with Silver?

....

2. What might be the consequences of giving Silver a useless map?

....

3. What do you think motivates the characters to leave food and medicine for the remaining pirates on the island?

....

4. Why do you think Captain Smollett decided to provide guidance from his bed?

....

5. Captain Smollett decided to provide guidance from his bed. What might be the impact on the crew ?

....

6. What do you think motivates the characters to continue searching for the remaining pirates on the island?

....

7. How does the decision of searching for the remaining pirates on the island reflect?

....

8. Why do you think the characters react with shock and disappointment upon discovering the missing treasure near the tall tree?

....

9. What do you think Silver's ambiguous smile upon being thanked by Trelawney shows?

....

10. Why do you think the characters chose to destroy one of the boats?

....

11. What do you think motivates the characters to take the other boat around the island?

....

12. Why do you think Silver claims the singing voice is not Flint but likely Ben Gun?

....

13. Why do you think the pirates didn't run away but continued when they heard some frightening voices?

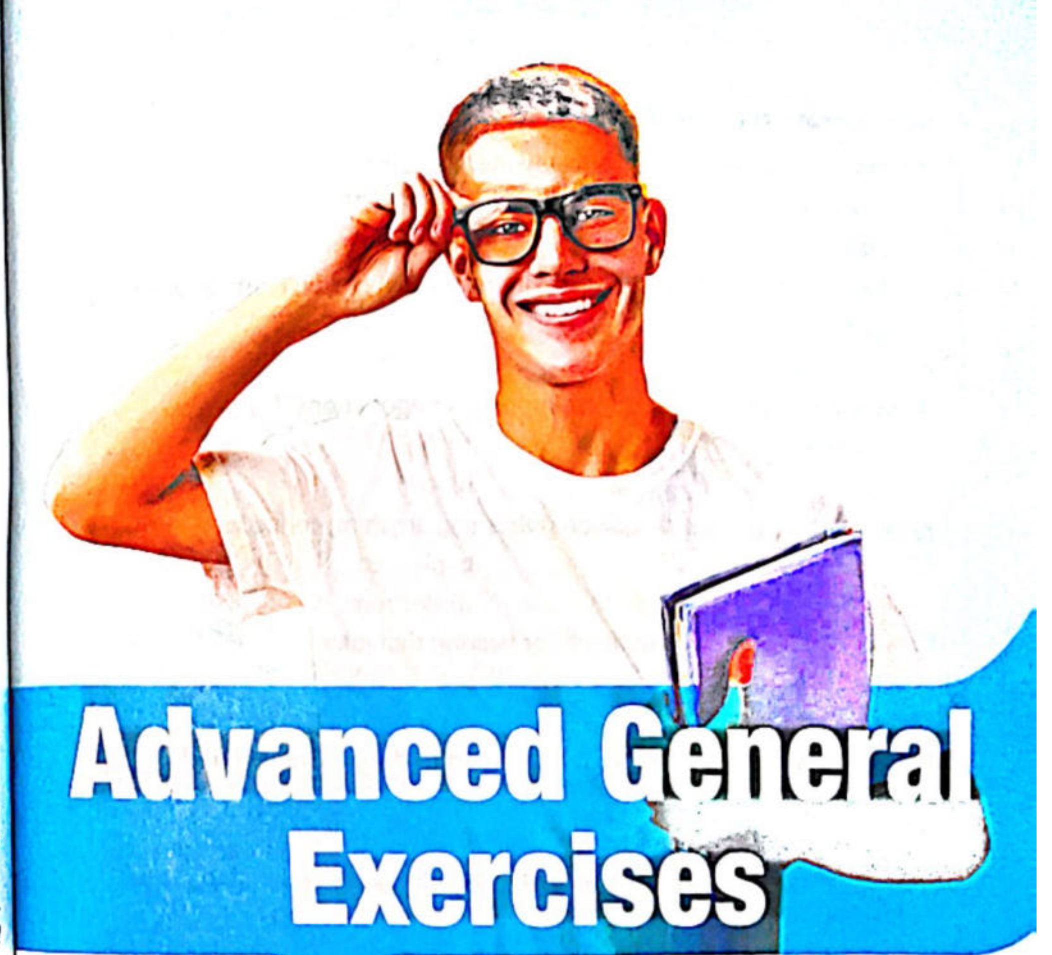
....

14. The happiness of the pirates changed into a shock. Do you think they deserve that?

....

15. What is your opinion about the character of Silver?

....



Advanced General Exercises

Advanced General Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Don't .... a word of this to anyone. It's a secret.
a) replace b) listen
c) talk d) breathe

2 They were completely .... up in the film. They didn't notice I was there.
a) left b) evacuated
c) wrapped d) soiled

3 We're hoping to .... up the important negotiations this week.
a) explain b) roll
c) wrap d) soil

4 There is a/an .... ban حظر on publishing anything concerning the case.
a) blanket b) planned
c) damaged d) electronic

5 I couldn't .... my laughter after hearing that joke.
a) contain b) include
c) evacuate d) spread

6 The hills were covered with a .... of snow during the winter.
a) blanket b) cloth
c) germ d) pile

7 These lines of the poem are somewhat hard to .... I need to ask my teacher.
a) interact b) interpret
c) investigate d) report

8 They made a plan to .... their supervisor because they don't like his policy.
a) relieve b) elect
c) reward d) remove

9 The company .... a profit in the first quarter after the new development.
a) returned b) reflected
c) realised d) restored

10 The crew .... the boat and tied it to the pole.
a) wrapped b) helped
d) rolled d) beached

11 It is a smoke-free area. This means that you .... smoke here.
a) don't have to b) can't
c) can d) must

12 I needn't buy a uniform for my school. The school says it's not ....
a) unnecessary b) forbidden
c) obligatory d) must

13 People who are drunk ثملون mustn't drive cars. It's ....
a) necessary b) prohibition
c) allowed d) forbidden

14 .... got to do all these reports in only one day?
a) Do you b) Must you
c) Have you d) Can you

15 The meal was for free. You .... for it. You should have asked for your money back.
a) didn't need to pay b) needn't pay
c) didn't have to pay d) needn't have paid

16 You .... him. He was in need of help, but you let him down.
a) should be helped b) ought to have helped
c) could have helped d) must have helped

17 You .... have high English level to pass the course.
a) mustn't b) don't need
c) don't have d) don't have to

18 We can go to school and use the library on Saturday afternoons if you like. But we .... It's not urgent.
a) mustn't b) don't have to
c) can't d) don't used to

19 I .... watching TV at the time of exams.
a) am not allowed to b) am banned
c) am prohibited d) am forbidden from

20 All the work .... before 10 o'clock yesterday.
a) should do b) shouldn't be done
c) should have done d) should have been done





Unit (8)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Her high heels .... across the wooden floor, and so we knew she was coming.
a) licked b) clicked
c) locked d) voiced

2 The animal or plant that is produced from two different types is called a ....
a) highline b) hybird
c) hybrid d) mix

3 The hotel has been a great success under the new manager's ....
a) direction b) protection
c) pressure d) exception

4 The disease is .... from one person to another through the air.
a) communicated b) translated
c) pumped d) contacted

5 In this report, the manager laid .... on the need for more training for the employees.
a) pressure b) stress
c) press d) strength

6 Please, don't enter the classroom while there is a class in ....
a) advance b) develop
c) progress d) conflict

7 The minister didn't like the .... way the interviewer was talking to him. He asked him to be more formal.
a) salty b) global
c) stressful d) familiar

8 A visit by the President of the USA is .... for the next month.
a) argued b) projected
c) devised d) lead

9 The manager tried to .... the conversation away from the subject of money.
a) put b) steer
c) click d) run

10 Drawing and writing can be a/an .... for expressing your feelings and ideas.
a) vehicle b) obstacle
c) miracle d) marvel

11 If the money he had .... enough, he would have built a new hospital.
a) has been b) had
c) had been d) had to

12 If I had my hair cut, I .... to the party.
a) would have gone b) wouldn't have gone
c) would go d) will go

13 If he had frozen food, he .... it at the moment.
a) wouldn't be eating b) won't eat
c) wouldn't eat d) would have eaten

14 .... reading is considered my favourite hobby, I won't buy all these books.
a) Without b) In case of
c) If d) Unless

15 They will build a new villa if ....
a) needs b) is needed
c) need d) needed

16 If the salary I had .... enough, I wouldn't have left the job.
a) had b) been
c) would have d) had been

17 If I had broken bones like Samy, I .... abroad to be treated there.
a) would have travelled b) will travel
c) would travel d) travelled

18 If they found a company of their own, I .... to work there.
a) apply b) would apply
c) could apply d) will apply

19 I turned off my mobile phone during the concert .... it rang.
a) unless b) if
c) on condition d) in case

20 If it .... for working hard, she wouldn't have money to buy a new car.
a) wasn't b) weren't
c) hadn't been d) hadn't had



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 No one .... up to breaking the window.
a) forgot b) owned
c) admitted d) confessed

2 Doctors say there is no .... between the drugs he took and his death.
a) communication b) relative
c) contact d) relation

3 He is very rich but too .... to buy a car for his family.
a) generous b) lucky
c) mean d) artistic

4 Hams has a .... sense of humour. She is very funny.
a) keen b) skill
c) mean d) copy

5 I could see the screen clearly as it was at eye ....
a) sight b) level
c) advance d) standard

6 As he was a lazy employee, he deserved to be ....
a) promoted b) fined
c) fired d) quit

7 The war .... a great number of children and broke their dreams.
a) orphaned b) organised
c) recognised d) reformed

8 The boy tried to .... his older brother in all sorts of ways to be like him.
a) measure b) refer
c) copy d) avoid

9 Scientists have often observed this phenomenon, but they cannot .... it.
a) translate b) explain
c) realise d) recognise

10 The .... sunshine blinded us for a moment.
a) brilliant b) dark
c) hidden d) dull

11 I didn't buy the mobile .... I had lost my money.
a) until b) since
c) before d) till

12 My dad .... on business trips to Japan four times last year.
a) used to go b) was going
c) had gone d) went

13 When we finished our meal, Ashraf .... on paying the bill.
a) has insisted b) had been insisting
c) had insisted d) insisted

14 I invited my friend to the party, but later I realised that I .... to give him the address.
a) forgot b) had forgotten
c) has forgotten d) was forgotten

15 While I was on holiday, my camera .... from my hotel room.
a) was disappearing b) had been disappeared
c) disappeared d) had disappeared

16 The bridge .... during the floods but fortunately no one was hurt.
a) was collapsed b) has been collapsed
c) has collapsed d) collapsed

17 The house .... in 2011 belongs to my grandmother.
a) built b) was built
c) which built d) building

18 The thief who tried to get in the house was seen and .... by a fierce dog.
a) chasing b) chased
c) was chasing d) be chased

19 Look! We are being followed by a man .... a big hat.
a) wears b) being worn
c) wearing d) to be wearing

20 .... by his excellent marks, he wanted to join the Faculty of Medicine.
a) Encouraging b) Was encouraged
c) Encouraged d) Were encouraged



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The stolen car was .... by the police for several miles.
a) developed b) reassured
c) pursued d) challenged

2 A couple of boys on their bikes .... down the hill.
a) fasted b) jobbed
c) hiked d) careered

3 All the candidates must be carefully .... before elections.
a) voted b) vetted
c) nodded d) searched

4 Language learners .... from using single words to short phrases and sentences.
a) graduate b) regulate
c) separate d) protect

5 They .... an agreement in which his company would pay in installments.
a) contracted b) distracted
c) contacted d) affected

6 The bad weather .... our plans for the weekend.
a) repaired b) reformed
c) appointed d) frustrated

7 After the accident, the .... were taken to hospital.
a) casualties b) damages
c) losses d) shortages

8 I think he wasn't hungry as he .... with his food but hardly ate any of it.
a) vetted b) toyed
c) varied d) relied

9 The meaning of this sentence depends on the .... of the words.
a) part b) construction
c) section d) reflection

10 We are going to carry out the project despite its .... risks.
a) follower b) attendant
c) correspondent d) slight

11 I .... my wife why I hadn't bought the fruit from the market.
a) told b) said
c) asked d) inquired

12 The teacher wanted to know who .... me with my homework.
a) he had helped b) had helped
c) has helped d) did help

13 I .... Osama what I had done before going to the interview.
a) wondered b) didn't know
c) asked d) told

14 Ali said he .... and help me at twelve. It's still eight.
a) came b) will come
c) would come d) both b & c

15 I wanted to know how much ....
a) the car cost. b) did the car cost?
c) the car costs. d) the car had cost?

16 Do you know what ....?
a) Ali's plan is for the weekend b) Ali's plan for the weekend
c) Ali's plan for the weekend has d) Ali's plan for the weekend is

17 He said that he .... to become a manager the following year.
a) would expect b) expects
c) will expect d) expected

18 My mother told Amira that she .... better clean up the mess in her room.
a) had had b) had
c) was d) both a & b

19 My mother always says that I .... wear warm clothes.
a) will b) shall
c) should d) may

20 The doctor suggested .... very spicy foods as they are harmful.
a) eating b) that we eat
c) not to eat d) not eating



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He is an Olympic gold .... who is respected all over the world.
a) medal b) medalist c) middle d) modal
2. He always works hard to .... the cause of human rights.
a) prevent b) hold c) champion d) hero
3. I asked my assistant to read the letter .... to me.
a) loud out b) out loud c) in loud d) loud in
4. There will be a lot of .... for asking your questions later.
a) opportunity b) opponents c) opportunities d) both a & c
5. Don't carry such heavy weights or you will .... a muscle.
a) push b) kill c) pull d) develop
6. In order to sell a product, you need to .... it in the right way.
a) ensure b) preserve c) dedicate d) promote
7. We disagreed with each other on this case, but let's not make a/an .... of it
a) impact b) issue c) complaint d) tissue
8. She has no job, no home and no means of ....
a) support b) transport c) come d) stock
9. It has been a successful year financially, so in this .... we have been fortunate.
a) wish b) regard c) regards d) progress
10. The pilgrim walked with a ....
a) wheelchair b) stuck c) staff d) stiff
11. The club is the place .... I always go to meet my friends and practise sports
a) where is which b) what is which c) where is what d) which is where
12. Nermeen .... was my neighbour.
a) , that stole my money, b) , who stole my money,
c) who stole my money d) that stole my money
13. I spent the whole night answering the questions .... to me.
a) which sent b) sent
c) which you sent them d) you sent them
14. Do you have any idea .... your father has left his wallet?
a) that b) what c) where d) which
15. We know a lot of people .... lives are hard because of financial problems
a) who b) no word c) where d) whose
16. Mohamed Salah has become the first Egyptian .... to win the Premier League with his team.
a) who b) which c) that d) no word
17. My father reached a stage .... he began to hate his work.
a) when b) whom c) where d) which
18. I know .... he married her? Because of her money.
a) why b) who c) what d) which
19. Chocolate .... has some health benefits.
a) which is enjoyed worldwide b) that is enjoyed worldwide
c) , which is enjoyed worldwide, d) both a & b
20. Is there a word that can be used to describe a person .... wishes or desires never come true?
a) who b) which c) whom d) whose

Unit (12)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The centre has a wide range of courses on ....
a) afford b) fire c) offer d) special
2. He .... in and out through the traffic as he was in a hurry.
a) weaved b) directed c) waved d) paved
3. There is no need to get ...., we can discuss the matter in a friendly way.
a) cheerful b) pleasant c) unpleasant d) nosy
4. Boys are usually .... to feel that they should shoulder responsibility.
a) avoided b) conditioned c) pressured d) learned
5. In the past, guilty people used to be .... to death instead of being put in prison.
a) divided b) stoned c) rocked d) killed
6. I'm afraid Hatem just isn't .... to the task. We have to find someone else.
a) careful b) special c) equal d) adopted
7. The students .... over the mathematical problem to be able to understand it.
a) went b) ensured c) plotted d) puzzled
8. Hana didn't hear her mother calling at her. She was .... in a book.
a) abandoned b) bored c) buried d) plotted
9. My father decided to make a rose .... in our garden.
a) share b) bed c) article d) close

10 After a short time, he .... his dream of becoming an actor.

a) connected b) mended c) funded d) abandoned

11 A: The tablet must have made studying online much easier.

B: Of course it ....

a) did b) was c) is d) does

12 A: How did you do in the test?

B: Not so well. I .... much better, but I misread the directions of writing.

a) will have done b) could have done c) must have done d) may have done

13 You .... have been waiting long. After all, I'm only five minutes late.

a) can't b) shouldn't c) must d) might

14 He found that everything he said on the phone had been reported to the police. His phone .... have been tapped.

a) should b) can't c) will d) must

15 A: You .... remembered to bring me the CD.

B: No, here it is.

a) must have b) can't have

c) can't have been d) must have been

16 It's a good thing you didn't lend him the money. You .... never have got it back.

a) should b) would c) must d) can

17 A: It can't have been easy swimming during the storm.

B: Of course it ....

a) didn't b) wasn't c) isn't d) doesn't

18 Hello! Ahmed Fadel speaking. I'm sorry, I .... you before now but I've been very busy.

a) should have rung b) must have rung

c) have to ring d) ought to ring

19 Don't lie to me that you were ill yesterday. You .... been ill. Soha said you were at a wedding party last night.

a) can't have b) must have

c) should have d) might not have

20 A: Will your plane be late this afternoon?

B: It .... It hasn't even taken off.

a) couldn't be b) maybe c) may be d) will

Answers — Advanced General Exercises

Unit 7

1. d) breathe
- التعبير not breathe a word بمعنى (ألا يفشى سرًا – ألا يتفوه بكلمة).

2. c) wrapped
- التعبير be wrapped up in بمعنى (يكون منهمكا فى).

3. c) wrap
- بمعنى ينهى/يلخص wrap up.

4. d) electronic
- بمعنى حظر نشر إلكترونى.

5. a) contain
- بمعنى (يحتوى أو يحد من).

6. d) pile
- بمعنى (كثير من/كومة من).

7. b) interpret
- بمعنى يفسر (نصوصًا صعبة الفهم أو التفسير).

8. d) remove
- مع الأشخاص بمعنى (ينحى/يعزل).

9. c) realised
- هنا بمعنى (يحقق) الشركة حققت مكسبًا.

10. d) beached
- هنا بمعنى يركن القارب على الشاطئ (يخرج به إلى اليابسة).

11. b) can't
- التعبير a smoke-free area تعنى منطقة خالية من التدخين لذلك نستخدم can't لعدم وجود mustn't.

12. c) obligatory
- بمعنى إلزامى ولا يمكن استخدام must بدون a.

13. d) forbidden mustn't = it is forbidden

14. c) Have you
- لا يمكن استخدام must you لأنه لم يأت بعدها .inf.
- وهنا تم استخدام have got to فى صيغة الاستفهام.

15. d) needn't have paid
- لم يكن من الضرورى أن يدفع المال ولكنه دفع.

16. b) ought to have helped
- بمعنى كان ينبغى عليك مساعدته.

17. d) don't have to
- بمعنى ليس من الضرورى.

18. b) don't have to
- التعبير It's not urgent تعنى أنه ليس أمرًا عاجلًا أى ليس من الضرورى القيام به.

19. d) am forbidden from
- نظرًا لوجود الفعل watching.

20. d) should have been done
- الجملة فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول.

Unit 8

1. b) clicked
- هنا بمعنى ينقر على (يحدث صوت طرقعة).

2. c) hybrid
- بمعنى هجين (من نوعين مختلفين).

3. a) direction
- بمعنى إدارة أو توجيهات.

4. a) communicated
- بمعنى ينتقل.

5. b) stress
- بمعنى (تأكيد – وضع أهمية على).

6. c) progress
- التعبير in progress بمعنى جار الآن.

7. d) familiar
- بمعنى بلا كلفة أو بلا تكلفة.

8. b) projected
- مخطط له.

9. b) steer
- التعبير steer something/somebody away بمعنى يغير مسار/تفكير.

10. a) vehicle
- بمعنى أداة.

11. c) had been
- the money he had هو فاعل الجملة أما فعل الجملة فهو had been لأن الجملة فى الحالة الثالثة.

12. c) would go
- الفعل المستخدم فى صيغة causative وهى فى الحالة الثانية.

13. c) wouldn't eat
- frozen food مستخدمة بمعنى طعام مجمد وفعل الجملة هنا had.

14. d) Unless
- reading هنا فاعل الجملة.

15. d) needed
.if needed = if it is needed

16. d) had been
- the salary I had هو فاعل الجملة أما فعل الجملة فهو had been لأن الجملة فى الحالة الثالثة.

17. c) would travel
- broken bones معناها عظام مكسورة وفعل الجملة هو had.

18. d) will apply
- الفعل found هنا تصريف أول بمعنى يؤسس.

19. d) In case
- in case بمعنى لربما.

20. b) weren't
- لأن الجملة مستخدمة فى الحالة الثانية ... جملة جواب الشرط فعلها هو wouldn't have فقط ولم يأت بعدها تصريف ثالث.

Unit 9

1. b) owned
- التعبير own up to بمعنى يعترف بـ
2. d) relation
- بمعنى صلة أو علاقة.
3. c) mean
- بمعنى بخيل.
4. a) keen
- بمعنى ثاقب/شديد/حاد.
5. b) level
- فى مستوى نظرى.
6. c) fired
- يتم طرده من العمل.
7. a) orphaned
- كفعل بمعنى ييتم.
8. c) copy
- فعل بمعنى يقلد.
9. b) explain
- يوضح/يفسر.
10. a) brilliant
- بمعنى ساطع.
11. b) since
- since استخدمت فى الجملة بمعنى because.
12. d) went
- لا يمكـن اسـتخدام used to فى جملة ذكر بهـا عـدد مرات حدوث الفعل.
13. d) insisted
- هو أصـر على الدفع (حدث ثان) ويسـتخدم فـى زمن الماضى البسيط.
14. b) had forgotten
- الحدث الأول أنه نسـى إبلاغه بالعنوان لذلك استخدم فى زمن الماضى التام.
15. c) disappeared
- الفعل disappear لا يستخدم مع الأزمنة المستمرة.
16. d) collapsed
- الفعل collapsed لا يبنى للمجهول.
17. a) built
- أصـل الجملـة the house which was built وحـذف which was.
18. b) chased
- and حرف عطف ويتبع بـ P.P.
19. c) wearing
- أصل الجملة who is wearing وحذف who is.
20. c) Encouraged
- اسم مفعول بمعنى مشجعًا.

Unit 10

1. c) pursued
- بمعنى يتعقب وهنا مبنية للمجهول (تم تعقبها).
2. d) careered
- بمعنى يندفع بسرعة.
3. a) voted
- كفعل بمعنى يختار وهنا مجهول (يجب أن يتم اختيارهم).
4. a) graduate
- بمعنى يرتقى أو يتدرج.
5. a) contracted
- بمعنى يوقع/يتعاقد.
6. d) frustrated
- بمعنى أحبط المخطط.
7. a) casualties
- المصابون/الضحايا.
8. b) toyed
- بمعنى يعبث.
9. b) construction
- التركيب اللغوى للكلمات.
10. b) attendant
- بمعنى مصاحب أو ملازم.
11. a) told
- why هنا ليسـت أداة اسـتفهام ولكن أداة ربط فالجملة هنا خبرية.
12. b) had helped
- أداة الربط who لا يأتى بعدها فاعل وتتبع بالفعل مباشرة.
13. d) told
- what هنا ليسـت أداة اسـتفهام ولكن أداة ربط فالجملة هنا خبرية.
14. d) both b & c
- الحدث سيتم فى المستقبل لذا يمكن تغيير الزمن أو لا.
15. a) the car cost.
- cost هنا فعل ماضى.
16. d) Ali's plan for the weekend is
- فى السؤال غير المباشر يأتى الفاعل بعد أداة الاستفهام.
17. d) expected
- expect لا تأتى بعد will أو would.
18. b) had
- had better لا تتحول وتظل كما هى.
19. c) should
- لأن الجملة تعبر عن النصيحة.
20. d) not eating
- تتبع suggested بصيغة v-ing ويأتى قبلها not للحفاظ على المعنى.

Unit 11

1. b) medalist
- بمعنى حائز على ميدالية.
2. c) champion
- بمعنى يدافع عن أو يناصر.
3. b) out loud
- بمعنى (بصوت عالٍ مسموع).
4. d) a & c
- لأن كلمة opportunity من الممكن أن تكون اسمًا يعد أو لا يعد.
5. c) pull
- التعبيـر pull a muscle بنفـس معنـى damage a muscle يمزق العضلة.
6. d) promote
- بمعنى يروج لسلعة.
7. b) issue
- التعبير make an issue of بمعنى يضخم الأمور.
8. a) support
- بمعنى معاش أو إعالة.
9. b) regard
- التعبيـر in this regard بمعنـى (فيما يتعلق بـ أو من هذه الناحية).
10. c) staff
- بمعنى عصا – عكاز.
11. d) which is where
- بمعنى حيثما تشير إلى المكان.
12. b) , who stole my money,
- الجملـة الموجـودة فـى الاختيـارات لابـد أن تكـون Non-defining relative clauses لذلـك تأتـى بيـن فصلتيـن.
13. b) sent
- أصل الجملة which were sent = sent
14. c) where
- where هنا أداة استفهام بمعنى أين.
15. d) whose
- lives هنا بمعنى حيوات وهى هنا اسم جمع.
16. d) no word
- the first + شخص + to + inf.
17. c) where
- كلمة stage هنا يقصد بها مرحلة.
18. a) why
- why هنا أداة استفهام بمعنى لماذا.
19. c) , which is enjoyed worldwide,
- الجملـة الموجـودة فـى الاختيـارات لابـد أن تكـون Non-definingrelativeclauses لذلك تأتى بين فصلتين.
20. d) whose
- هنا wishes بمعنى أمنيات وهى هنا اسم جمع.

Unit 12

1. c) offer
- التعبير on offer بمعنى متوفر أو معروض للبيع.
2. a) weaved
- التعبيـر weave in and out بمعنـى يشـق طريقـه على نحو ملتو.
3. c) unpleasant
- بمعنى غير ودود.
4. b) conditioned
- بمعنى يكيف السلوك.
5. b) stoned
- بمعنى يرجم و هنا مبنى للمجهول.
6. c) equal
- كلمة equal to بمعنى كفء لـ.
7. d) puzzled
- التعبير puzzle over بمعنى يفكر مليا.
8. c) buried
- بمعنى غارق فى – مركز فى شىء جدًا.
9. b) bed.
- فراش من.
10. d) abandoned.
- بمعنى ترك أو تخلى عن.
11. a) did
- هنا التأكيد على فعل حدث بالماضى.
12. b) could have done
- بمعنى كان من الممكن حدوثه ولم يتم.
13. a) can't
- بمعنى بالتأكيد لم تنتظر لفترة طويلة.
14. d) must
- بمعنى بالتأكيد تليفونه مراقب.
15. b) can't have
- بمعنى بالتأكيد لم تتذكر إحضار السى دى.
16. b) would
- بمعنى لن تسترد النقود إن فعلت.
17. b) wasn't
- أصل الجملة it wasn't easy ويمكن الاكتفاء بـ it wasn't فقط لتجنب التكرار.
18. a) should have rung
- كان ينبغى أن أتصل ولم أتصل.
19. a) can't have
- بمعنى بالتأكيد لم يكن مريضا.
20. d) will
- هنا التأكيد على فعل سيحدث فى المستقبل.

Follow-up Exercises

Unit 7

(Dictation)

Vocabulary

خدمات طوارئ	....	غبار/ تراب	....
إسعافات أولية	....	خطر	....
أغطية السرير	....	سلة مهملات	....
يستجيب/ يرد	....	حساسية	....
التنفس	....	على الأقل	....
عملية التنفس الصناعى	....	النظافة العامة	....
يلف	....	البحث العلمى	....
بطانية	....	يزيل	....
حرق	....	قاعدة	....
يخلى (مكان)	....	علمى	....
يؤلم	....	ألواح تقطيع	....
مصاب	....	يكح	....
يشكو	....	يعطس	....
يجرح	....	قطعة إسفنج	....
تلف	....	منديل ورقى	....

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

يقوم بعمل التنفس الصناعى	....	ينتمى لـ/ يخص	....
يستنشق ويزفر الهواء	....	يصرخ فى	....
يخطئ	....	يشكو بشأن	....
يتأكد	....	يقرر بشأن	....
لديه جدال مع	....	يساعد فى	....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You .... take care of your studies. I strongly advise you.
a) may b) must c) ought d) mustn't

2 Dropping rubbish into the Nile water is ....
a) allowed b) necessary c) forbidden d) advisable

3 We .... show our identity cards before going into any governmental formal building.
a) have to b) should c) need to d) can't

4 I .... the film. It was boring and I really wasted my time.
a) didn't have to watch b) mustn't have watched
c) must have watched d) needn't have watched

5 I suggest that our children .... sleep early and get up early.
a) must b) need c) needn't d) should

6 The doctor gave her treatment for her ....
a) curiosity b) honesty c) allergy d) hospitality

7 Giving him .... at the scene of the accident probably saved his life.
a) emergency services b) first aid
c) hygiene d) danger

8 It is said that colds do not .... to antibiotics.
a) grow b) agree c) respond d) carry

9 During the war, several families were .... from their homes.
a) evacuated b) burnt c) wrapped d) damaged

10 My friend was .... a bandage around his injured wrist.
a) wrapping b) burning c) breaking d) explaining

2 Fill in the space:

Great Britain was the first country to adopt standard time. By 1852 most British clocks ....(a).............. set to the time in Greenwich, London. The United States and Canada were ....(b).............. big to use a single time for every town. In 1882, the Canadian inventor, Fleming suggested that the world ....(c).............. divided into 24 equal time zones, each zone would be one hour different ....(d).............. those on their side.

3 A) Translate into English:

يجب علينا أن نعطى للطفل الفرصة للتعبير عن نفســه، وإبداء رأيه دون خوف من العقاب، أو أى قيود، أو نقد دائم؛ حتى يصبح مواطنًا له رأى يفيد به مجتمعه.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

Our great heritage which we inherited from our great ancient Egyptians needs honest and reliable people to keep it and restore the stolen from abroad.

....

....

Unit 8

(Dictation)

Vocabulary

فائدة	اختبار قصير ....
ضغطة (على الماوس)	ترجمة ....
مألوف	تطبيق على التليفون المحمول ....
يكتشف	مزايا ....
يتجول / ينتقل من مكان لمكان	تعليق ....
يخرج	تمامًا ....
جهاز الملاحة (فى السيارة)	عيوب ....
نظام تكييف الهواء	ضغط عصبى ....
مركبة	فهم ....
مجهد	إلكترونى ....
فظيع / رهيب	وثائقى ....
موقع	يخمن ....
عجلة	يشارك ....
يشحن	مدهش ....
كهربائى	قلق ....

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

مفيد لـ	يفقد الاهتمام فى ....
يتواصل مع	يتصل بالإنترنت ....
يركب على	يعطى اتجاهات ....
مألوف لدى	يتجول بالدراجة حول المدينة ....
تأثير على	يتوه / يضل الطريق ....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Should Kareema study harder, she .... better marks.
a) would get b) would have got c) got d) gets

2 .... he ran as fast as he could, he wouldn't catch the bus.
a) If b) Without c) Unless d) In case

3 But for his honest advice, I .... last year's exams.
a) won't pass b) wouldn't have passed c) would have passed d) wouldn't pass

4 .... Hala seen us, she would have come and talked to us.
a) If b) Should c) Were d) Had

5 If there .... a fire, call the firemen at once.
a) is b) was c) had been d) are

6 We managed to .... our way through the forest.
a) control b) notice c) navigate d) relax

7 The signs of drug addiction are .... to most doctors.
a) familiar b) useful c) cultural d) stressful

8 Have you locked your .... before leaving it?
a) vehicle b) internet c) link d) map

9 The teacher gave us a/an .... on reading every Monday.
a) app b) quiz c) chat d) feedback

10 Advances in .... have improved crop yields by over 30%.
a) technology b) invention c) internet d) robot

2 Fill in the space:

..............(a).............. you live in the countryside, you have to be very careful during nights when you leave your home. There aren't so ....(b).............. people in the countryside and they really know each other. But, life in the countryside is more peaceful, cleaner and less stressful. If you ....(c).............. have a car, there is no problem as you can reach a lot of places on foot. I, myself, prefer living in the countryside ....(d).............. living in the crowded city.

3 A) Translate into English:

من الأشـيـاء الهامة جدًّا والتى تقينا من الأمـراض وتمنحنا القدرة على أداء عملنا بشـكل جيد تناول الطعام الصحى وأداء التمارين الرياضية بشكل منتظم.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

Natural disasters like volcanoes and earthquakes occur when forces of nature do damage to the environment and affect people badly every year.

....

....

Unit 9

(Dictation)

Vocabulary

قاسٍ	....	التعليم فى المنزل	....
قسوة	....	خبير	....
تعليم	....	يشرح/ يفسر	....
مربية	....	يجادل	....
مديرة المنزل	....	جدال	....
يتيم	....	البلطجة/ التنمر	....
دار أيتام	....	عقد (١٠ سنوات)	....
خادم/ خادمة	....	بالتأكيد	....
يخدم	....	معدات	....
شخص غريب	....	استنتاج	....
يعلن	....	وصف	....
بلطجى/ متنمر	....	جاد	....
مؤلف	....	صياغات	....
أقارب	....	رياضات جماعية	....
يوظف	....	طريقة	....

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

مدرسة داخلية	....	يتقدم إلى (وظيفة)	....
يجلب النجاح	....	قلق بشأن	....
يقوم بعمل تجربة	....	ينتقل إلى	....
يرتكب خطأ	....	زيادة فى	....
تكوين صداقات	....	تنوع فى	....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Many environmental problems .... during the last youth conference.
a) discussed b) are discussed c) were discussed d) had discussed

2 It was not .... they had found a restaurant that they entered.
a) when b) while c) after d) until

3 How did people .... to move from one place to another in the past?
a) use b) used c) using d) uses

4 After we .... to the news on TV, we went out for a walk.
a) has listened b) were listened c) would listen d) listened

5 The match, ... in the Cairo Stadium, was very amazing and enjoyable.
a) was played b) which played c) playing d) played

6 Companies have found that good .... brings good results.
a) ignorance b) advertising c) sleeping d) secretary

7 It was only later that I .... my mistake.
a) released b) realised c) improvised d) rationalised

8 It was .... to lock the dog in the garage all day.
a) merciful b) cruel c) keen d) kind

9 Have you seen her act? She's absolutely ....
a) keen b) interested c) brilliant d) proud

10 The two men at the hotel were .... about politics.
a) bullying b) arguing c) encouraging d) changing

2 Fill in the space:

Plants have ....(a)................ used for treating different kinds of illnesses since the primitive times. Archaeologists discovered paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs ....(b)................ show that plants were being used ....(c)................ the ancient Egyptians for medical purposes. Today, some modern drugs ....(d)................ still based on natural herbs.

3 A) Translate into English:

إن التقدم الاقتصادى والزراعى والتكنولوجى الذى تشـهده مصر حاليًا ما هو إلا نتاج لجهود المخلصين من أبناء هذا البلد العظيم والذى بالفعل يستحق منا جميعًا أن نعمل من أجله.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

We buy a particular product because we think that it is the best. We think so because the advertisements say so but it's not always right.

....

....

Unit 10

(Dictation)

Vocabulary

يقدم (طلبًا)	مجتمع ....
مؤهلات	واثق ....
مُجزٍ	مثير ....
فترة التدريب فى المهنة	خبرة ....
مرافق	يتخيل ....
البناء	معرض الوظائف ....
عقد	مخلص ....
مؤهل	موثوق فيه ....
صناعة	يتطلب ....
عملى	صفارات الإنذار ....
مهارة	عضو الفريق ....
مرهق	لعبة/ عروسة لعبة ....

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

يصنع سيارات	محبوب لدى ....
تلبية الموعد النهائى	يعتنى بـ ....
المطبخ المصرى	يتأقلم مع ....
منتبه للتفاصيل	مناسب لـ ....
أنشطة وقت الفراغ	الكثير من ....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My father told me that we had to travel with him ....
a) the next day b) the following day c) the day before d) the day after

2 My wife asked me .... the car.
a) that I had fixed b) to have fixed c) unless I had fixed d) if I had fixed

3 Amira said just now that she .... television for two hours.
a) had watched b) has watched c) was watched d) would watch

4 Ali .... his brother his uncle wanted to meet them.
a) said b) asked c) told d) wondered

5 They said that they would meet us if they .... we were there.
a) have known b) knew c) had been knowing d) know

6 We need to .... for planning permission to build a garage.
a) apply b) supply c) imply d) employ

7 The literature course has been hard work, but very ....
a) stressful b) rewarding c) practical d) qualified

8 Working for long hours can be very .... It isn't easy at all.
a) practical b) rewarding c) stressful d) qualified

9 My car's quite old, but it's still pretty .... in difficult situations.
a) flexible b) fancy c) necessary d) reliable

10 We should be .... about the kind of work we can do.
a) flexible b) confident c) exciting d) honest

2 Fill in the space:

Many people ....(a)................ that if you want to be happy, you should have ....(b)................ money. However, I disagree ....(c)................ them as money is not the only thing that makes someone happy. There are many other things such as, health, good manners, respectable profession and family of course. Sometimes we can say ....(d)................ money is important, but it is also a source of evil and worry.

3 A) Translate into English:

تســاهم وسائل الإعلام بشكل كبير فى توجيه الرأى العام والتأثير على آراء الكثير من الشباب، ومن هنا يجب علينا استغلالها بشكل جيد يخدم مجتمعنا ووطننا.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

In the past, Sinai was only a dry desert but now it has become one of the most attractive places in the world with its wonderful landscape and important tourist attractions.

....

....

Unit 11

(Dictation)

Vocabulary

يحقق	....	يدعم	....
إنجاز	....	مقابلة للحصول على وظيفة أو حوار صحفى	....
ناشط	....	يتدرب	....
يقوم بعمل حملة	....	تدريب	....
يتنافس	....	غير مطبوخ جيدًا	....
منافسة	....	يحجز	....
إعاقة	....	يضايق	....
مرتفعات ومنخفضات	....	ثقب	....
منحدر	....	مرتفع (للصوت)	....
ميدالية	....	قسم	....
عضلة	....	موظف	....
شلل الأطفال	....	مبيعات	....
لاعب رفع الأثقال	....	هيئة العاملين	....
تشقق العمود الفقرى	....	مؤهلات	....
كرسى متحرك	....	مزعج	....

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

يقدم شكوى	....	يبحث عن	....
يصدر ضوضاء	....	يتطلع إلى	....
يتأكد	....	مؤهل لـ	....
يمارس الرياضة	....	حملة من أجل	....
يصنع اختلافًا	....	مسئول عن	....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The home .... housekeeper is respectful, is a very good and comfortable one.
a) who b) whose c) when d) where

2 The Great Pyramid is the greatest building .... I have ever seen.
a) that b) where c) whose d) whom

3 Can you hear .... I am saying or you want me to say it again?
a) that b) which c) whom d) what

4 This is the street .... we cleaned and made it a better place to live.
a) where b) when c) which d) who

5 The mobile .... was so expensive but a really modern one.
a) which I bought it b) I bought it c) which bought d) I bought

6 The conference was an important social .... which people can meet each other at.
a) incident b) accident c) event d) happening

7 She eventually .... her goal of becoming a professor.
a) achieved b) campaigned c) competed d) improved

8 I believe we should support responsible organisations .... for the right of animals.
a) achieving b) improving c) campaigning d) inspiring

9 Games and songs provide a/an .... for classroom interaction.
a) competition b) chance c) opportunity d) achievement

10 This price reduction is due to .... among suppliers.
a) competition b) campaign c) medal d) achievement

2 Fill in the space:

A lot of people decide to move to the countryside nowadays, but there are still many people ....(a)............. prefer to stay in the city and say that they couldn't live anywhere else. I think that living in the city is better as it is the place ....(b)............. you can find everything ....(c)............. you want at any time. Also, we can ....(d)............. fun with the many amusing places in the city.

3 A) Translate into English:

مكتبات المدارس والمكتبات العامة تســاهم بشــكل كبير فى تنمية عقل الطفل، وتزيد من مداركه، حيث إنها توفر له كل فروع المعرفة.

....

....

B) Translate into Arabic:

The government should exert great efforts to find and save work for unemployed people because unemployment is the cause of many crimes in our society.

....

....

Unit 12

(Dictation)

Vocabulary

- يختفى ....
- صانع النسيج ....
- مذنب/ مجرم ....
- لغز/ غموض ....
- كوخ/ بيت ريفى ....
- يحل ....
- يعرض/ عرض ....
- يثبت ....
- يسرق ....
- مندهش ....
- غير سار ....
- المدفأة ....
- شاحب/ باهت ....
- يثق/ ثقة ....
- خاص ....
- شخصيات ....
- سرعة ....
- مهجور ....
- يتبنى ....
- يفحص/ يتأكد ....
- قريب ....
- مجتمع ....
- جريمة ....
- يُقسم ....
- يؤكد ....
- بشكل متساوٍ ....
- حدث ....
- أسطورة ....
- لغز ....
- مستودع ....

Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

- مخطوب لـ ....
- متزوج من ....
- يكسب مالًا ....
- يشعر بالأسف لـ ....
- يلتقط صورًا لـ ....
- يهتم بـ ....
- يأتى من ....
- بالمقارنة بـ ....
- ينتمى إلى ....
- مملوء بـ ....

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I saw him carry a huge box alone. He .... strong.
a) can't be b) might be c) must be d) should be

2 I .... them as they were so rude with us and I regret doing this.
a) must have visited b) can't have visited
c) should have visited d) shouldn't have visited

3 Salwa didn't go out today. She .... ill, but I don't think so. I think it was laziness.
a) must have been b) must be c) might have been d) can't be

4 He always wins the matches he plays. He .... a very talented player.
a) must be b) must have been c) can't be d) can't have been

5 It is .... for all of us to have healthy dental habits.
a) advice b) necessity c) forbidden d) a must

6 Where are my keys? They seem to have ....
a) appeared b) missed c) disappeared d) lost

7 What happened to the paintings after that is an unsolved ....
a) presence b) mystery c) decision d) proof

8 .... that all the doors are locked securely.
a) Look b) Research c) Check d) Pull

9 Unless these .... were put in prison immediately, they would continue to terrorise the public.
a) monsters b) human c) man d) children

10 You shouldn't put your .... in a man like that. He is a deceiver.
a) hate b) trust c) distrust d) dislike

2 Fill in the space:

It must ....(a).............. been 3 a.m. when a sharp knock at my door woke me up. To my surprise, the light was off and I ....(b).............. to comfort my wife and children who got up in terror. Naturally, I went to the door and was careful enough to ask who the man was and what he wanted ....(c).............. opening. He was my neighbour whose son was very ill and wanted help. I helped him and did ....(d).............. was best for his son.

3 A) Translate into English:

من حق كل شخص أن يعبر عن رأيه بحرية تامة، ولكن يجب أن يضع فى اعتباره احترام الرأى الآخر، وكذلك عدم الإساءة للآخرين.

....

....

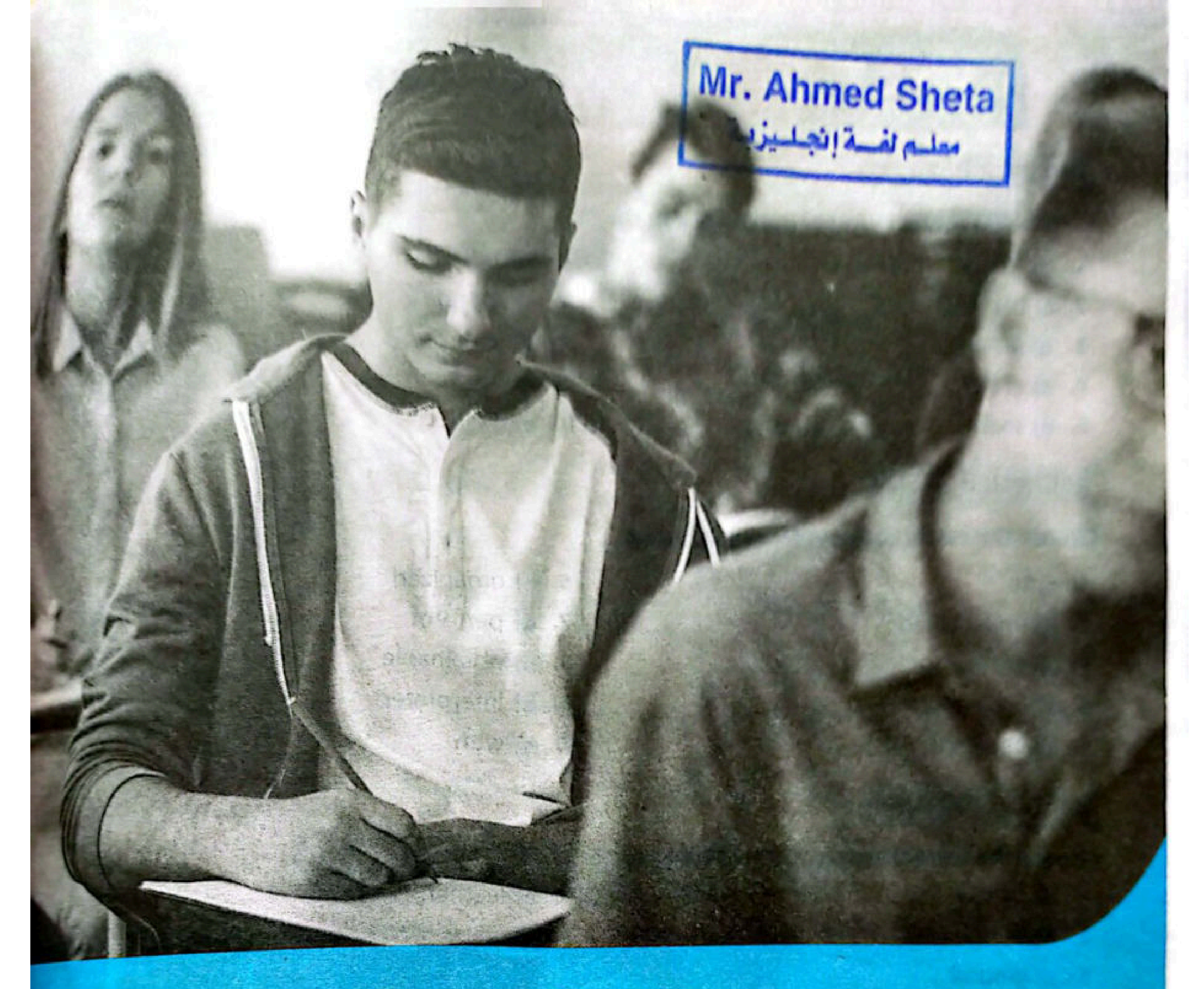
B) Translate into Arabic:

Scientists have helped in making roads much safer, but the number of accidents continues to rise because of careless drivers and the big increase in the number of cars on roads.

....

....


AL ADWAA
Gem
Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية
1st SEC
SECOND TERM
TEACHER`S GUIDE
NEW HELLO!
2024



Main Book Answers

Part 2

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

Unit 7 

Part (1)
Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) follow
2. c) bacteria
3. b) first aid
4. d) allergy
5. d) soap
6. b) safety
7. c) sponge
8. d) sneezing
9. c) emergencies
10. c) dust

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) to
2. d) endangered
3. b) at
4. a) dos and don'ts
5. b) as often
6. a) organized
7. d) perform
8. b) obtainable
9. b) interpreter
10. b) with

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) contain
2. b) skin
3. a) ground
4. a) leather
5. c) off

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) bin
2. a) research
3. d) first aid
4. d) emergencies
5. a) soil
6. d) dropped
7. c) breathe
8. b) tissue
9. d) bedding
10. b) bacteria
11. d) sneeze
12. a) grow
13. b) hygiene
14. b) do
15. c) responding
16. a) health
17. c) avoid
18. b) ingredients
19. a) cable
20. c) allergy
21. b) separate
22. d) put
23. b) dust
24. b) follow
25. b) basic
26. d) remove
27. a) feasible/ c) obtainable
28. c) untidy/ e) messy
29. a) avert/ d) evade
30. a) reaching/ b) arriving
31. a) clarify/ e) define

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

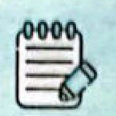
1. d) should
2. c) must
3. a) must
4. b) mustn't
5. c) ought to
6. c) not to eat
7. d) must
8. c) should
9. c) must
10. c) must
11. c) must
12. c) ought
13. c) should
14. b) mustn't
15. d) be rewritten
16. a) must
17. d) had better
18. c) have to
19. d) have to
20. b) must
21. d) mustn't
22. d) mustn't
23. b) are not allowed
24. d) mustn't
25. c) have to
26. b) mustn't
27. c) have to
28. d) must
29. b) advisable
30. c) necessary
31. b) is allowed
32. c) necessity
33. c) strong advice
34. c) parking is banned here
35. a) you mustn't leave school early without permission

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) dust
2. d) floor
3. b) first aid
4. a) included
5. b) electrical
6. c) allergy
7. b) coughing
8. d) least
9. b) carry
10. b) spreading
11. a) breathed
12. a) take off
13. b) separate
14. d) with
15. c) soapy
16. b) must
17. b) had better not
18. a) must
19. d) ought
20. c) must
21. c) should
22. c) mustn't
23. b) should
24. c) had better
25. d) mustn't
26. c) must
27. b) should
28. b) must
29. c) have to
30. b) must

Unit 7



Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) evacuated
2. b) apologise
3. b) plaster
4. d) complains
5. b) blankets
6. c) offered
7. d) wrapped
8. c) hurt
9. d) explain
10. c) immediately

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) about
2. b) at once
3. a) secure
4. d) explanatory
5. c) get
6. b) evacuation
7. d) made
8. b) on

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) realised
2. a) From
3. c) To
4. a) recognised
5. b) lend

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) blanket
2. d) smell
3. c) injured
4. d) realise
5. d) advice
6. b) explain
7. b) burns
8. d) for
9. c) pressure
10. b) complained
11. c) hurt
12. a) wrapping
13. b) apologise
14. d) argument
15. a) serious
16. a) helmet
17. a) cuts
18. a) borrow
19. a) evacuated
20. c) of
21. c) immediately
22. a) serious
23. b) apology
24. c) on
25. b) stay
26. b) with
27. c) Wrap
28. b) got/ e) became
29. b) safe/ d) secure
30. b) disagreement/ d) debate
31. d) evacuate/ e) empty
32. c) wrapped/ e) covered
33. b) of/ d) about
34. b) at once/ e) instantly
35. b) committed/ d) made

Check Point (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) don't have to
2. c) needn't
3. a) had to
4. b) won't have to go
5. d) should have trained

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) have to
2. b) should have checked
3. b) don't need to
4. c) mustn't
5. c) didn't have to go
6. c) mustn't
7. d) mustn't
8. d) needn't have hurried
9. d) shouldn't have
10. b) must
11. b) didn't have to buy
12. d) didn't have
13. a) needn't
14. b) ought to have studied
15. a) don't have to
16. b) mustn't
17. c) should have remembered
18. a) allowed
19. d) mustn't
20. a) should have
21. d) shouldn't have gone
22. b) You should work hard to achieve more progress.
23. a) You ought to not neglect your work.
24. c) You shouldn't smoke for your health.
25. b) was necessary
26. d) wrong
27. a) needn't have bought
28. c) should have listened

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) helmet
2. b) serious
3. a) apology
4. c) wrapped
5. d) plaster
6. a) trust
7. c) immediately
8. b) interpret
9. d) damage
10. d) argument
11. b) stay
12. a) get
13. b) on
14. a) burns
15. d) on
16. b) necessary
17. d) had better
18. b) can't
19. b) didn't have to go
20. b) have to
21. a) had to
22. a) don't have to
23. a) shouldn't have worried
24. a) needn't
25. c) could have travelled
26. a) should study
27. a) needn't
28. c) mustn't
29. b) will have to
30. d) must

Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) ask you to provide personal information
2. d) both a & c
3. d) in-
4. c) All the information is fake.
5. d) How to get trusted information on the internet
6. b) a lot of it is false
7. a) the accuracy of the information



2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. c) يجب علينا أن نهتم كثيرًا بالأشجار لأنها تساعد على توازن الطبيعة ولأن العلماء يقولون: «تساعد الأشجار الأرض على التنفس».
2. b) جميعنا دائمًا يتمنى أن يعيش فى دولة حديثة متقدمة حيث يكون الناس محترمين ومتسامحين مع بعضهم البعض.
3. a) من المعتقد أن يعرض التليفزيون مجموعة متنوعة من البرامج التى تروق للأشخاص من مختلف الأعمار وأيضًا يساعد الطلبة عن طريق تقديم بعض البرامج التعليمية المفيدة.
4. c) لقد أصبحت الكهرباء جزءًا أساسيًا من حياتنا والناس لا تستطيع الاستغناء عنها ونعتمد عليها تقريبًا فى كل مجالات الحياة.
5. b) من المعروف أن الطاقة والمياه هما أساس وشريان الحياة فكل الكائنات الحية والآلات لا تستطيع العيش أو العمل بدونهما.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

6. d) Parents must have proper, healthy habits and personal hygiene rules in order for the children to learn them as they imitate their parents.
7. c) We all should bear the responsibility of keeping the Nile water clean and saving every drop of water as the Nile is considered the artery of life in Egypt.
8. a) The government usually exerts great effort at times of crises especially when the country is exposed to health disasters such as the spread of dangerous viruses like COVID-19.
9. c) It is necessary for any person to keep their surroundings clean and also their hygiene so as not to catch a lot of infectious diseases.
10. a) Modern technology plays an outstanding and important role in our life as we can't imagine our life without modern means of communication and transport.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 7)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. a) easily/ b) simply
2. d) peak/ e) top

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. c) allergy
4. b) breathing
5. b) advice
6. c) equipment
7. b) ingredient
8. a) against
9. c) medical
10. d) should
11. c) should have attended
12. d) have to
13. b) mustn't
14. a) had to visit
15. c) should have studied
16. c) must

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) open
18. b) Mr Hassan and the writer
19. d) precious
20. b) Announced.
21. b) clever
22. a) in the morning
23. c) at the same time of

24. Choose the correct English translation:

d) Keeping the environment clean has become a must, so all individuals and governments should cooperate to create a healthy and clean environment free of epidemics and diseases.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

b) إن الفيتامينات ضرورية جدًا للحصول على صحة جيدة ومن المعروف أن نقصهم قد يسبب أمراضًا خطيرة. والأطعمة التى تحتوى على فيتامينات تسمى أطعمة وقائية.

26. Answer the following question:

Left to the student.

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Left to the student.

Unit 8 

Part (1)
Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) stressful
2. c) position
3. b) relax
4. d) click
5. d) luxurious
6. c) culture
7. a) familiar
8. c) annoying
9. b) result
10. d) wheels

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) navigate
2. a) down
3. a) give
4. c) out
5. d) on
6. a) distant
7. c) gets
8. d) beneficial
9. c) decline
10. a) wonderful

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) voyage
2. b) location
3. b) aboard
4. a) able to
5. b) air-conditioning
6. b) stressful
7. b) memory
8. a) to
9. d) consequences
10. c) border

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) Hybrid
2. a) air-conditioning
3. b) position
4. b) positioning
5. d) invention
6. c) direction
7. d) memory
8. b) global
9. c) wheels
10. b) discuss
11. b) engine
12. b) fortunately
13. b) consequences
14. a) system
15. c) robot
16. b) navigate
17. a) charging
18. c) click
19. d) robot
20. c) able to
21. c) beneficial
22. c) comments
23. a) petrol
24. b) benefits
25. a) vehicles
26. c) hiking
27. d) familiar
28. b) cycle
29. b) pass/ e) succeed in
30. c) amusement/ d) enjoyment
31. c) aboard/ d) on board
32. a) become/ e) get
33. a) unknown/ e) strange

Check Point (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) turns
2. a) will damage
3. b) study
4. d) get
5. a) will it boil

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) get
2. a) train
3. a) smile
4. b) will meet
5. c) will you do
6. d) has
7. d) spoke
8. a) stop
9. b) take
10. b) won
11. a) had left
12. a) telephone
13. d) would you be
14. c) is
15. c) might have come
16. a) didn't feel
17. b) would behave
18. d) would have helped
19. d) were given
20. d) knew
21. a) will be
22. c) would be
23. d) didn't help
24. c) would hurt
25. d) arrived
26. c) wouldn't have had
27. c) had taken
28. d) would have happened
29. c) would be allowed
30. b) read
31. b) am
32. c) I am not rich, so I won't give them money
33. a) there is a possibility to do the homework
34. a) he would be a good player
35. c) I lost the match

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) lead
2. c) statement
3. b) navigate
4. d) direction
5. a) around
6. a) vehicle
7. d) ride
8. d) click
9. b) invention
10. c) internet
11. b) stressful
12. c) consequences
13. c) discuss
14. a) luxury
15. d) down
16. c) get
17. d) would have got
18. c) are bitten
19. b) isn't watered
20. d) get
21. b) don't pay
22. a) ring
23. c) will sink
24. d) would have happened
25. d) wouldn't have been
26. c) weren't
27. d) had seen
28. d) remember
29. c) had
30. a) would flood

Unit 8  Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) memories
2. d) cost
3. b) notebook
4. a) smartphones
5. b) quiz
6. d) shared
7. d) exactly
8. a) translation
9. d) chat
10. d) feedback

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) for or against
2. d) personal
3. b) do
4. a) of
5. b) effect
6. c) confessed
7. a) agree
8. a) make
9. d) grasping
10. a) for

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) everyday
2. b) have
3. b) thousand
4. a) on
5. c) century
6. c) on
7. d) of

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) chatting
2. c) cost
3. a) translation
4. a) technology
5. b) effect
6. a) download
7. c) invention
8. b) quiz
9. d) feedback
10. d) comment
11. b) app
12. b) stress
13. c) stressed
14. a) stressful
15. b) improve
16. b) apps
17. c) comments
18. a) admit
19. b) extreme
20. b) decade
21. a) documentaries
22. a) understanding
23. a) on
24. d) at
25. a) for
26. d) make
27. b) lose
28. c) into
29. c) in detail/ e) accurately
30. b) learn/ e) to learn
31. d) confessed/ e) acknowledged
32. b) incompletely/ d) partially

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) unless
2. b) doing
3. c) hadn't been
4. a) if
5. a) Unless
6. b) unless
7. c) Unless
8. d) Had
9. b) provided
10. d) If it weren't
11. d) Had
12. c) Should
13. d) Were
14. c) Should
15. a) would have lost
16. a) might have died
17. a) unless
18. d) unless
19. b) Had
20. a) call
21. b) would have worked
22. a) would you
23. c) would have known
24. c) unless
25. c) would pass
26. d) would join
27. a) wouldn't steal
28. b) being helped
29. d) Unless they ran
30. c) Were he to study
31. a) I got the job because Ahmed helped me
32. b) I will attend the party when there is an invitation

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) stress
2. d) feedback
3. b) completely
4. c) century
5. a) details
6. d) in
7. c) have
8. c) surprising
9. b) documentary
10. b) app
11. b) chatting
12. c) devices
13. a) to
14. d) of
15. d) understanding
16. c) as long
17. a) buying
18. a) condition
19. c) Imagine
20. a) But for
21. d) weren't
22. d) in case of
23. c) wouldn't have
24. a) Should
25. c) Were
26. b) hadn't been
27. d) Unless
28. d) Had he had
29. b) Should
30. b) Unless it stops

Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) encouraged a large number to stop smoking

2. c) they opened new markets in the Third World countries

3. c) media companies

4. b) three

5. d) it would cause a big loss of wealth

6. a) exceeded

7. c) 41



2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. b) لقد اكتشف بعض العلماء أن هناك احتمالاً أكبر أن ويصاب الناس بالبرد عندما يكونون غير سعداء أو تحت ضغط لأن الجهاز المناعى يكون أقل كفاءة عندما نتعرض للقلق.

2. b) تحترم كل الأديان الديمقراطية وتطالب بحقوق الإنسان وتظهر كل القيم التى تؤكد السلام والرخاء.

3. a) إن أى دولة فى حاجة ماسة إلى أشخاص ذوى حكمة لتحديث النظام التعليمى وزيادة الوعى بين الشباب.

4. c) إن تدخين السجائر والتلوث أعداء مخيفة للإنسان حيث إنهما يدمران الصحة ويسببان المعاناة والموت.

5. b) على عكس وسائل المواصلات الأخرى فإن الدراجة لا تستخدم البنزين وهذا يعنى أنها تحافظ على نقاء الهواء ولا تحتاج مساحة كبيرة للانتظار.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

6. d) The metro is considered one of the important achievements of the Egyptian State in recent years for its important role in solving the problem of traffic jam and reducing the number of accidents.

7. b) We all, individuals and governments, should do our best to be able to improve the quality of our local products and thus achieve economic progress.

8. d) Mother is the first school for the child as she is the one who teaches them morals and values, and she teaches them how to deal with people around them before learning how to read and write.

9. d) In Egypt, there is no discrimination based on religion, gender, colour, social position or wealth. We are all equal: man and woman, Muslim and Christian.

10. d) Unless you set clear goals, you have only yourself to blame for not achieving anything.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 8)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. a) disturbing/ e) troublesome
2. b) on your own/ e) alone

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. d) GPS
4. c) navigate
5. a) feedback
6. b) hybrid
7. a) smartphone
8. a) get around
9. c) inventions
10. a) would solve
11. a) were
12. b) had had
13. b) wouldn't be
14. b) should
15. b) would sell
16. b) would have gone

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) To make plans.
18. c) it's better to have a family
19. d) Monthly.
20. b) because of the huge size of the palace
21. d) To write a message.
22. b) The Killer Wealth
23. c) massive
24. **Choose the correct English translation:**
    a) The people should cooperate with the government to increase investment to face the problem of unemployment by setting up small projects that employ a number of workers.
25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**
    d) لقد أصبح استخدام الإنترنت أسهل، وفرصة الأفراد للحصول على كم هائل من المعلومات بسرعة كبيرة أصبحت متاحة.
26. **Answer the following question:**
    Left to the student.
27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**
    Left to the student.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Units 7 & 8)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. c) impact/ e) effect
2. b) debate/ d) disagreement

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. d) danger
4. b) against
5. c) evacuate
6. a) allergy
7. d) Positioning
8. c) down
9. b) disadvantages
10. b) had been
11. b) must
12. d) could
13. b) must
14. d) feel
15. b) wouldn't be
16. a) needn't

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. d) Mr Said introduces himself to Shady
18. d) the book on the table
19. b) shy
20. d) friends
21. b) author
22. b) Mr Said listened patiently before introducing himself.
23. c) regretful

24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

b) The government encourages local industries so that it can do without a lot of imports which need hard currency, and at the same time, provide job opportunities for youth.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

c) يوجد أنواع مختلفة من السياحة والتي تجذب السياح لبلدنا وأكثر الأنواع شيوعًا هو السفر للمتعة والاسترخاء.

26. **Answer the following question:**

Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

Left to the student.

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) extra
2. a) energy
3. d) wealthy
4. b) employ
5. b) fire
6. d) gardener
7. d) advertised
8. a) honesty
9. b) education
10. b) cruel

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) kind
2. a) believe
3. c) enormous
4. d) with
5. a) do
6. d) of
7. a) destitute
8. c) apply
9. c) control
10. c) keep

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) on
2. c) gained
3. c) employees
4. d) death
5. d) later
6. d) with
7. b) two-week
8. c) as

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) servants
2. a) make
3. d) upset
4. d) earn
5. a) gain
6. c) energy
7. c) realise
8. c) nearby
9. c) author
10. d) orphan
11. a) for
12. d) belief
13. a) dead
14. c) bully
15. a) housekeeper
16. b) bullying
17. c) century
18. c) keep in touch
19. a) cruelty
20. c) governess
21. c) received
22. c) relatives
23. d) cruel
24. a) orphans
25. c) applicants
26. c) with
27. d) lose touch with them
28. b) owns
29. b) fire/ e) discharge
30. d) wicked/ e) unkind
31. b) make/ e) become
32. a) of/ d) about

Check Point (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) took
2. d) was sent
3. c) built
4. d) wasn't done
5. b) Did you watch

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) was taken
2. c) is being repaired
3. c) was being repaired
4. a) is visited
5. a) was elected
6. b) was invented
7. d) didn't enjoy
8. c) was given
9. d) were sent
10. c) were taken
11. c) was stolen
12. a) wasn't used
13. a) was damaged
14. b) was prepared
15. b) was formed
16. c) was born
17. b) were invited
18. c) was forced
19. c) invited
20. d) designed
21. c) been sent
22. c) have just been cleaned
23. b) was attacked
24. b) was founded
25. a) wasn't arranged
26. a) weren't answered
27. b) nobody has beaten me at chess so far
28. c) Omar was being punished by Donya when I called her
29. b) were the criminals
30. c) By whom were you rewarded yesterday?

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) own
2. b) wealthy
3. c) employee
4. d) orphans
5. b) upset
6. c) relative
7. c) failure
8. c) away
9. d) comfortable
10. c) recognise
11. b) governess
12. d) servants
13. a) employ
14. c) latter
15. c) author
16. b) will be opened
17. c) are decorated
18. a) were being typed
19. c) were locked
20. b) got lost
21. d) been deceived
22. b) was being made
23. a) have been used
24. a) been developed
25. a) were told
26. a) was seen
27. b) were committed
28. c) hadn't been expected
29. b) was made
30. a) hadn't been enrolled

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) experiments
2. d) serious
3. a) author
4. a) equipment
5. d) hurt
6. b) lonely
7. d) change
8. c) discussion
9. c) brilliant
10. b) explain

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) laugh
2. b) making
3. c) terrible
4. b) waste
5. b) illustrate
6. c) for
7. a) appreciative
8. d) get on
9. a) terrible
10. d) solvable

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) with
2. b) missed
3. c) a
4. a) too
5. d) successful
6. b) school
7. b) argues

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) practise
2. b) instead
3. b) keen
4. a) mean
5. b) advice
6. b) explained
7. a) serious
8. b) bridges
9. c) generates
10. c) critical
11. b) took part
12. b) imagination
13. c) conclusion
14. b) Home-schooling
15. d) solver
16. b) lucky
17. c) appreciative
18. b) appreciate
19. a) schooled
20. d) statements
21. a) conclusion
22. b) equipment
23. d) experiments
24. a) confidence
25. c) confident
26. b) experiment
27. b) waste
28. c) build
29. b) make / e) generate
30. c) keep / d) carry
31. a) boring / b) dull
32. a) clarify / d) illustrate

Check Point (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) invited
2. b) escaped
3. c) were stolen
4. a) lived
5. a) did

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) went
2. d) visited
3. a) scored
4. b) won
5. a) began
6. b) had finished
7. d) had gone/started
8. c) was
9. c) walked
10. b) had learnt
11. d) had just had
12. c) went
13. a) had finished
14. b) didn't answer
15. d) had fallen
16. b) No sooner
17. c) had left
18. c) had seen
19. a) On
20. c) screamed
21. c) done
22. b) hadn't cleaned
23. d) when
24. b) had made
25. b) had already started
26. b) Having
27. a) had gone
28. b) had left
29. c) received
30. d) had broken
31. c) been treated
32. d) Hardly had I arrived home when my phone rang.
33. c) As soon as I saw my teacher, I greeted him respectfully.

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) lucky
2. a) keen
3. d) homeschooling
4. b) electrician
5. d) Bullying
6. a) serious
7. c) brilliant
8. c) bridge
9. c) instance
10. b) continue
11. a) equipment
12. c) a success
13. d) statement
14. d) so-called
15. c) confidence
16. a) had forgotten
17. a) than
18. a) had fallen
19. d) did I arrive
20. a) until
21. d) After
22. c) had
23. d) Having
24. b) because
25. a) hadn't eaten
26. a) when
27. d) had lived
28. a) travelled
29. c) had caused
30. d) didn't

Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) To meet new people.
2. b) reduce their impact on the environment
3. b) new phrases
4. c) monuments
5. d) famous
6. b) Travellers and Tourists
7. b) go to local restaurants

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. b) لقد أصبح واضحًا أن أخطر مشكلة تؤثر علينا فى الوقت الحالى هى زيادة عدد الأشخاص الذين يسكنون هذا الكوكب بالفعل.
2. d) إن الفرق بين الناجحين والفاشلين هو أن الناجحين رفضوا أن يظلوا فاشلين ولم يتوقفوا أبدًا عن المحاولة.
3. c) إن الأخلاق والقيم الحسنة للشعب المصرى تظهر فى أوقات المصاعب والأزمات كما رأيناها فى انتشار فيروس كورونا.
4. b) إن التكنولوجيا سلاح ذو حدين لأنها السلّم الذى ترتقى عليه البشرية وتتقدم ولكنها من الممكن أن تكون أداة للتدمير.
5. c) أن شخصية كل فرد مختلفة ومتميزة كبصمات الأصابع ونحن نستطيع أن نرى شخصية الناس فى كيفية تعاملهم مع الآخرين.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

6. b) No sooner had he got to his office than he ordered his usual drink and started his work actively.
7. b) In most countries, men usually catch heart diseases more than women. Doctors say that heart disease is associated with life stress, lifestyle and the kind of food.
8. b) Many Egyptian writers have written articles and books arguing for women's rights and the equality between them and men.
9. c) The government has made an ambitious plan to upgrade education, raise the teacher's level and attract students to attend school.
10. a) After the Ministry of Antiquities had restored Kebash Road in Luxor, it held a great celebration for its inauguration, which was attended by the President of the Republic.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 9)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. b) for / c) with
2. a) earlier / b) former

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. a) equipment
4. d) expert
5. a) especially
6. a) team
7. d) feelings
8. c) with
9. c) a while
10. a) had invited
11. c) had already eaten
12. a) are being cleaned
13. a) got
14. c) obtained
15. c) use
16. d) leaving

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) They watched insects.
18. d) a, b and c
19. a) Sleep.
20. b) sleep
21. c) Their brain is simple.
22. a) Insects' sleep
23. d) barely move



24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

c) Boarding schools are considered an ideal solution to students from all over the republic as they spend most of their time inside schools and do different activities besides study.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

d) يجـب أن تكـون الوظيفـة مجرد مصدر للمال ولكن يجب أن تكون أيضـا طريـق لتطوير النفس ولذلك فإن إيجـاد وظيفة في مجال تستمتع به هو عامل مهم جدًا.

26. **Answer the following question:**

Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

Left to the student.

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) tiring
2. d) skills
3. b) rewarding
4. c) route
5. b) career
6. d) contract
7. a) eligible
8. d) qualifications
9. b) flight attendant
10. a) options

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) doing
2. c) deadline
3. b) decline
4. a) mercy
5. d) challenges
6. c) happy
7. b) down
8. c) having
9. c) with
10. c) with

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) qualified
2. c) as
3. c) care
4. a) in
5. d) apply
6. b) a graduate
7. a) for

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) qualifications
2. d) skills
3. b) natural
4. a) do
5. d) construction
6. c) degree
7. c) apprenticeship
8. b) frustrating
9. c) stressful
10. d) stressed
11. a) compassionate
12. c) pursue
13. d) vast
14. b) have
15. c) interact
16. a) construction
17. d) practical
18. a) Industry
19. b) rewarding
20. c) particular
21. c) apprenticeship
22. d) variety
23. a) various
24. d) destruction
25. b) compassionate
26. d) eligible
27. b) reassured
28. a) down
29. a) amazingly / e) astonishingly
30. a) annoy / d) worry
31. b) upgrade / d) better
32. b) care for / d) take care of
33. b) is a graduate of / d) graduated f

Check Point (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) said
2. a) told
3. c) had had
4. a) was doing
5. c) the previous week

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) told
2. b) was meeting
3. c) wouldn't be
4. c) had taught
5. a) gets
6. a) will meet
7. d) told
8. a) mix/get
9. b) would travel
10. c) said
11. c) hadn't found
12. d) had gone
13. b) the following lesson
14. b) would travel
15. d) had been repaired
16. c) was
17. c) was travelling
18. b) had to
19. d) likes
20. a) had met
21. b) had eaten
22. d) are going
23. d) had arrived
24. c) said
25. b) if
26. d) told
27. b) is going to sell
28. b) said to
29. a) said
30. d) did
31. d) would call
32. a) wants
33. c) was going
34. a) were going
35. c) had to sleep

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) practical
2. a) apply
3. d) training
4. d) apprenticeship
5. b) qualified
6. c) casualty
7. b) eligible
8. c) involve
9. d) industries
10. c) airline
11. d) construction
12. c) qualifying
13. a) attendants
14. b) non-biased
15. a) compassionate
16. a) said
17. b) had flown
18. c) is
19. c) was making
20. b) was watching
21. a) had done
22. a) was
23. c) told
24. b) is
25. b) had bought
26. c) would help
27. a) will be
28. d) had
29. a) said
30. d) get

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) engines
2. d) loyal
3. c) plumber
4. a) immediate
5. d) patient
6. c) professional
7. b) teammate
8. c) Fair
9. a) communities
10. c) experience

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) aged
2. a) for
3. a) trustful
4. c) secondary
5. a) at
6. c) rely
7. d) variety
8. d) unfaithful
9. b) on
10. d) reliable

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) for
2. a) in
3. a) experiences
4. b) to
5. a) job
6. a) someone to
7. c) In
8. b) experiments
9. d) career
10. a) for

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) community
2. d) teammates
3. b) adapt
4. a) patient
5. d) qualities
6. b) firefighters
7. a) flexible
8. c) punctual
9. d) reliable
10. c) required
11. b) flexible
12. a) vet
13. d) honest
14. b) main
15. c) reliable
16. b) sirens
17. d) detail
18. c) plenty
19. b) immediate
20. d) did
21. b) loyal
22. d) cuisine
23. c) experiments
24. d) experienced
25. a) punctual
26. b) availability
27. a) available
28. c) rigid / d)inflexible
29. d) essential / e)vital
30. a) do / c) take
31. c) if / e)when

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) if
2. d) I could
3. a) whether
4. c) she is studying
5. b) the station is

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) asked
2. a) if
3. b) could score
4. b) breaking
5. b) I had gone
6. c) she had been ill
7. c) asked
8. b) whether
9. c) preferred
10. d) asked
11. c) should
12. d) was doing
13. d) she is
14. c) whether
15. b) was reading
16. a) have told
17. b) apologised
18. c) he is
19. d) I will take
20. b) prefer
21. c) tell
22. c) inquired
23. b) where
24. a) go
25. c) Don't
26. d) asked
27. a) you are
28. c) I had solved
29. c) no word
30. c) whether
31. c) no word
32. b) by whom the money had been stolen.
33. c) offered to carry the bag for me

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) team player
2. b) fancied
3. d) cuisine
4. a) punctual
5. d) interests
6. a) availability
7. a) job
8. c) qualities
9. a) flexible
10. a) communities
11. b) confident
12. c) communicator
13. c) adopt
14. b) do
15. c) firefighter
16. b) asked
17. c) she could get
18. b) tell
19. d) promised
20. d) whether
21. c) what
22. d) asked
23. b) he had put
24. a) he had earned
25. d) I had gone
26. b) would do
27. c) if he came
28. d) do you visit
29. a) had finished
30. b) advised

Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) women are superior to men
2. d) women are bad drivers
3. a) Responsible
4. c) women
5. c) women are less practical and less mechanically-minded
6. d) Being wives and mothers
7. d) more important than

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. c) إن سيناء جزء غالٍ من بلدنا وهى ليست مجرد صحراء فى شمال شرق مصر ولكنها رمز لكفاحنا ضد الأعداء على مر التاريخ.
2. a) إن الإنسان اجتماعى بطبيعته وبسبب هذه الحقيقة يجب على الأشخاص أن ينتبهوا جيدًا لكل شىء يفعلونه لأنه يؤثر على المجتمع من حولهم سواء بشكل إيجابى أو سلبى.
3. c) يجب على المرشحين للوظائف أن يكون لديهم معرفة بلغة أجنبية واحدة على الأقل وأيضًا يجب أن يكون لديهم مهارات الحاسب الآلى.
4. b) فى الواقع نحن أكثر حظًا بكثير من أجدادنا لأننا نتمتع بالكثير من الأشياء التى جعلت حياتنا أسهل وأكثر راحة.
5. a) لحل مشكلة عجز المياه فإن العالم يقتصد فى استخدام المياه وهناك حل آخر وهو إعادة استخدام المياه.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

6. d) Dams are built to store additional amounts of water behind them, which can be used later, such as the High Dam in Egypt.
7. b) We must reduce environmental pollution by planting trees and reducing the use of power inside or outside homes.
8. c) Everyone in society has a dream they hope to achieve in the future and they should work hard to achieve it.
9. c) The revolution in using computers and the internet has led to connecting every school in Egypt to the internet.
10. c) The media announced that there would be talks between the two warring parties the following week under the auspices of the United Nations.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 10)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. a) major / d) basic
2. a) at the age of / c) aged

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. a) flexible
4. c) required
5. d) plumber
6. c) hardworking
7. d) training
8. a) practical
9. d) experience
10. d) say
11. d) is
12. b) was cleaning
13. a) suggested
14. c) the previous day
15. d) are going
16. c) had been doing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) Doing business online.
18. a) Time spent with children at home.
19. c) employees
20. b) aren't watched
21. c) The benefits companies can get from having telecommuters.
22. b) inactive
23. d) Both a & b.

24. **Choose the correct English translation:**
b) Reclaiming more deserts and developing farming methods to produce more crops are the two positive solutions to the problem of food shortage.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**
c) أن تنوير الشباب بالآثار المدمرة لتعاطي المخدرات والصحبة السيئة هي مسئولية الآباء والمدرسة والجامعات.

26. **Answer the following question:**
Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**
Left to the student.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Units 9 & 10)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. b) necessary / c) essential
2. a) generate / d) make

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. c) punctual
4. d) a graduate
5. a) deadline
6. b) rewarding
7. c) wreck
8. b) boarding
9. d) make
10. b) Don't
11. a) could help
12. c) meant
13. c) had finished
14. a) lived
15. c) 'd changed
16. a) telephoned

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) twice
18. d) stayed without moving
19. c) the man and the monkey finished their performance
20. d) the monkey
21. b) honest
22. d) he shared in buying this monkey
23. a) He was holding the dead monkey in his arms.

24. **Choose the correct English translation:**
c) There is no doubt that polluted water is not drinkable and dangerous as it causes diseases and destroys the environment, animals and fish.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**
d) يفشل معظم الناس فى حياتهم ليس لأنهم لا يعرفون وظيفتهم ولكن لأنهم يستسلمون بعد أول فشل.

26. **Answer the following question:**
Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**
Left to the student.

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) polio
2. a) achieved
3. d) champion
4. b) Cycling
5. a) opportunity
6. d) muscles
7. a) colleagues
8. c) issue
9. b) amazing
10. a) campaign

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) achievement
2. c) came
3. b) give up
4. a) in
5. a) determine
6. a) materialistic
7. a) gave
8. a) went
9. d) part in
10. d) challenge

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) go
2. d) against
3. a) in
4. d) b & c
5. b) about
6. c) events

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) medal
2. d) traditional
3. d) disability
4. c) achievable
5. a) ensure
6. b) ramp
7. b) Kung fu
8. c) muscles
9. a) equal
10. a) competing
11. c) activist
12. a) affected
13. b) effect
14. c) campaign
15. d) outstanding
16. a) podcasts
17. c) opportunity
18. c) inspire
19. b) campaign
20. a) spina bifida
21. d) determination
22. a) Sociology
23. d) dedicate
24. c) ramp
25. a) sacrifice
26. b) highs and lows
27. a) for
28. d) privately / e) individually
29. a) discouraged / d) depressed
30. a) do / e) play
31. c) at / d) in

Check Point (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) who
2. b) which
3. c) who
4. d) which
5. b) which

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) which
2. c) whose
3. b) that
4. b) who
5. b) which
6. b) whose
7. b) which
8. c) which
9. b) where
10. d) who
11. c) where
12. b) when
13. b) whose
14. c) whose
15. c) which
16. b) who's
17. c) which
18. d) with which
19. d) whom
20. c) where
21. c) whose
22. b) which
23. b) whom
24. a) to whom
25. b) whose
26. d) from whom
27. b) in whose
28. c) whose
29. a) where
30. d) where
31. a) who
32. d) which
33. a) whose

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) medals
2. a) muscles
3. d) dedicated
4. a) campaign
5. b) promoted
6. d) wheelchair
7. a) campus
8. c) Ramps
9. d) media
10. d) charity
11. c) marketing
12. a) championship
13. c) event
14. b) lows
15. c) sacrifices
16. c) who
17. a) whose
18. d) where
19. b) whose
20. d) who
21. a) that
22. b) where
23. b) that
24. c) whose
25. a) whom
26. b) from which
27. d) who's
28. b) where
29. c) in which
30. b) which

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) hole
2. b) polite
3. a) noisy
4. d) repair
5. d) train
6. c) crew
7. a) support
8. d) sales
9. d) bothers
10. c) apologise

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) employer
2. a) employees
3. b) employable
4. c) trained
5. b) annoy
6. a) for
7. c) calm
8. d) make
9. b) to
10. c) for

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) colleagues
2. b) trainers
3. d) of
4. d) place
5. c) interview

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) polite
2. d) hole
3. b) noisy
4. c) staff
5. a) train
6. d) training
7. c) afraid
8. a) department
9. b) sales
10. c) apologise
11. b) regard
12. d) apologise
13. c) regards
14. c) undercooked
15. b) supportive
16. c) place
17. b) appointment
18. c) management
19. c) support
20. a) booked
21. b) employers
22. b) applied
23. c) department
24. c) staff
25. c) conference
26. c) bother
27. a) make
28. b) damage / e) break
29. a) encourage / e) aid
30. c) got / d) arrived
31. b) took place / d) occurred
32. a) bother / c) annoy

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) who's
2. d) at which
3. a) what
4. c) to which
5. d) at which
6. b) written
7. d) for which
8. d) driving
9. b) caught
10. c) that
11. d) I met
12. d) that
13. d) what
14. d) running
15. b) what
16. a) who's
17. a) leading
18. d) that
19. a) which
20. d) from whom
21. d) where
22. d) on which
23. a) no word
24. b) arriving
25. b) from whom
26. d) that
27. c) What
28. b) wearing
29. c) containing
30. d) carried
31. a) I'd lent her

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) interview
2. b) staff
3. b) department
4. d) soup
5. b) regards
6. b) undercooked
7. b) trainer
8. a) hole
9. a) support
10. c) complaint
11. d) repair
12. b) noisy
13. c) down
14. a) afraid
15. b) forward
16. b) from
17. c) in which
18. b) what
19. d) painted
20. d) by which
21. b) what
22. d) about
23. a) cleaning
24. c) no word
25. a) which
26. b) organised
27. a) what
28. c) why
29. c) I applied for
30. c) , who is 60,

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) to make a future profit
2. b) Investing money
3. b) money
4. b) reduces
5. b) It is not recommended
6. d) Master.
7. a) To put it in the bank.



2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. d) هناك عدة أشياء من الممكن أن تقال فى صالح التقدم التكنولوجى فهو بلا شك يجعل حياة الناس أسهل.
2. a) إن المواطنين الصالحين هم هؤلاء الذين يكرسون أنفسهم وأوقاتهم وأموالهم لرفاهية عائلاتهم.
3. b) هل تعتقد أن العقاب يمنع الأطفال من ارتكاب الأخطاء؟ الكثير من الخبراء يعتقدون أن العقاب طريقة سلبية لتربية الأطفال.
4. c) فى الماضى كانت المرأة محرومة تمامًا من ممارسة أى حقوق خاصة الحقوق السياسية.
5. b) تقف قواتنا المسلحة ضد أى تهديد خارجى أو داخلى لكى نتمكن من العيش ونحن نشعر بالأمن والأمان.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

6. b) In their writings, a lot of writers depend on non-fiction novels and they think that they give us more experiences in life.
7. d) Crime rates have recently risen remarkably in our society. It is a dangerous phenomenon to which we must cooperate to find a radical solution.
8. a) We should be proud of our athletes with special needs who made great sports achievements that able-bodied athletes couldn't make.
9. d) The Youth Forum that is held every year in Egypt is a great chance for youth from all over the world to exchange experiences and cultures.
10. b) We have a precious gem inside the skull which is more important than any computer; it is the brain without which man can't move or think.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 11)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. a) noisy / c) blaring
2. c) please / d) satisfy

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. a) achieving
4. c) campaign
5. c) inspire
6. b) staff
7. b) effect
8. a) championship
9. d) activists
10. a) whose
11. c) where
12. b) who
13. c) where
14. d) which
15. c) with whom
16. b) where I worked

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) Teen Stress
18. d) stress
19. d) caffeine
20. d) caffeine
21. a) within control
22. c) quality
23. a) have enough sleep

24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

d) Sport has a great role in fighting and solving social problems such as crime, violence and addiction. Also, it helps children and youth to have an effective character.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

b) إن الأفلام التى يتم إنتاجها كل عام من الممكن أن تغير المجتمع بسهولة ولكن من المهم أن تركز على التغييرات الإيجابية والنقد البناء.

26. **Answer the following question:**

Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

Left to the student.

Unit 12

Part (1)
Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) offer
2. d) cottages
3. b) unpleasant
4. a) manual
5. b) disappeared
6. d) condition
7. d) realised
8. c) weaver
9. d) Artificial
10. b) guilty

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) to
2. c) efficiently
3. a) on
4. c) pleasant
5. c) mysterious
6. a) about
7. d) alone
8. a) deny
9. c) mystery
10. d) feel sorry

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) rob
2. a) cloth
3. b) robbed/stole
4. c) a few
5. c) to
6. b) clothing
7. c) a little
8. a) robbed

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) stole
2. c) prove
3. a) customer
4. c) empty
5. a) offered
6. b) guilty
7. b) mystery
8. c) weaver
9. c) disappeared
10. c) mysterious
11. c) operate
12. a) instead
13. b) solve
14. d) proved
15. c) engaged
16. a) married
17. c) fireplace
18. d) joined
19. a) conditions
20. d) trust
21. a) unpleasant
22. d) to
23. d) machinery
24. c) clothing
25. b) robbed
26. a) robbed
27. a) blank / d) vacant
28. b) faint / c) faded
29. c) care for / d) take care of
30. a) earn / e) make

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) might
2. c) might be
3. b) must be
4. b) must have been
5. c) must
6. a) may
7. c) might
8. b) can't
9. a) can't have got
10. a) must
11. a) must
12. b) must have gone
13. a) must be
14. c) can't
15. a) might
16. c) can't have
17. a) must have lost
18. a) must have been
19. b) must have been
20. b) must have run
21. a) must
22. c) must have rained
23. c) must have forgotten
24. d) can't have grown
25. c) could
26. a) can't
27. b) must
28. a) might have been stolen
29. b) must have escaped
30. c) must have
31. c) can't have seen
32. c) can't have finished
33. a) I'm sure that she understood the lesson
34. a) it's possible that I have left the air conditioner on
35. d) we feel sure that it isn't easy for him to do so

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) special
2. c) mystery
3. b) manual
4. c) guilty
5. a) efficiently
6. b) empty
7. d) weave
8. a) crazy
9. a) solve
10. b) disappearance
11. d) stealing
12. d) unpleasant
13. c) to
14. c) disappeared
15. c) prove
16. d) can't be
17. a) must be
18. a) must
19. d) might
20. d) can't
21. b) must be
22. c) must have taken
23. a) must
24. a) can't
25. b) must have made
26. a) must
27. b) can't have locked
28. a) must have left
29. d) can't have been moved
30. b) must have been

Check Point (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) crime
2. b) share
3. b) traditional
4. c) legend
5. b) monster
6. b) abandoned
7. c) page-turner
8. c) warehouse
9. d) buried
10. d) treasure

Check Point (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) boring
2. d) to
3. d) bury
4. c) north of
5. d) conventional
6. b) distant
7. d) equally
8. a) deep
9. c) traditional
10. c) of

Check Point (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) beach
2. a) shore
3. a) lies
4. d) come
5. d) leak

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) character
2. a) plot
3. d) close
4. a) divided
5. c) stone
6. c) puzzle
7. d) beach
8. b) gone
9. c) bear
10. b) ensure
11. b) BCE
12. a) go
13. b) equally
14. a) pace
15. b) archaeologists
16. b) warehouse
17. d) monster
18. a) buried
19. c) theme
20. b) leaked
21. c) revise
22. b) abandoned
23. d) remember
24. b) community
25. a) legend
26. d) theme
27. b) displeasure / e) sadness
28. a) comical / b) humorous
29. b) the south of / d) southern
30. a) next / e) close
31. b) untraditional / e) up-to-date

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) shouldn't have done
2. b) ought to have come
3. b) should not be
4. a) ought not to have been
5. b) shouldn't
6. c) should
7. b) could have done
8. a) can't
9. c) must be
10. a) couldn't go
11. c) couldn't
12. c) can't
13. c) could have spent
14. a) should have told
15. c) could
16. c) can't have bought
17. d) shouldn't have eaten
18. d) should have been
19. d) shouldn't
20. c) ought
21. b) can't be
22. d) should
23. c) could have gone
24. b) could have lent
25. d) can't have driven
26. d) couldn't have seen
27. c) could have hurt
28. c) we know it was impossible for her to do it
29. d) Both a & c
30. a) it was impossible for me to have arrived any earlier
31. c) I went to bed late and now I regret that
32. d) Both a & b
33. a) it was impossible for him to pass the exam

Test yourself Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) checked
2. a) Treasure
3. b) adopted
4. b) lie
5. a) crimes
6. b) warehouse
7. c) puzzle
8. c) divided
9. d) equally
10. b) prove
11. b) characters
12. b) explain
13. d) interesting
14. a) laugh
15. b) describe
16. c) shouldn't
17. d) ought not to
18. b) ought to
19. a) should have applied
20. a) could have been
21. b) should have asked
22. c) shouldn't have
23. c) couldn't have
24. d) should have stayed
25. c) shouldn't have watched
26. d) could have known
27. a) couldn't have talked
28. c) I'm sure that Ali didn't go to school by bus although it was possible
29. a) could have bought
30. b) shouldn't

Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) a hydrogen bomb has been perfected
2. d) the hydrogen bomb could kill far more people than the atomic bomb
3. c) the world would not have known how powerful the atomic bomb was
4. c) another war
5. a) the whole world would be destroyed
6. b) the great power of such destructive weapons
7. c) an atomic bomb is far more powerful than any bomb used before

2 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. d) أن الصداقة الحميمة هى أكثر أشكال الدعم الاجتماعى تأثيرًا فهى تهدىء من آثار التوتر وتؤدى إلى صحة نفسية وبدنية أفضل.
2. d) لقد أصبحت الرياضة واحدة من اكثر الوسائل تأثيرًا فى تحقيق السلام والاستقرار فى كل أنحاء العالم.
3. b) يوجد بعض الإجراءات البسيطة والتى من الممكن أن تحافظ على صحتك لفترة طويلة وأول هذه الإجراءات هى أن تغسل أسنانك مرتين يوميًا.
4. d) يجب على الحكومة أن تعمل بجد لتحسين البنية التحتية للكثير من العشوائيات وإلا سنواجه الكثير من الكوارث.
5. a) فى الماضى كانت النساء تعانى كثيرًا من الأمية والتمييز من حيث النوع وأيضًا لم يكن لديهن أى حقوق سياسية.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

6. c) It is known that much fear of exams is a double-edged weapon; it sometimes makes you study and sometimes makes you stressed.
7. b) We must take into consideration that there are many people who are in need of help to overcome their fears.
8. c) Illiteracy, ignorance and poverty are the real enemies that prevent the progress of any nation. Thus, there must be suitable solutions to get rid of them.
9. b) Respecting and appreciating the teacher is the duty of every individual in society, because the teacher is the basis of the educational process.
10. a) For sure the car is broken down; it hasn't moved for ages and no one of its owners comes to take it.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. a) amusing / d) entertaining
2. b) shallow / e) superficial

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. b) guilty
4. a) lonely
5. a) lies
6. b) ensure
7. d) shape
8. a) archaeologist
9. c) solve
10. c) should have taken
11. b) couldn't have caught
12. c) shouldn't have done
13. b) should have gone
14. b) could have called
15. a) couldn't have passed
16. d) could have been

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. a) annoyed
18. b) unless they are hungry
19. d) forest
20. a) lions
21. c) attack
22. d) Animals and plants
23. c) Zebra

24. **Choose the correct English translation:**
c) Many people object to the so-called globalisation because they think that it serves rich countries not the poor ones.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**
d) إحدى إجراءات حل مشكلة الزيادة السكانية هى تثقيف الكثير من الناس بضرورة إنجاب طفل أو طفلين على الأكثر.

26. **Answer the following question:**
Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**
Left to the student.

Treasure Island Exercises

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) pirate
2. b) tricks
3. c) win
4. a) firewood
5. c) truce
6. a) went
7. d) guard
8. d) fort
9. b) chain
10. c) offer
11. d) sand
12. d) fence
13. b) made
14. a) hide
15. d) fence

(B) Answer the following question:

Left to the student.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 8)

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) anchor
2. d) steer
3. a) waves
4. b) fired
5. b) cliff
6. b) dead
7. b) distant
8. c) noise
9. b) parrot
10. a) rope
11. b) mist
12. a) picked
13. b) weakly
14. a) preparing
15. c) climbing

(B) Answer the following question:

Left to the student.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 9)

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) fighting
2. b) bandage
3. c) wreck
4. a) knives
5. b) deck
6. a) wound
7. b) mud
8. d) close
9. a) down
10. c) sailed
11. a) painfully
12. c) went
13. a) shallow
14. a) thirsty
15. c) paddling

(B) Answer the following question:

Left to the student.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 10)

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) remained
2. d) gang
3. a) trial
4. b) adventure
5. a) save
6. b) trapped
7. d) care
8. c) torch
9. d) mean
10. a) out
11. a) rules
12. c) on my own
13. d) wastes
14. b) into
15. d) alive

(B) Answer the following question:

Left to the student.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 11)

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) nodded
2. b) reminded
3. c) trick
4. a) voice
5. c) negotiate
6. a) agreement
7. a) patient
8. d) except
9. b) trust
10. c) follows
11. b) arrested
12. b) promise
13. d) arrested
14. d) stay
15. b) useful

(B) Answer the following question:

Left to the student.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapter 12)

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) attach
2. a) cave
3. b) dig
4. c) spades
5. c) terrible
6. d) crew
7. d) smile
8. b) supplies
9. b) skeleton
10. d) useless
11. a) ground
12. c) playing
13. d) point
14. d) slow
15. b) comfortable

(B) Answer the following question:

Left to the student.



Booklet Answers

Part 3

1. Reading Comprehension Exercises

Passage No. 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) our bodies lose energy
2. d) Experts
3. c) a cup of tea
4. c) miss
5. a) when they don't eat breakfast
6. a) they had skipped breakfasts
7. c) a well-balanced breakfast

Passage No. 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) most guests had left
2. d) too late
3. a) travelled to the village, but failed to congratulate their friend
4. a) the tyre had a puncture
5. b) they were behind a giant lorry they couldn't pass
6. b) puncture
7. a) lorry

Passage No. 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) enhance
2. c) serves teachers and learners
3. c) private lessons
4. a) increases their school performance
5. d) The teacher is the only source of education.
6. b) How technology can improve education
7. b) parents

Passage No. 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) Because it had engine trouble.
2. d) kept looking at their watches
3. a) had met after a long period of missing each other
4. c) anxious
5. d) in one of the waiting rooms
6. c) let the time pass quickly
7. d) walking in the fresh air

Passage No. 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) its supplies are small in amount
2. d) are very costly
3. b) have failed till now in their attempts
4. c) Nuclear power stations.
5. a) serious
6. a) sea
7. a) oil

Passage No. 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) bleed
2. d) strong
3. a) transfusion
4. c) a long time
5. a) the same
6. d) donate
7. b) death

Passage No. 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) increase
2. a) How hard it is to find the autograph
3. c) common
4. c) a business that sells autographs
5. d) Collecting autographs can be a business.
6. d) autograph hounds
7. b) Abraham Lincoln's.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) writing a piece of music
2. b) unintelligent
3. d) exchange
4. c) Better handwriting.
5. d) Left-handed people are more gifted than once thought.
6. b) 50
7. d) normally

Passage No. 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) borrow
2. d) tuition and room
3. a) money
4. c) Money matters.
5. c) about $15,000
6. b) in different groups
7. d) less than

Passage No. 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) She is studying for a degree though she's old.
2. c) She wants to inspire children to learn.
3. b) Her family could not pay for her education.
4. a) It is never too late to learn.
5. a) Any other people.
6. d) Unusual in a way that is surprising.
7. c) education

2. Writing Exercises

Student's own answer.

3. Translation Exercises

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. b) تبنى العديد من الدول السدود لتخزين الكثير من الماء خاصة فى موسم الأمطار لتستفيد منها فى فصل الجفاف وأيضًا لتوليد الكهرباء.

2. d) إن إهدار الماء مشكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخرًا. بعض الناس المهملين يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أى إحساس بالواجب أو المسئولية.

3. a) الخيال العلمى أحد أفضل الطرق للتعبير عن المستقبل. من المعتقد أن أعمال الخيال العلمى تنبأت بالكثير من الاختراعات.

4. d) تؤدى التجارة العالمية إلى نمو اقتصادى كبير فى أقاليم مختلفة فى كل أنحاء العالم؛ لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.

5. a) أصبح العيش فى مدينة كبيرة نمط حياة غير صحى وضار، فلا يوجد شىء غير شوارع مليئة بعوادم السيارات والضوضاء، الأمر الذى يؤثر على صحة الناس وأعصابهم.

6. d) إن قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف إلى حماية أرواح المواطنين الأبرياء من تهور بعض السائقين.

7. b) يملك دخلنا القومى العديد من المصادر بعضها ثابت والبعض الآخر غير ثابت، ولكن تبقى السياحة والبترول وقناة السويس والضرائب الأكثر أهمية.

8. c) هل تعتقد أن ارتكاب الانسان للجرائم فى المجتمع مرتبط بعدوانية الإنسان الطبيعية أم أنها نتيجه للظروف المحيطه به؟

9. a) تساعد إقامة المشروعات الإنتاجية على توفير فرص عمل للشباب العاطل الذى يبحث عن وظيفة؛ لذلك فهى تساعدهم فى بدء حياة جيدة.

10. d) ممارسة الرياضة شىء مفيد للصغار والكبار على السواء. فهى تفيد الأشخاص بدنيًا وعقليًا فى نفس الوقت.

11. c) إن التكلفة العالية للمعيشة إحدى أصعب مشكلاتنا .لكى تنخفض الأسعار يجب على كل من الحكومة والأفراد العمل معًا.

12. b) كلما كنت طموحًا وجاد فى عملك، أصبحتَ أكثر نشاطًا.

13. d) إن تطوير النظام التعليمى ينبغى أن يكون عملية مرنة مستمرة تحتاج تفكير خارج الصندوق.

14. c) خذ النصيحة من الأناس الحكماء وذوى الخبرة وليس من الصحبة المرحة من حولك؛ والداك وأجدادك ومعلموك هم أفضل مرجع للنصائح الصادقة.

15. b) لا شك أن التعليم هو حجر الزاوية لتقدم الأمة. عندما تستثمر دولة ما فى التعليم، فإنها توقع عقدًا مع الرفاهية والازدهار.

B) **Choose the correct English translation:**

1. a) We should care about bringing up our children and their socialisation to become good citizens in the future.
2. a) Developing education and promoting the standard of the teacher and educational process are of the most important aims that should be achieved in the future.
3. d) It is necessary to build a strong generation of youth aware of the problems of their country and how to solve them.
4. d) A true friend is someone who is always there for you and stands beside you. He helps you find solutions to your problems.
5. c) Nations achieve progress through science, culture, good planning and hard work. This can result from good education.
6. c) Social networking sites play an important role in our lives, whether it is social, practical or even educational.
7. a) Teamwork is a means to achieve goals and accomplish work as it is a way to exchange experience.
8. c) The New Capital provides attractive investment opportunities to support the national economy and achieve sustainable development.
9. a) The youth should be armed with science and patience to be able to achieve their ambitions and dreams in the future.
10. d) The government does its best to enable the Egyptian citizen to face the high cost of living.
11. b) Some people make a big mistake by looking for fame because they think that it is the cause of happiness.
12. c) But for AI, man would keep making calculations manually which takes long tiring hours.
13. c) Unemployment is the most difficult challenge in many societies, so we must eliminate it.
14. d) Justice and wisdom are of the best human values whereas injustice and ignorance are of the worst human qualities.
15. d) Everyone can contribute to the prosperity of their country through hard work, persistence and tolerance.



Additional Exercises

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. من المعتقد أن الشباب وخصوصًا المراهقين لا يتصرفون حسب نصيحة كبار السن، حتى إنهم لا يلتفتون لخبراتهم.
2. إن مشاريع الاستثمار التى تنفذها الدولة وتدعو إليها يجب أن تجذب أكبر عدد ممكن من الشباب لوضع نهاية لمشكلة البطالة الخطيرة.
3. لا نســتطيع العيش بمفردنا وبعيدًا عن الآخرين ولكن نحن دائمًــا فى حاجة إلى هؤلاء الذين يعيشــون حولنا، ونحن نحتاج إلى الأصدقاء لكى ينصحونا ولكى نرتاح معهم.
4. بفضل علمائنا المشاهير العظماء أصبح لمصر مكان بارز فى مجالات علوم الأرض والعلوم الحديثة والطب ومجالات أخرى.
5. الكل يعرف أن الشخص الذى يقرأ سوف يكون ناجحًا والشخص الذى لا يقرأ لن يؤدى بشكل جيد، وفى النهاية يفشل فى الحياة.
6. إن التلوث من أخطر المشكلات التى لا تواجه مصر فقط، بل العالم كله أيضًا، فالتلوث هو التهديد الأخطر للبشرية.
7. إن الحصول على فترة مناسبة من النوم ليس فقط مهمًا فى قدرتك على العمل بشكل جيد أثناء النهار، ولكن أيضًا له تأثير على الصحة بشكل عام.
8. إن بلدنا فى حاجة إلى جهود كل فرد ويجب علينا أن نعمل بجد لكى ننتج ونصدر، ومن هنا نوفر العملة الصعبة ونحقق الرفاهية.
9. مما لا شك فيه أن التدخين عادة قاتلة وتبين التقارير أن عدد ضحايا التدخين يتزايد طوال الوقت.
10. إن الزلازل والبراكين والعواصف والأمواج العاتية (تسونامى) كلها ظواهر طبيعية تدمر كل إنجازات الإنسان.

B) Translate into English:

11. A number of great projects are being built now as the state is trying to solve the problem of overpopulation. The population is expected to increase in the future.
12. Success in anyone's life depends on patience and work hard. The student who starts studying their lessons at the beginning of the year won't have any difficulty in passing their exams.
13. Reading daily papers helps us to know what is happening around us all over the world and also provides us with much information about our local events and it is considered a source of culture for many people.
14. Those who defend themselves and their land against any enemy can't be called terrorists at all but they have the legal right to do their best and sacrifice to defend their countries.
15. Personal cleanliness is very important if you want to keep your health as it protects us from infections that pass rapidly from one person to another.
16. Social and political stability will bring more investments and refresh the economy and so improve the national income, individuals' income and we can achieve welfare for citizens.
17. Sport is not only for developing physical fitness but for developing mental fitness as well. Sport develops the brain and body together as "A sound mind is in a sound body."
18. Private and public sectors should be developed to provide work chances for graduates and overcome unemployment which in turn helps in eliminating violence and crime that are spreading in Egypt.
19. Father is the breadwinner of the family to provide them with protection and care, and mother is the cornerstone to provide them with emotion and love. So, we must give them enough interest and concern.
20. We should pay attention to the talented as they are the hope and future of the nation. So, we should provide them with special interest to keep their talents and develop them.



General Revision

Revision 1

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) allergy
2. a) breathe
3. a) dust
4. b) hygiene
5. c) respond
6. d) safety
7. b) grown
8. a) health
9. c) research
10. d) bin
11. a) soil
12. b) danger
13. a) service
14. c) CPR
15. a) least
16. c) avoid
17. d) wrapped
18. a) evacuated
19. c) hurt
20. b) apologise
21. b) benefits
22. a) familiar
23. c) navigate
24. b) robot
25. a) around
26. a) vehicle
27. d) click
28. c) out
29. b) air-conditioning
30. a) technology
31. d) out
32. b) invention
33. d) GPS
34. d) chosen
35. d) noticed
36. a) device
37. d) conditioning
38. d) relax
39. a) button
40. c) communicate

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) need
2. a) mustn't
3. c) ought
4. d) boil
5. b) mustn't
6. a) should
7. c) mustn't
8. b) mustn't
9. a) must
10. d) mustn't
11. a) had to
12. b) banned
13. b) mustn't
14. a) must
15. d) have to
16. d) Must
17. c) shouldn't have done
18. b) had to
19. c) had better
20. d) prohibition
21. b) needn't
22. d) have to
23. c) didn't have to
24. a) blame
25. d) You don't need to phone your brother today.
26. c) Were
27. c) were
28. a) would
29. d) don't get
30. d) eat
31. b) had
32. d) would
33. a) has
34. b) will catch
35. c) take
36. c) told
37. c) wouldn't be
38. b) will need
39. a) study
40. d) could you ask
41. b) am not
42. a) If
43. d) Should
44. a) should
45. c) necessary
46. d) Were he to come
47. a) on condition
48. b) ask
49. a) without
50. d) Were he clever, he would pass all his exams.

General Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. b) beneficial d) fruitful
2. a) stay e) keep

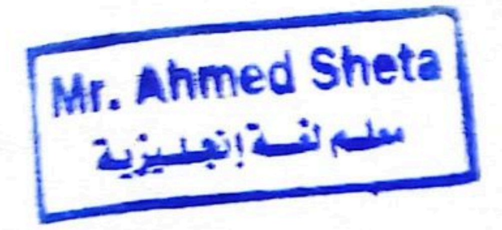
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. c) fire
4. b) downloaded
5. a) leaflet
6. a) invented
7. c) popular
8. b) dusty
9. b) must
10. a) phone
11. d) mustn't
12. c) ought
13. d) both a & c
14. b) would take
15. b) should
16. c) communicate

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. d) raising the cost of housing units astronomically
18. a) in which there is a great number of unoccupied apartments
19. c) a young man is usually forced to remain unmarried
20. d) couples
21. a) The housing problem
22. c) To make money.
23. b) unhealthy



24. Choose the correct English translation:

c) Unless I feel better, I will see the doctor again to make sure I'm OK.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

b) تم تقديم أول إنسان آلي صناعي في الولايات المتحدة في التسعينيات ومنذ ذلك الوقت تقدمت التكنولوجيا الخاصة بهم بسرعة والتي ابتكرت العديد من الاختيارات للإنسان الآلي.

26. Answer the following question:

Left to the student.

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Left to the student.

General Revision

Revision 2

Vocabulary Exercises

...se the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- b) cruel
- a) orphan
- c) governess
- a) employ
- d) honesty
- b) advertised
- d) education
- c) nearby
- b) wealthy
- a) fireplace
- d) continued
- b) explain
- c) brilliant
- c) exciting

15. d) with
16. d) waves
17. c) shallow
18. d) crash
19. b) destroy
20. a) term
21. c) apprenticeship
22. a) reassure
23. d) reliable
24. c) challenges
25. b) deadline
26. d) construction
27. b) compassion
28. a) loyal
29. d) degree
30. a) community
31. b) confidence
32. a) practical
33. c) fair
34. b) rewarding
35. a) flexible
36. c) frustrating
37. d) stressful
38. d) cuisine
39. b) for
40. a) sympathy

Language Exercises

...oose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) leaving
2. c) to be sent
3. c) was
4. b) have been cut
5. a) was discovered
6. d) is made
7. a) was solved
8. b) was built
9. c) will be invited
10. d) is found
11. c) arrested
12. c) designed
13. d) sent
14. b) was discovered
15. c) was awarded
16. a) visited
17. c) are kept
18. c) written
19. b) are being
20. a) punished
21. c) had been burnt
22. a) read
23. d) until
24. a) Had
25. a) was taken
26. b) had phoned
27. a) had left
28. b) had taken
29. a) wasn't allowed
30. c) when
31. a) would
32. c) would help
33. d) said
34. b) told
35. c) will buy
36. b) if
37. a) said
38. b) would go
39. b) not to waste
40. d) will have
41. c) he liked
42. a) told
43. c) had passed
44. b) would go
45. d) complained
46. a) spoke
47. c) told
48. c) meet
49. a) I will watch
50. b) he had been

General Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. c) keep e) stay

2. a) deep d) profound

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. c) allergy

4. a) button

5. b) eligible

6. d) contract

7. a) available

8. c) adapt

9. c) been arrested

10. b) explained

11. c) we will return

12. d) moved

13. a) had been explained

14. b) until

15. d) because

16. d) cuisine

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. a) shaking

18. c) dialogues

19. b) corrupting the youth of Athens

20. b) He drank a cup of poison

21. c) the method of arguing by asking

22. c) truth

23. b) Socrates

24. Choose the correct English translation:

a) Terrorism aims at creating an atmosphere of terror and destroying tourism industry which is one of the pillars of the national income.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

d) التعليم بالمنزل هو حل جيد لضمان جودة التعليم فعدد الطلاب صغير ويتعلمون كل شىء عن الحياة بجانب مواد الدراسة.

26. Answer the following question:

Left to the student.

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Left to the student.

Revision 3

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) activist
2. b) disability
3. d) inspire
4. d) achievement
5. a) muscles
6. a) achieved
7. b) charity
8. d) wheelchair
9. c) to
10. a) achieve
11. c) campaign
12. a) from
13. b) on
14. b) physical
15. b) improve
16. b) abandoned
17. a) members
18. b) physically
19. a) mentally
20. d) involves
21. b) pace
22. b) page-turner
23. d) pirate
24. b) ensure
25. b) engaged
26. a) weaver
27. c) disappeared
28. b) guilty
29. c) checked
30. c) mysterious
31. c) cottage
32. a) empty
33. d) stealing
34. a) faint
35. c) traditional
36. d) from
37. b) to
38. d) warehouse
39. b) empty
40. a) crime

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) which
2. a) whose
3. b) which
4. b) which
5. b) whom
6. b) when
7. d) that
8. a) that
9. d) whom
10. b) which
11. d) To whom
12. d) whose
13. a) which
14. a) whom
15. d) to whom
16. b) where
17. d) I wanted
18. a) in whose
19. c) no word
20. c) sitting
21. d) on which
22. c) what
23. d) who
24. d) no word
25. d) whose
26. c) which
27. c) who's
28. b) whose
29. a) must be
30. b) can't be
31. d) must have been
32. a) must have
33. a) can't be
34. b) must have
35. c) might have borrowed
36. a) must
37. a) might
38. c) must be
39. a) must
40. a) must be
41. b) could have gone
42. c) might have left
43. d) can't have lent
44. a) must
45. c) deduction
46. d) might have lost
47. c) can't be
48. b) must have been
49. b) must be
50. c) might have forgotten
51. a) must have

General Test

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. b) trapped d) locked
2. b) fruitful e) beneficial

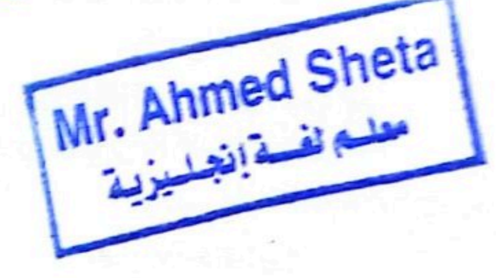
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. b) apologise
4. c) physical
5. d) wrap
6. a) comments
7. c) soil
8. b) broke
9. c) with whom
10. d) who's
11. a) what
12. a) what
13. c) whose
14. b) can't have been
15. d) can't have received
16. a) crime

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) he was corrupt
18. c) The briefcase had a bomb.
19. b) places
20. a) there was no evidence
21. d) corrupt
22. d) the same killer
23. c) The illegal justice



24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

    d) The environment pollution has become one of the main issues which attracted the attention of the whole world to reach a global solution

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

    a) يجب علينا نشر الوعي بين الأفراد لحماية أنفسهم من الكوارث عند حدوثها وتستطيع العروض التلفزيونية فعل ذلك جيدًا، لأن معظم الناس يشاهدونها.

26. **Answer the following question:**

    Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

    Left to the student.

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapters 7 & 8)

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) pirates
2. c) tricks
3. c) win
4. c) offer
5. a) went
6. d) fort
7. a) mist
8. d) fence
9. b) made
10. a) hide

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapters 9 & 10)

11. b) wreck
12. c) thirsty
13. d) both a & b
14. a) off
15. b) bandage
16. b) deck
17. d) wound
18. a) sail
19. a) off
20. a) close

Treasure Island Exercises (Chapters 11 & 12)

21. b) reminded
22. c) cry
23. d) following
24. c) malaria
25. c) on
26. a) came
27. d) point
28. a) skeleton
29. c) smile
30. c) supplies

(B) Answer the following question:

Left to the student.



Final Tests

Test (1)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. b) safety e) security
2. a) wealthy d) rich

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. d) answered
4. a) would happen
5. b) bullying
6. c) whether
7. d) evacuate
8. b) chatting
9. a) don't need
10. c) medical
11. a) had telephoned
12. d) was built
13. c) which
14. d) guilty
15. b) governess
16. c) must have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) fast
18. a) Giraffe's life
19. a) lovable
20. d) baby giraffes
21. c) leaves
22. a) necks
23. b) standing up

24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

    c) We must keep ourselves healthy. Good health requires getting healthy food, getting enough sleep, and exercising regularly.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

    d) إن المدرسة هى المكان الذى نتعلم فيه ونقوم بالأنشطة ونكوّن صداقات جديدة. فهى تلعب دورًا مهمًا فى حياتنا.

26. **Answer the following question:**

    Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

    Left to the student.

Test (2)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. a) useless b) unwanted
2. c) arrested e) caught

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. d) campaign
4. c) don't have to
5. d) a page-turner
6. b) which
7. d) hurts
8. b) had bought
9. c) was written
10. d) evacuate
11. a) on
12. a) plot
13. a) navigate
14. d) relaxing
15. b) chain
16. c) would help

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) The proper installation of home smoke detectors
18. a) on a ceiling, between four and twelve inches from a wall
19. c) fixed
20. b) Firefighters.
21. a) 50% better chance of surviving a fire
22. c) a home
23. c) garages
24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

    c) Modern technology has made human life easier than before. But at the same time, it may be a source of anxiety if a person misuses it.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

    d) إعطاء العون للآخرين ومشاركتهم أفراحهم وأحزانهم من أسمى الصفات التى يجب أن يتميز بها أى فرد فى المجتمع

26. **Answer the following question:**

    Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

    Left to the student.

Test (3)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

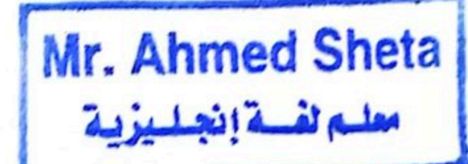
1. b) got e) became
2. a) better e) enhance

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. d) research
4. d) disadvantages
5. c) employ
6. b) flexible
7. a) evacuated
8. a) familiar
9. a) muscles
10. d) she had known
11. c) might
12. a) had
13. d) which
14. b) not to make
15. a) had waited
16. c) was

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) Trees take in oxygen.
18. a) timber
19. b) The importance of trees
20. d) Felling trees.
21. d) all of these
22. d) produce many drugs
23. d) impossible



24. **Choose the correct English translation:**
    c) All world countries must resort to the political solutions to their problems because wars lead to destruction.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**
    a) قد أصبح التواصل بين دول العالم أسهل، وهذا أدى إلى تنافس قاسٍ بين الأمم للحصول على التكنولوجيا المتقدمة.

26. **Answer the following question:**
    Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**
    Left to the student.

Test (4)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. c) relaxing e) comfortable
2. b) contains e) consists of

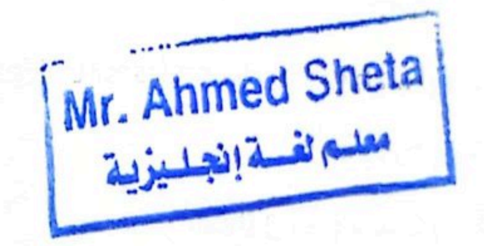
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. c) reassured
4. d) staff
5. a) proved
6. a) wealthy
7. b) burns
8. b) mystery
9. b) solve
10. a) can't be
11. d) had been washed
12. c) who
13. c) Was
14. d) Having
15. a) my son had gone
16. a) details

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. a) she was afraid of missing her train
18. c) did the last part of the journey by bus
19. b) a quick way
20. c) missed
21. a) She hit her head.
22. b) she was in a hurry and forgot
23. a) stopped until Mona got on



24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

    d) The recent generation should complete the achievements which were made by the previous ones in the past.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

    c) ليست الحياة دائمًا مريحة ومليئة بالرفاهية، فأحيانًا تكون شائكة ولذلك علينا أن نواجه مرارتها ونبذل أقصى جهد لجعلها أفضل.

26. **Answer the following question:**

    Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

    Left to the student.

Test (5)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. a) on board e) aboard
2. a) admired c) regarded

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. d) servants
4. c) attendant
5. b) relations
6. b) found out
7. a) serious
8. a) abroad
9. c) later
10. c) that he'd seen
11. d) born
12. d) were told
13. a) must
14. c) which
15. c) had
16. d) no word

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



17. c) calm
18. d) Establishing clear rules for children to follow
19. b) children
20. c) stop beating them
21. a) encourage them to follow the necessary rules
22. c) How to discipline naughty children
23. d) Children can imitate their parents.

24. Choose the correct English translation:

c) Everyone should play a positive role in the development of our country so that future generations can enjoy prosperity.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

b) تساعدنا تكنولوجيا الفضاء على فهم ما وراء الأرض ولقد ساعدتنا بالفعل بشكل كبير ونحن دائمًا ما نكتشف المزيد بسببها.

26. Answer the following question:

Left to the student.

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Left to the student.

Test (6)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. b) do e) practice
2. a) determine c) confirm

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. b) evacuated
4. b) feedback
5. d) confident
6. a) guilt
7. a) familiar
8. c) charities
9. d) navigate
10. b) Were
11. d) Having seen
12. c) which
13. c) can't
14. c) invented
15. b) should have called
16. b) tomorrow

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) get rid of their waste in streams, canals and rivers
18. d) yield
19. a) Natural life in danger
20. b) 4
21. b) their oil and meat
22. a) selfish desires
23. c) marine life
24. **Choose the correct English translation:**
    c) Parents are responsible for making the youth aware of the destructive effects of taking killing drugs.
25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**
    c) إن العديد من المراهقين يتعرضون للتنمر فى المدرسة، ويجب أن نساعدهم ونشجعهم على مواجهة المتنمرين وألا يخافوا منهم لكى نجعل مدارسنا آمنة للجميع.
26. **Answer the following question:**
    Left to the student.
27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**
    Left to the student.

Test (7)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. c) do e) cause
2. a) test e) exam

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. b) gets around
4. b) contact
5. d) guilty
6. c) allergy
7. c) navigate
8. c) inspire
9. b) competition
10. a) whose
11. b) mustn't
12. c) he liked
13. b) Without
14. b) went
15. d) can't be
16. d) had been arrested

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) increases appetite
18. d) stress
19. a) more
20. d) both a & b
21. a) The act of chewing.
22. c) Mild exercise.
23. c) eat more

24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

a) The concept of education has changed from memorisation and dictation to critical thinking and creativity.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

b) يتنبأ العديد من الخبراء أن سكان العالم سوف يزدادون إلى حوالى ١٠ مليارات بحلول عام ٢١٠٠ وفى هذا الوقت هم يعتقدون أن التغير السريع فى المناخ سوف يؤثر على البيئة.

26. **Answer the following question:**

Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

Left to the student.

Test (8)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. b) pressure c) stress
2. c) unfamiliar e) uncommon

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. b) interpreted
4. b) advertised
5. d) honesty
6. c) theme
7. a) complaint
8. b) about
9. a) secret
10. c) had
11. b) to be seen
12. c) collapsed
13. c) written
14. b) can't
15. b) must
16. d) get

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) increases
18. d) public transport
19. d) both b & c
20. a) 4.
21. c) release
22. c) Climatic changes.
23. c) burning fossil fuels

24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

c) No one can defeat you or hinder your success as long as you are armed with knowledge and hope.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

d) يعتبر التلفاز واحدًا من أرخص وأهم وسائل التسلية والمعلومات حيث إنه يعرض مجموعة من البرامج تروق لكل الناس من مختلف الأعمار.

26. **Answer the following question:**

Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

Left to the student.

Test (9)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. a) demerits d) disadvantages
2. a) from d) against

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. d) blankets
4. b) apps
5. a) appreciate
6. c) checked
7. d) nearby
8. b) BCE
9. a) monster
10. a) Unless
11. b) where he was
12. b) must have been
13. c) Having
14. c) hardly
15. d) no word
16. c) which

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. a) A laser beam
18. b) very important
19. b) incoherent
20. c) in one direction only
21. b) there wouldn't have been any inventions
22. d) the laser
23. b) The importance of the laser.



24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

c) Encouraging Egyptian products and strengthening the slogan "Made in Egypt" is a national duty that we all must do.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

b) عادة ما يفتخر الأصحاء بما يستطيعون تحقيقه فى مجالات الرياضة والعمل الشاق، أما بالنسبة لغير الأصحاء فالحياة ليست إلا ألمًا ومعاناة.

26. **Answer the following question:**

Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

Left to the student.

Test (10)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. b) effect c) impact
2. c) separated d) untied

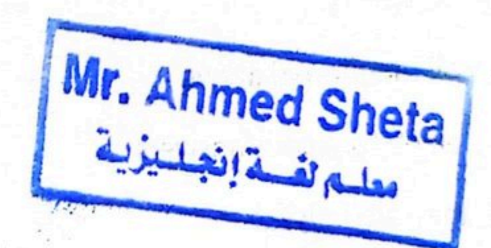
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. d) notice
4. c) GPS
5. a) Allergy
6. b) un-
7. a) compassion
8. c) retire
9. a) theme
10. d) shouldn't have made
11. b) that
12. a) will clean
13. d) can't have finished
14. c) until
15. a) watch
16. d) to have risen

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. d) Sports help students be headmasters.
18. d) guide
19. c) The importance of sport.
20. d) students
21. d) All mentioned above.
22. c) Europe
23. b) supports



24. **Choose the correct English translation:**
    c) New laws should be issued to organise the economic process and to invest capital safely.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**
    d) حينمـا يتمتـع الأفراد بالحرية فمن الممكن أن يحققوا التقدم فى كل المجالات، ولكن هذه الحرية ليسـت مطلقة فهى تنتهى عند حدود حرية الآخرين.

26. **Answer the following question:**
    Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**
    Left to the student.

Test (11)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. b) at once e) instantly
2. c) produce e) generate

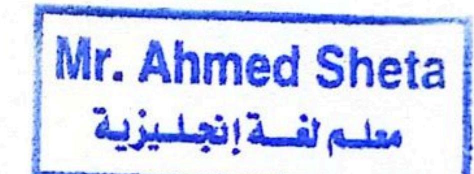
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. d) waste
4. a) navigate
5. a) ramps
6. b) stressful
7. b) explain
8. a) went
9. a) solution
10. b) paid
11. d) whom
12. d) had moved
13. d) recommended
14. d) mustn't break
15. b) unless
16. d) must have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. a) interesting people
18. d) simple services offered
19. a) Carpentry.
20. d) all mentioned above
21. d) all the previous answers
22. c) they are helpful
23. c) A retired officer.



24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

a) Drinking water has become a global problem that can lead to wars between several countries all over the world.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

a) لا يمكن أبدًا أن ننسى من يجعلون حياتنا سعيدة وبسيطة، ويجب عليك أن تكون صداقات مع مثل هؤلاء الأشخاص المذهلين من حولك لأنك نادرًا ما تجدهم.

26. **Answer the following question:**

Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

Left to the student.

Test (12)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. b) study d) should study
2. c) alive e) living

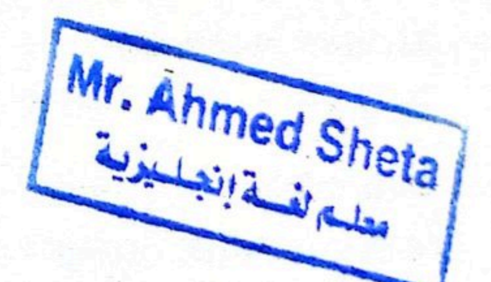
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. b) bedding
4. d) robot
5. a) loyal
6. b) powerlifting
7. a) charge
8. d) change
9. a) lonely
10. a) would you accept
11. d) have to
12. b) whose
13. b) only
14. c) wasn't allowed
15. b) had seen
16. a) what he said

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) double
18. d) arid
19. a) search for other sources of energy
20. a) The world's population
21. a) unpopulated
22. a) Only 1.
23. a) Much of the land is desert.



24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

a) The Book Fair is no longer a means to sell books only, but it has become a centre of culture, arts and science as well.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

d) إن التعلم عن طريق الإنترنت أصبح متزايدًا اليوم؛ لأن الكثير من الناس لديهم وسيلة لاستخدام الإنترنت. فمن الممكن أن تدرس فى أى وقت تختاره.

26. **Answer the following question:**

Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

Left to the student.

Test (13)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. a) individually c) privately
2. a) gone e) been

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. a) achieved
4. d) activist
5. a) divided
6. c) hygiene
7. d) quiz
8. a) rewarding
9. c) employee
10. d) had passed
11. c) can't
12. c) would be
13. c) who's
14. b) which
15. c) may have broken
16. a) whom

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) Teen stress
18. c) quality
19. d) stress
20. c) more stress
21. d) a mixed blessing
22. b) 4.
23. b) caffeine

24. Choose the correct English translation:

a) Every Egyptian must consider themselves as tour guides to flourish tourism because it is an important source of the national income.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

a) نستطيع المساعدة فى حل مشاكلنا ولكن فى النهاية يجب أن يأتى التغيير من الداخل عن طريق الاستثمارات القوية ليس فقط فى البنية التحتية ولكن أيضًا فى كل مجالات الحياة.

26. Answer the following question:

Left to the student.

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

Left to the student.

Test (14)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. d) get e) run
2. a) cruel e) merciless

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. d) housekeeper
4. b) wrong
5. a) opportunities
6. c) legend
7. a) monster
8. a) took off
9. c) traditional
10. c) go
11. b) were reported
12. d) that
13. c) is known
14. a) Without
15. b) left
16. a) can't

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) acting in a film
18. a) brain
19. d) Fighting
20. d) escape
21. a) best ways to defend yourself
22. b) How to think practically.
23. a) easy to attack
24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

    d) We seek to achieve stability and security to encourage investment in national projects all over the country.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

    c) يجب على الحكومة والأفراد الانتباه إلى مشكلة التنمر لأنها مشكلة خطيرة تهدد المجتمع بأكمله.

26. **Answer the following question:**

    Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

    Left to the student.

Test (15)

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1. c) the south of d) southern
2. b) deceitful e) dishonest

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. c) immediately
4. c) empty
5. b) contract
6. c) qualified
7. b) guilty
8. b) advertised
9. b) natural
10. b) Unless
11. d) from whom
12. d) where
13. d) had he watched
14. a) learning
15. a) must have spilt
16. b) asked

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



17. a) Pilgrimage
18. d) Travel to a healthy place.
19. a) springs
20. d) pilgrimage
21. c) they travelled on foot
22. c) different
23. a) on horseback or on foot

24. **Choose the correct English translation:**

a) Everyone should play a positive role in the development of our country so that future generations can enjoy prosperity.

25. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

a) إن الشـباب هم العمود الفقرى لأى أمة وأسـاس تقدمها، لذلك يجب على الحكومة توفير ضروريات الحياة لهم لتساعدهم على أن يكونوا مواطنين صالحين.

26. **Answer the following question:**

Left to the student.

27. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:**

Left to the student.



Gem

New Hello!

الصف الأول الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الثانى

On Track

By

Ahmed Fadel | Ayman M. Ebrahim | Emad Fawzy | Mohamed Abdel Aal

Test on Unit 7

40

Choose Two of the Five options: 4

1. A burglar could easily climb in through that window. The synonyms of the word "easily" are .... and ....
   a) smoothly b) simply c) hard
   d) difficultly e) safely
2. She found the keys at the bottom of her handbag. The antonyms of the word "bottom" are .... and ....
   a) sanitation b) hazard c) base
   d) peak e) top

Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d: 14

3. I have a/an .... to certain foods, so I can't eat any of them.
   a) emergency b) sense c) allergy d) experience
4. During the operation, his .... stopped three times before his death.
   a) blood b) breathing c) thinking d) moving
5. Follow your doctor's important ...., and you will stay away from infections.
   a) role b) advice c) rule d) operation
6. Mountain climbers need special .... in order to complete their mission properly.
   a) equalities b) quantities c) equipment d) apparatus
7. We can't make a cake without sugar. It is an important ....
   a) compound b) ingredient c) factor d) tool
8. Physical exercise can protect you .... heart disease.
   a) against b) with c) by d) for
9. I .... phone my father more often as he is very ill and it is very important for him.
   a) can b) need c) must d) might
10. He didn't pass his exams. He .... hard for them.
    a) should study b) must study
    c) should have studied d) can't study
11. You .... speak loudly, I can hear you and the baby is asleep.
    a) might b) mustn't c) must d) oughtn't
12. We .... cooperate to reduce pollution. It would be a good idea for us.
    a) must b) mustn't c) can't d) should be

13 They .... the meeting as I saw them in the street at the same time of the meeting.

a) must have attended b) might have attended
c) can't have attended d) shouldn't have attended

14 We .... have a licence to drive a car.

a) should b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to

15 I suggest he .... a formal e-mail to the company.

a) writes b) write c) should write d) both b & c

16 Please, don't waste your time before exams. This sentence expresses ....

a) order b) permission c) advice d) necessity

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 10

As I put my key into the keyhole, the door slid open, to my amazement, I saw that the kitchen light was on. I had left my house at about ten that morning and I could not explain why I might have left it on. It immediately dawned on me that someone had broken into the house and the first thing I thought of doing was to call on my neighbour Mr. Hassan.

As soon as we got into the hall, we found that everything was in a terrible mess. The armchairs were all overturned, two small tables lay turned over on the floor and the radio had been smashed. There could be no doubt that the burglar had left nothing untouched. Before going on to inspect the rest of the house, I called the police.

Then we went into my bedroom. All my clothes were thrown all over the bed and the floor. The bed cover had been removed and the mattress had been emptied of its feathers. The police officers arrived a few minutes later and made a thorough search and declared that the burglar must have been quite experienced for he had even ransacked the kitchen cupboards. I told the officers it would take me at least two day's hard work to sort out all those things and find out whether anything had been stolen. Fortunately, I never used to leave money in the house and the only thing that they could have taken would be my watch which I had left in the bathroom. We all went to the bathroom only to find the watch there. Mr Hassan remarked that burglars never imagined they could possibly find anything valuable in a bathroom.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 When the writer reached his house, he found the door ....

a) bolted
b) open
c) locked
d) unfastened

18 The police officers thought that the burglar was ....

a) foolish
b) clever
c) inexperienced
d) rash

19 The underlined word "we" refers to ....

a) the police officers
b) Mr Hassan and the writer
c) Mr Hassan and the police officer
d) Mr Hassan, the writer and the police officers

20 Burglars never imagined they could find .... things in a bathroom.

a) cheap
b) inexpensive
c) workless
d) precious

21 The word "declared" in the last paragraph means ....

a) guessed
b) announced
c) refused
d) denied

22 The writer called the police .... he went on to inspect the rest of the house.

a) after
b) as soon as
c) when
d) by the time

23 ...., the writer left the watch in the bathroom.

a) Luckily
b) Unluckily
c) Unfortunately
d) Likely

24 The police officers thought that the burglar must have been quite experienced as ....

a) he emptied the mattress of its feathers
b) he threw all the writer's clothes all over the bed
c) he smashed the radio
d) he even searched the kitchen cupboards carefully

25 The expression "dawned on me" in the first paragraph means ....

a) forgot
b) realised
c) suggested
d) dreamed

26 The best place to keep our valuables is ....

a) the house
b) the bathroom
c) the bank
d) the kitchen cupboard

27 Translate into English:

3

- إن الحفـاظ علـى نظافة البيئة أصبـح ضرورة. ولذلك يجب على كل من الأفراد والحكومات أن يتعاونوا لخلق بيئة صحية ونظيفة خالية من الأوبئة والأمراض.

....

....

....

....

....

28 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Vitamins are very necessary for good health. It is known that their absence may cause serious diseases. Foods that contain vitamins are called protective foods.

....

....

....

....

....

29 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

6

"Keeping the water of the Nile clean"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test on Unit 8

40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. The words ".................." and ".................." have the same meaning as the word "annoying".
   a) disturbing b) disgusting c) common
   d) familiar e) troublesome
2. The opposites of the word "useful" are .... and ....
   a) beneficial b) horrible c) harmful
   d) unfamiliar e) useless

Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d:

14

3. It's quite easy to .... Alexandria by car.
   a) get around b) get on c) get better d) get over
4. At work, we use an .... kettle to make tea.
   a) electric b) electrical c) electricity d) electrician
5. We are going on a .... to a strange country by plane.
   a) picnic b) voyage c) journey d) flight
6. She .... that the job wasn't as easy as it might seem.
   a) invented b) discovered c) explored d) covered
7. We never travelled .... when we were kids.
   a) board b) broad c) aboard d) abroad
8. Do you want any help .... the new laptop?
   a) with b) at c) for d) up
9. If you .... me your email address, I will send you what you want.
   a) gave b) give c) will give d) had given
10. I wouldn't be able to communicate with my family if they .... the internet at home.
    a) don't have b) wouldn't have c) can't have d) didn't have
11. If you need to send a message or an email, ... your smartphone.
    a) use b) will use c) can use d) uses
12. Unless you had a modern car, you .... able to go to Aswan.
    a) will be b) wouldn't be
    c) wouldn't have been d) won't be
13. If the food .... outside the fridge for a long time, it rots.
    a) put b) was put c) puts d) is put

14 Noha would have come to the party if she ....

a) would have invited
c) was invited
c) had been invited
d) has been invited

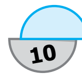
15 .... Leila get up early, she will catch the train.

a) If
b) Unless
c) Should
d) Were

16 .... doing regular exercises benefits me, I will try and do it.

a) Without
b) In case of
c) Unless
d) If

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Bringing up children is a complex process. The parents are the child's first educators. Every mistake they make in bringing up their children is a battle lost in the fight for a better future. Children should be armed with good qualities to become good citizens. The things that are most vital in the care of a child are a little bit different throughout the age periods. During the first year a baby needs a lot of motherly care. He has to be fed, he eats often, and his food is usually different from the adults. For his spirit to grow normally, he needs someone to dote on him, to think that he is the most wonderful baby in the world, to make noises and baby talk to him, to hug him and smile at him and to keep his company during wakeful periods.



In big families, children are not always given due care. A child is liable to be neglected by the mother because she is either busy or has many other children to care for. The infant whose mother can't take care of him during daytime needs individual care whether it is in his own home or someone else's who may be a relative, a neighbour or a friend whom the other knows and has confidence in. If a new maid or nurse is to come to the house; the mother should know her well before she leaves the baby in her care. Nearly all working mothers nowadays take their children to nurseries. Sometimes the nursery is no good for them. The care there is mechanical rather than warmhearted. There is too much risk of epidemics of colds and other infectious diseases.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 According to the passage, a child's first educators are ....
a) his teachers at school
b) his friends in the street
c) TV and Radio
d) his parents at home

18 According to the passage, big families give .... to their children.
a) due care
b) good care
c) care
d) little care

19 Mothers nowadays feel that bringing up children is a very .... process.
a) easy
b) difficult
c) normal
d) usual

20 The underlined word "him" refers to ....
a) an educator
b) a baby
c) a relative
d) a neighbour

21 In the second paragraph, the phrase "has confidence in" means to ....
a) deceive
b) support
c) trust in
d) be afraid of

22 To become a good citizen, a child should be equipped with ....
a) some weapons
b) good quantities
c) good qualities
d) good education

23 The nursery is no good for babies as there are many ....
a) accidents
b) infections
c) tests
d) injections

24 In large families, mothers can't give their children much care for the reason that ....
a) mothers have jobs outside
b) mothers are not busy with their many other children
c) fathers don't help them
d) children are noisy

25 For the child's spirit to grow normally, he needs to be ....
a) doted on
b) showered with love
c) educated well
d) punished for mistakes

26 A suitable title for the passage may be "..................".
a) How to educate children
b) Good tips to bring up children
c) Parents compared with their children
d) Nurseries and children

27 Translate into English:

3

- يجب أن يتعاون الشــعب مع الحكومة لزيادة الاســتثمار؛ من أجل مواجهة مشــكلة البطالة، وذلك عن طريق إنشــاء المشــروعات الصغيرة والتى تستوعب عددًا من العاملين.

....

....

....

....

....

28 Translate into Arabic:

3

Parents try hard to make kids' lives better before they come into the world and continue doing that till last breath. These sacrifices are countless.

....

....

....

....

....

29 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

6

"How important is the internet in society?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test on Unit 9

40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. He comes from a wealthy family. The antonyms of the word "wealthy" are .... and ....
   a) conventional b) giant c) rich
   d) poor e) destitute
2. Your room is huge compared to mine. The synonyms of the word "huge" are .... and ....
   a) enormous b) tiny c) minor
   d) wicked e) giant

Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d:

14

3. You should check all your electrical .... regularly.
   a) equipment b) requirements c) settlements d) statements
4. He needs to have more practice to become a/an .... in medicine.
   a) trader b) user c) practical d) expert
5. This disease mostly affects women, ... women who are over 50.
   a) especially b) luckily c) accordingly d) partially
6. Football is one of the most popular .... sport in the world.
   a) team b) individual c) group d) collective
7. I think poetry is very effective at expressing .... and ideas.
   a) feelings b) conclusions c) mistakes d) failings
8. If she felt he was right, she would agree .... him.
   a) for b) at c) to d) with
9. No sooner .... the noise than we rushed to the spot.
   a) we did hear b) had we heard
   c) we had heard d) we heard
10. We weren't hungry because we ....
    a) were already eating b) have already eaten
    c) had already eaten d) already eaten
11. My aunt bought me a lovely gift after .... the summer holiday with us.
    a) have spent b) spent c) spending d) had spent
12. Mr Maher .... in a bank for 15 years. Then he gave it up.
    a) has worked b) worked c) can work d) works

13. A lot of crimes .... in this neighbourhood last month.
   a) are committed   b) were committed
   c) were committing   d) committed
14. My sister's teeth .... by the dentist at the moment.
   a) are being cleaned   b) are cleaned
   c) were cleaned   d) will be cleaned
15. Having .... our food, we began our journey to the mountain.
   a) prepared   b) preparing   c) been prepared   d) being prepared
16. It .... when we had met our friends that we invited them to dinner.
   a) was not   b) was   c) has been   d) was only

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 10



People have been writing about strange worlds and travelling to space for thousands of years. Parts of the famous Arabic story "*One Thousand and One Nights*" might be described as a kind of science fiction. But science reality started to influence how we all lived in the nineteenth century. This was a time when many exciting new things were invented: steam trains, the telephone, electricity, photographs and much more. The writer Jules Verne looked at nineteenth century technology and imagined how it could be improved to do amazing things. He wrote about people travelling to the centre of the earth, to the moon or deep under the sea. Many people consider Verne to be the first true science fiction writer. In 1895, the writer HG Wells saw technology differently. He wrote about the possible dangers of technology. His book includes "*The Time Machine*", in which the hero travels into a dangerous and unpleasant future. Other writers also thought that technology could be bad. "*Aldous Huxley's Brave New World*" is about a future in which people are produced in factories. But not all science fiction writers saw technology as bad. Authors such as Isaac Asimov often wrote about a future in which science can solve our problems.

Science fiction has evolved with technology. In the 1960s, space was being explored for the first time. This gave science fiction writers ideas for what explorers might find in space. Strange worlds and unexplained mysteries, such as in the novels of Arthur C. Clarke. More recently, many science fiction stories have been about robots. Could they become more intelligent than people? Should we use them or could they start to take over and rule the world? In science fiction, anything is possible.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 In what way was Isaac Asimov different to many science fiction writers?
a) He was optimistic about science.
b) He was pessimistic about science.
c) He only wrote about space.
d) He only wrote about robots.

18 In conclusion, the text says that in science fiction, ...
a) technology is good
b) technology is bad
c) anything might happen
d) there are never any problems

19 What does the underlined word "This" refer to?
a) Changes in science fiction.
b) Changes in technology.
c) The new year.
d) Space exploration.

20 What does the phrasal verb "take over" mean?
a) To become people.
b) To steal things.
c) To get control of.
d) To hide.

21 Through his writing, the writer Isaac Asimov imagined that science can .... our problems.
a) put solutions to
b) put hinders to
c) prevent
d) enlarge

22 Many exciting new things were invented and began to appear in the ....
a) 9th century
b) 19th century
c) 90th century
d) 21st century

23 Space was being explored for the first time from ....
a) 1950 to 1960
b) 1960 to 1970
c) 1960 to 1970
d) 1950 to 1970

24 The writer "Jules Verne" was known as the father of .... novels.
a) science fiction
b) non-fiction
c) strange
d) true

25 HG Wells describes the dangers of technology in his book "................".
a) Journey to the centre of the Earth
b) Around the world in eighty days
c) The time Machine
d) The Jurassic Park

26 The word "evolved" in "Science fiction has evolved with technology" means ....
a) hindered
b) exchanged
c) limited
d) developed

27 Translate into English: 3

- السفر للخارج من الممكن أن يكون هواية ومتعة أو أن يكون من أجل العمل وكسب المال وفى كلا الحالتين يجب أن يكون شرعيا وأمنا.

....
....
....
....
....

28 Translate into Arabic: 3

A job should not just be a source of money. It should also be a path for self-development. A very important factor is to find a job in a field you enjoy.

....
....
....
....
....

29 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following: 6

"Has technology improved our world and our lives?"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Test on Unit 10

40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1 The main reason for living here is the weather. The synonyms of the word "main" are .... and ....

a) major b) secondary c) minor
d) leading e) dependable

2 I bought shoes with flexible rubber soles. The antonyms of the word "flexible" are .... and ....

a) adjustable b) dependable c) rigid
d) inflexible e) disloyal

Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d:

14

3 In Germany, car .... helps to employ a lot of people.

a) construction b) industry c) makes d) building

4 Generally, our children must be treated with ....

a) suffering b) compassion c) cruelty d) consolidation

5 Employees must be able to get along with all kinds of people in .... situations which need wisdom.

a) practical b) rewarding c) stressful d) qualified

6 Army officers have to do intensive .... regularly.

a) apprenticeship b) degree c) attendant d) training

7 Candidates should have training and .... experience in basic electronics.

a) practical b) clear c) qualified d) obvious

8 Students come from a variety .... different areas.

a) from b) at c) of d) with

9 He .... his father was happy to hear about his success.

a) told b) asked
c) wanted to know d) said

10 He said he .... love to visit us again.

a) would b) had c) will d) could

11 I have just told my son that I .... him a car next week.

a) would buy b) was buying c) will buy d) bought

12 Leila said that she .... her clothes then.

a) cleaned b) was cleaning c) has cleaned d) would clean



13 Hany was in Tanta for one week. His brother asked him what he .... there.

a) has been doing
b) does
c) had been doing
d) is doing

14 They .... going to the library and I thought it was a good idea.

a) suggested
b) told
c) said
d) ordered

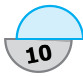
15 Mona explained that she couldn't come because her mother was ill ....

a) by then
b) this day
c) today
d) that day

16 I said to Ali, "................ go to the park with me?"

a) If he would
b) He would
c) Will you
d) You will

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Have you ever eaten ice cream on a hot day and suddenly felt a sharp pain in your head? If so, you had a very common experience that some people call a "brain freeze".

Brain freezes are caused when cold food or drink touches the roof of your mouth. Nerves in your mouth send a signal to your brain. Your brain then turns the signal into a sharp pain. However, the pain does not go to your mouth where the cold is. It stays in your head.

Most brain freezes last for less than 30 seconds. But if you want to make it go away quicker, you can try a couple of tricks. When you start to get a brain freeze, push your tongue against the roof of your mouth. This sometimes warms up your mouth so that the nerves don't send the signal that causes a headache. You can also try preventing brain freeze from the start by eating and drinking more slowly. If you take smaller bites or sips and wait longer between them, your mouth won't get as cold. Of course, sometimes a cold drink or an ice-cream cone on a hot day is just too good to enjoy slowly!

Brain freezes also occur when we have to present or perform in front of others but lack confidence - either in our ability to deliver the message or in the message itself (or both). This is called "stage fright". If you want to cure stage fright-and avoid the kind of brain freezes that happen when public speaking anxiety controls you, prepare for both what you're going to say and how you're going to say it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What causes a brain freeze?
- a) Eating too much ice cream or cold food.
- b) Eating something cold and then something warm.
- c) Cold food or drink touching the roof of your mouth.
- d) Eating cold food on very hot days.

18 According to the passage, which of these is a way to cure a brain freeze?
- a) Putting something warm on your tongue.
- b) Placing your tongue on the roof of your mouth.
- c) Eating cold things more quickly.
- d) Eating warm and cold foods together.

19 The underlined phrasal verb "go away" here means ....
a) end   b) continue   c) last   d) increase

20 The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....
a) brain   b) cold   c) mouth   d) pain

21 Why does eating or drinking slowly help prevent brain freezes?
- a) Your mouth does not get as cold.
- b) Your brain cannot recognise what you are eating or drinking.
- c) The thing you are eating or drinking does not touch your tongue.
- d) The brain freeze does not last as long.

22 Which of these would probably NOT cause a brain freeze?
- a) Drinking a glass of cold soda quickly.
- b) Eating an ice-cream cone quickly before it melts.
- c) Chewing a lot of ice.
- d) Slowly sipping a glass of iced tea.

23 When cold food or drink touches the roof of your mouth, your brain .... a signal from nerves in your mouth.
a) forgets   b) receives   c) sends   d) preps

24 The author of the passage mentioned .... of brain freezes.
a) one cause   b) several causes
c) two causes   d) three causes

25 You can avoid "stage fright" if you have ....
a) lack of confidence   b) self confidence
c) inability to deliver the message   d) cold food in your mouth

26 Most brain freezes usually take ....
a) a very short time   b) a very long time
c) half an hour   d) three minutes

27 Translate into English:

3

- إن استصلاح المزيد من الصحراء وتطوير طرق الزراعة الحديثة لإنتاج المزيد من المحاصيل هما الحل الإيجابى لمشكلة الزيادة السكانية والمجاعة.

....
....
....
....
....

28 Translate into Arabic:

3

- It is the responsibility of parents, school and universities to enlighten young people on the destructive effects of drug taking and bad company.

....
....
....
....
....

29 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

6

"How we can prepare young people for their future employment."

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Test on Unit 11

40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. The synonyms of the word "loud" are .... and ....
   a) noisy b) calm c) blaring
   d) rude e) high
2. The antonyms of the word "bother" are .... and ....
   a) neglect b) break c) please
   d) satisfy e) damage

Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d:

14

3. Women dream of .... full equality in the workplace.
   a) achieving b) campaigning c) competing d) improving
4. The company has launched an advertising .... in the hope of attracting new customers.
   a) competition b) race c) campaign d) charity
5. Students should find a role model to .... them.
   a) hinder b) mean c) inspire d) lift
6. My uncle joined the .... of a large fishing boat many years ago.
   a) stiff b) staff c) stuff d) crew
7. Taking drugs has always had a serious .... on people.
   a) affection b) effect c) perfection d) conflict
8. Our team hope to improve their performance before the new ....
   a) championship b) battle c) fight d) dispute
9. Edison, ... invented the light bulb, was born in 1847.
   a) whom b) who c) whose d) when
10. They have built a new school in the village .... I had lived.
    a) who b) which c) where d) when
11. I read the paper .... my brother bought for my father.
    a) that b) where c) what d) in which
12. Friday is the day .... I usually take my family out for lunch.
    a) where b) which c) on which d) in which
13. It is my mother .... gives us help and support.
    a) which b) whose c) whom d) that

14. The teacher .... activity is appreciated by many people, has got the prize of the ideal teacher.

a) who b) which c) whose d) whom

15. I found the remote control for .... I was searching.

a) that b) which c) whose d) what

16. I went to the grocer's .... I bought what I need.

a) when b) who c) which d) where

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Is there a famous person whom you really admire? Wouldn't you love to have his or her autograph? You would never throw that person's autograph away because of your admiration for him or her. However, some people collect autographs even from people they don't admire. They just want autographs from any famous person. Rather than collecting these autographs to keep, they collect the autographs to sell.

These days there are more than 20,000 people who collect autographs for the value the autographs might have in the future. Since these people are willing to pay a lot of money for an autograph. Autograph hounds now hang around sports centres, and concerts trying to get autographs they can sell. They can sometimes make as much as $1,500 for one autograph. In fact, there are also companies that buy and sell autographs. One company, Profiles in History, says it has the largest collection of autographs in the world, and earns more than $12 million a year!



The price of an autograph depends on how rare the autograph is. For example famous people like Angelina Jolie and George Clooney sign a lot of autographs. Therefore, their autographs are not rare and are not worth very much money.

On the other hand, Madonna and Nicole Kidman rarely sign anything. This makes their autographs rarer and more valuable. Queen Elizabeth II almost never signs autographs, therefore, something with her signature on it might sell for around $3,500. It doesn't matter if the person is dead. Elvis Presley and Napoleon signed many things. Their signatures are only worth $1,500. However, signed letters from Marilyn Monroe are very rare. They can cost $50,000 each. The highest price ever paid for an autograph was $750,000 for a letter written and signed by the American president Abraham Lincoln.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What is the main idea of the reading?
a) Collecting autographs is fun.
b) Signature of Queen Elizabeth II.
d) Some autographs are rare.
d) Collecting autographs can be a business.

18 Autograph hounds collect autographs hoping that their value will ....
a) increase b) decrease c) become less d) stay the same

19 The linking words "On the other hand" are used in paragraph 4 to ....
a) express cause and effect b) show contrast
c) present a conclusion d) add similar ideas

20 According to the passage, the more a famous person signs autographs, the .... these autographs are.
a) rarer b) cheaper
c) more expensive d) less common

21 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....
a) concerts b) autographs
c) sports centres d) autograph hounds

22 What does the price of an autograph mostly depend on?
a) How hard it is to find the autograph.
b) Whether the person is living or dead.
c) How many people admire the person.
d) When the person wrote the signature.

23 The antonym of the word "rare" is ....
a) precious b) unfamiliar c) common d) scarce

24 We can infer from the passage that "Profiles in History" is ....
a) an autograph museum
b) an expensive autograph
c) a business that sells autographs
d) a book about famous people

25 Whose signature was worth the most?
a) Queen Elizabeth M's. b) Abraham Lincoln's.
c) Marilyn Monroe's. d) George Clooney's.

26 From the passage, what do you think an "autograph hound" is?
a) Someone who dislikes autographs.
b) Someone who gets autographs from famous people.
c) A famous person who signs many autographs.
d) A dog that can sign its autograph.

27 **Translate into English:** 3

- للرياضة دورًا كبيرًا فى محاربة وحل المشكلات الاجتماعية مثل الجريمة والعنف والإدمان، كما يمكنها مساعدة الأطفال والشباب على تكوين شخصية مستقلة ومؤثرة.

....

....

....

....

....

28 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Nothing we do in this world is done in isolation. It is now recognised that being able to work successfully with other people is one of the major keys to success.

....

....

....

....

....

29 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:** 6

"How can the society be helpful to the disabled?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test on Unit 12

40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1 I found the book quite interesting. The synonyms of the word "interesting" are .... and ....

a) amusing b) deep c) rooted
d) entertaining e) boring

2 The castle is on an island surrounded by a deep lake. The antonyms of the word "deep" are .... and ....

a) rooted b) shallow c) buried
d) near e) superficial

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3 My old friend was found .... after attacking his boss in his office.
a) innocent b) guilty c) mysterious d) proved

4 Our neighbour George is a very .... man. He has nobody to communicate with.
a) lonely b) alone c) insulated d) along

5 Our teacher told us that Alexandria .... in the north of Egypt.
a) lies b) lays c) locates d) places

6 All the necessary steps had been taken to .... their safety.
a) share b) ensure c) divide d) bring

7 You can recognise a tree by the .... of its leaves.
a) structure b) form c) root d) shape

8 A/An .... is someone who studies the buildings, graves, tools and other objects of people who lived in the past.
a) archaeologist b) architect c) monster d) pirate

9 My wife .... have misunderstood my directions. Why else is she late?
a) must b) can't c) should d) couldn't

10 That restaurant .... be very good. It's always full of people.
a) must b) may c) can't d) might

11 He got the full marks. He .... hard.
a) must have worked b) can't have worked
c) might have worked d) must work

12 She is wearing a white coat. She .... a nurse.
a) can't be b) must have been
c) might be d) might have been



13 My friend didn't come to school yesterday. He .... ill.

a) must be
b) must have been
c) can't be
d) can't have been

14 He has just drunk a lot of water. He .... thirsty now.

a) must be
b) might be
c) can't be
d) can't have been

15 The toys are everywhere in the room. The children .... there.

a) must play
b) must have played
c) can't have played
d) might play

16 Samy .... a very good player otherwise, he wouldn't have won.

a) might be
b) can be
c) must be
d) could be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 10

People think children stay healthy while playing with others. However, playing sports can have negative effects on children. It may produce feelings of poor self-esteem or aggressive behavior in some children.

Many researchers believe adults, especially parents and coaches, are the main cause of too much aggression in children's sports. They believe children copy aggressive adult behavior. Parents and coaches are powerful teachers because children usually look up to them. Often they behave aggressively themselves, sending children the message that winning is everything. At children's sporting events, parents may yell insults at other players or cheer when their child behaves aggressively. Moreover, children may be taught that hurting other players is acceptable, or they may be pushed to continue playing even when they are injured. Moreover, the media makes violence seem exciting. Children watch adult sports games and see violent behavior replayed over and over on television.



As a society, we really need to face up to this problem and do something about it. Parents and coaches should act as better examples for children. They also need to teach children better values. They should teach children to enjoy themselves whether they win or not. Winning is not everything. In addition, children should not be allowed to continue to play when they are injured. Sending a child with an injury into a game gives the child the message that health is not as important as winning, if we make some basic changes, children might learn to enjoy sports again.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What is the main idea of the passage?
- a) Children often become like their parents.
- b) Children need to play sports in school.
- c) Playing sports may have negative results.
- d) Some sports can cause health problems.

18 Which is described as the main cause of more aggressive playing?
- a) Adults.
- b) Children with low grades in school.
- c) New rules in sports.
- d) Other players.

19 The writer suggests that parents should teach children to play sports for ....
- a) winning
- b) fun and exercise
- c) behaving aggressively
- d) yelling insults at other players

20 What would probably NOT be done when "facing up to a problem"?
- a) Ignoring the problem.
- b) Finding the reason.
- c) Admitting there is a problem.
- d) Looking for a solution.

21 The underlined word "copy" here means ....
- a) write
- b) imitate
- c) photocopy
- d) falsify

22 If the child is sent to a game while he/she is injured, he/she might think that winning is .... health.
- a) more important than
- b) less important than
- c) as important as
- d) not as important as

23 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....
- a) parents
- b) coaches
- c) parents and coaches
- d) children

24 Children might learn to enjoy sports again in case of ....
- a) learning better values
- b) learning how to be aggressive
- c) being injured
- d) having poor self-esteem

25 In paragraph 2, the linking word "Moreover" is used to express ....
- a) result
- b) conclusion
- c) purpose
- d) addition

26 Yelling insults at other players is a behaviour parents and coaches must ....
- a) boost
- b) support
- c) allow
- d) avoid



27 Translate into English:

3

- يعترض الكثير من الناس على ما يسمى بالعولمة؛ لأنهم يعتقدون أنها تقوم بخدمة الدول الغنية وليست الدول الفقيرة، ويطالبون بتعديل هذا النظام حتى يتحقق العدل بين الدول.

....

....

....

....

....

28 Translate into Arabic:

3

- One of the first measures to solve overpopulation is to educate the masses to help them understand the need to have one or two children at the most.

....

....

....

....

....

29 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

6

"Summer camps for students"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Tests

Final Test 1

40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. He has changed a lot since I last saw him. The synonyms of the word "changed" are .... and ....
   a) faced b) modified c) altered
   d) pursued e) ignored
2. How many animals are in danger of being extinct? The antonyms of the word "danger" are .... and ....
   a) hazard b) freedom c) safety
   d) difficulty e) security

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3. I can find my destination by .... my journey to it using GPS.
   a) controlling b) noticing c) navigating d) relaxing
4. The president has sent a message of sympathy to the relatives of the .... soldiers.
   a) dead b) kind c) usual d) wealthy
5. A lot of .... people have their own personal trainer.
   a) cruel b) wealthy c) comfortable d) huge
6. International travel can be a rich and .... adventure.
   a) stressful b) rewarding c) theoretical d) qualified
7. Public places are becoming more accessible to people with ....
   a) achievements b) disabilities c) competitions d) organisations
8. Relax your stomach ...., then stretch again.
   a) muscles b) achievements c) competitions d) ramps
9. If I .... no money, I would have to go to school on foot.
   a) had had b) have c) having d) had
10. This is my friend Ali .... played the match with me.
    a) whose b) who's c) whom d) who is
11. My bags are white and .... are red.
    a) yours b) yourself c) your d) yourselves

12 She asked me .... I could help her with her homework.
   a) whether   b) unless   c) that   d) for
13 Your hands .... washed before eating.
   a) should be   b) should   c) would   d) shouldn't
14 The woman about .... you talk is very polite.
   a) whose   b) who   c) whom   d) that
15 Ahmed .... to hospital by an ambulance yesterday.
   a) takes   b) is taken   c) was taken   d) took
16 .... seen the accident, I reported the police.
   a) After   b) Before   c) On   d) Having

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 10

Rules are of extreme importance to all of us. Some people get bored or object to one rule or another, but no one can deny that life would be impossible without rules. Traffic rules are among the most important in modern life. When you drive your car, there are many rules to follow. Your car has to be in a good condition. You have to check the amount of petrol in your car; otherwise, it may stop suddenly in the middle of a crowded street causing you a lot of trouble. It is really essential that you adjust the mirror to be sure that no one is parking behind you. Don't forget to measure the level of oil in your engine and be sure the battery is working properly. The tyres should be checked before moving. If you neglect that, you will have to face the trouble of changing the flat tyre by yourself. If you don't check your wipers, you will be sorry. It might rain suddenly and spoil your trip. You have to check the brakes also or you will bang against the first tree in front of you. Don't forget to fasten your seat belts or you'll pay a fine. After all these precautions, do you still want to drive a car?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What will happen if you don't fasten your seat belt?
   a) You will have an accident.
   b) You will face troubles in crowded streets.
   c) You may pay a fine.
   d) Your car will break down.
18 A word from the passage that means, "give no or too little attention" is ....
   a) forget   b) neglect   c) bang   d) check

19 The underlined word "that" refers to ....
a) checking the tyres
b) moving
c) trouble
d) flat tyre

20 The best title for the passage is "................".
a) Extreme rules
b) The rules of life
c) Why people don't like rules
d) The importance of rules

21 Why should you check the tyres before driving?
a) The car may stop suddenly in the middle of the road.
b) In order not to face the trouble of changing them yourself.
c) It might rain suddenly and spoil your trip.
d) To be sure that no one is parking behind you.

22 To avoid crashing into a car behind you, you have to ....
a) fasten your seat belt
b) check the tyres
c) check your wipers
d) adjust the mirror

23 Why are the brakes important?
a) They help drivers to see behind.
b) They prevent the car from stopping suddenly.
c) They help drivers to stop and not to crash into a tree or another car.
d) They help drivers make accidents.

24 To clean or dry the glass in front of the driver, use ....
a) brakes
b) the wipers
c) the mirror
d) seat belt

25 The synonym of the phrasal verb "crash into" is ....
a) bang against
b) spoil
c) pay a fine
d) to follow

26 In order not to pay a fine, you must ....
a) adjust your mirror
b) fasten your seat belt
c) check your oil
d) change the tyres

27 Translate into English:

3 - من أصعب الأشـيـاء التى نقابلها الآن هو كيفية تربية أبنائنا على الأخلاق الكريمة فى ظل هذا الكم الهائل من السـلـبيات والفسـاد الأخلاقى المنتشر.

....
....
....
....
....

28 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Most countries welcome tourists because of the money they bring in. Many countries tourism, and many also depend on what they earn from it to keep their economies going.

....

....

....

....

....

....

29 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

6

"It is important to help neighbours."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 2



Choose Two of the Five options:



1. The synonyms of the verb "realise" are .... and ....
   a) cover b) understand c) misunderstand
   d) remain e) to be aware
2. What are the advantages of having an expensive car?
   The word "advantages" is the opposite of .... and ....
   a) merits b) benefits c) cons
   d) pros e) demerits

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



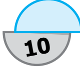
3. My father makes a lot of business .... a year.
   a) trips b) journeys c) picnics d) voyages
4. Do you .... that this is the third time you've forgotten my birthday?
   a) recognise b) realise c) improvise d) rationalise
5. How much do you .... if you don't mind me asking?
   a) play b) win c) gain d) earn
6. I do two hours' .... every evening.
   a) apprentices b) degree c) attendant d) training
7. Twenty years after the accident, his disappearance remains a ....
   a) mysterious b) mystery c) decision d) proof
8. A .... is someone whose job is to make cloth from threads خيوط.
   a) weaver b) tutor c) tailor d) wielder
9. Huda asked Dina if .... the answer of question of the previous week's exam.
   a) did she know b) she knows c) had she known d) she had known
10. My friend is absent. He .... be ill. I have no idea.
    a) must b) can't c) might d) mustn't
11. Nour told me that English .... her favourite subject.
    a) are b) can c) was d) could
12. Yesterday, I .... to stand on the bus as it was full.
    a) had b) have c) must d) needn't
13. My husband bought a .... car, but it was very expensive.
    a) used b) use c) using d) usage

14. I visited the town .... my mother was born in.
    a) where b) whom c) when d) which

15. He didn't come to the party .... he had bought a new suit.
    a) when b) after c) as soon as d) until

16. It .... that our team is the best one in the city.
    a) is said b) was said c) says d) had said

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Trees are beautiful and useful gifts of nature. They are great friends of man. Trees give us flowers, fruits, timber, bamboo, fuels, etc. We can rest under the cool shade of a tree. We get wood from the trees to make furniture, doors, windows, etc. Trees are also a great source of materials for paper, rubber, gums, herbs and medicine plants. Forests bring clouds and cause rainfall. Trees prevent soil erosion. They protect us from severe weather. Trees are a part and parcel of earthly life. All life directly or indirectly owes its existence to them. Trees release oxygen which we need for our life. They also absorb carbon dioxide gas. Many living species live in trees. Trees form the natural habitat of many animals, birds and insects. Trees help make the land fertile. We get good crops out of fertile land. They are the sources of the fruits and flowers. They offer us cool shade during summer. During rainy season, we take shelter under trees. Trees and plants are the sources of many life-saving drugs. They prevent land erosion and guard us against pollution. Thus, trees keep up the ecological balance. Trees protect us from inclement wind, too. Seeds, nuts and fruits are food sources for humans and animals.



Trees protect the biodiversity of the ecosystem. Tree resins are used in producing varnishes. Essential oils derived from trees are used in medicinal and aroma industry. Thus, trees play an important role in our life. Felling of trees disturbs the eco-system. We should preserve trees and plants with great care.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Which of the following is not correct?
    a) Trees help keep ecological balance.
    b) Trees take in oxygen.
    c) Trees provide life-saving drugs.
    d) Trees protect the biodiversity.

18 What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

a) Trees. b) Plants.
c) Insects. d) Trees and plants.

19 According to the passage, which of the following disturbs eco-system?

a) Planting of trees. b) Preserving of trees.
c) Climbing trees. d) Felling of trees.

20 The word .... in the passage means "wood used for making things".

a) timber b) bamboo c) stretch d) involve

21 The best title for the passage is "................".

a) The beauty of trees b) How to plant a tree
c) The importance of trees d) The drawbacks of trees

22 Trees are useful in medicine. How?



a) They give us shade.
b) They prevent soil erosion
c) They are the sources of many medical drugs.
d) They keep the balance of nature.

23 Trees give us .... which we need for our life on earth.

a) CO_2 b) CO_1 c) hydrogen d) oxygen

24 It is known that "Trees help the earth to ....".

a) vanish b) breathe c) destroy d) breathing

25 Trees absorb carbon dioxide gas. The word "absorb" means ....

a) give off b) give in c) take off d) take in

26 Cutting down trees has very bad effects on our ....

a) rainy seasons b) eco-system
c) wind d) food sources only

27 Translate into English:

3

- تعانى الكثير من دول العالم، وخصوصًا الدول الإفريقية والآسيوية، من نقص الموارد الغذائية والرعاية الطبية، مما يؤدى إلى إصابة معظم سكانها - بالأمراض الخطيرة.

....
....
....
....
....

28 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Communication has become easier and the chance for individuals to obtain mass information at a great speed has become available anytime.

....

....

....

....

....

29 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

6

"The benefits we get from animals"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 3



Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. Doctors are worried about the possible spread of the disease. The antonyms of the word "worried" are .... and ....
   a) anxious b) astonishing c) cautious
   d) relaxed e) calm
2. In such a small town it was surprising to find so many really good restaurants. The synonyms of the word "surprising" are .... and ....
   a) astonishing b) amazing c) severe
   d) anxious e) cautious

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3. His .... hand prevented him from doing his homework.
   a) serious b) cutting c) injured d) hurtful
4. Our teacher is an efficient and .... man as he doesn't like jokes.
   a) serious b) kind c) funny d) humorous
5. We never travelled .... when we were kids.
   a) abroad b) broad c) aboard d) board
6. The police questioned him and he was .... arrested.
   a) late b) latter c) later d) lately
7. I think it's .... to put a dog in a cage. You shouldn't do that.
   a) merciful b) cruel c) keen d) kind
8. My father had an accident and as a result he'll be in a .... for the rest of his life.
   a) competition b) charity c) condition d) wheelchair
9. Ahmed told his friend that he had visited Aswan ....
   a) then b) the day before
   c) the next day d) yesterday
10. You .... eat this food as it smells bad. It is harmful.
    a) must b) should c) mustn't d) don't have to
11. If I were a bird, I .... able to fly.
    a) will b) would c) would have d) would be
12. This red car .... Ayman's. His car is white.
    a) can't be b) mustn't be c) might be d) must be

13 The car .... before I used it.

a) had washed b) has washed
c) will wash d) had been washed

14 Our house is comfortable, but .... is more comfortable.

a) yours b) yourself c) your d) yourselves

15 Marconi, ... invented the radio, was born in 1874.

a) whom b) whose c) who d) which

16 Before .... the right decision, he had discussed the matter with his friends.

a) making b) made c) had made d) make

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Mona packed a small suitcase, said goodbye to her mother and hurried out of the house to catch the bus to the station. There was no one else waiting at the bus stop, so it looked as if a bus had just left. Mona looked at her watch anxiously, she did not have much time to spare, even if a bus came along at once. Just then a taxi came slowly down the road. Mona knew that the fare to the station was at least two pounds, which was more than she could afford; but she quickly made up her mind that it would be well worth the extra expense in order to be sure of catching her train. So she stopped the taxi and got in. She told the driver that she had to catch a train which left at half past two. The man nodded and said that he would take a short cut to get her to the station in good time. All went well until, just as they were coming out of a side street into the main road that led to the station, the taxi ran into a car. There was a loud crash and Mona was thrown forward so violently that she hit her head on the front seat. Both drivers got out and began shouting at each other. Mona got out as well, to ask them to stop quarrelling, but neither of them took notice of her at all. She was wondering what to do when a bus came into sight, going in the direction of the station. The bus stop was not far off, so Mona got her suitcase out of the taxi and ran towards the bus, which had stopped to let some passengers get off. The bus conductor saw her running and did not ring the bell for the bus to start until she had got on. Mona reached the station just in time and managed to catch her train after all. But if she had waited for the taxi driver to stop arguing, she would probably have missed it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Mona took a taxi because ....
- a) she was afraid of missing her train
- b) she did not want to wait for the bus
- c) it was already two o'clock
- d) she had a suitcase to carry

18 In the end, Mona ....
- a) finished the journey by taxi
- b) did not reach the station
- c) did the last part of the journey by bus
- d) had to walk part of the way to the station

19 The expression "short cut" means ....
a) interruption b) quick way c) secret path d) back street

20 The words "as well" means ....
a) equally good b) quickly c) feeling better d) also

21 The bus .... saw Mona running and decided to help her as he didn't ring the bell.
a) driver b) passengers c) conductor d) stop

22 Mona paid the taxi driver .... as a fare to the station.
a) nothing b) two pounds c) much money d) a pound

23 Why did the two drivers get out of their cars and began to argue?
- a) They took a short cut.
- b) A bus came along at once.
- c) Mona was crazy.
- d) They crashed into each other.

24 Mona was ready to pay extra expense to catch her train. The word "expense" here means ....
a) fare b) fees c) salary d) wages

25 When the taxi ran into the car, Mona ....
a) was injured in her arm b) hit her head on the front seat
c) jumped out of the taxi d) called the police

26 How did Mona know that a bus had just left?
- a) Someone told her.
- b) There were too many people there.
- c) The conductor told her.
- d) There was no one waiting except her.

27 Translate into English:

3

- يمكننا أن نعيش حياة هادئة خالية من التوتر والعصبية، وذلك بأن نحاول التغاضي عن أخطاء الآخرين واعتبارها أخطاءً غير مقصودة.

....

....

....

....

....

28 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Life is not always smooth and luxurious but it is sometimes thorny circled by hardships, obstacles, conflicts and challenges. We are to encounter its bitterness and make our maximum effort to make it better.

....

....

....

....

....

29 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

6

"Hard work and faithful efforts lead to success in life."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 4



40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1 I was frightened of being left by myself in the house.
The synonyms of the word "frightened" are .... and ....
a) fruitful b) amazing c) afraid
d) cruel e) scared

2 They waited for something exciting to happen. The antonyms of the word "exciting" are .... and ....
a) inspiring b) thrilling c) bored
d) boring e) dull

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3 If you want to open a file, ... twice on the icon for it.
a) navigate b) kick c) control d) click

4 The house looked strangely ...., though she knew she'd never been there before.
a) familiar b) useful c) cultural d) stressful

5 How many people does your company ....?
a) employ b) rent c) imply d) apply

6 He is the .... of two books on French history.
a) photographer b) actor c) author d) electrician

7 We were .... to hear such an intelligent question coming from a very small child.
a) obvious b) surprised c) special d) amazing

8 A lot of .... around the world sent aid to the flood victims.
a) opportunities b) statistics c) charities d) activists

9 As soon as they .... the company, their manager will tell them what to do.
a) had reached b) reached c) will reach d) reach

10 You missed the train to Cairo. You .... early to catch it.
a) should get up b) should have got up
c) must have got up d) can't get up

11 My father told me .... a very terrible accident.
a) if he saw b) what he had seen
c) that he'd seen d) if he sees

12 Several children .... with disabilities suffer from paralysis.
a) were born b) are born c) was born d) born

13. We .... to give in our homework on Sunday.
    a) have told b) told c) were telling d) were told
14. He didn't find his watch. Someone .... have stolen it.
    a) must b) can't c) should d) mustn't
15. This is the company in .... he works.
    a) that b) where c) which d) whose
16. He asked me .... I had seen the criminal or not.
    a) how b) why c) whether d) when

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 10

A small crowd had gathered around the entrance to the park. His curiosity aroused, Robert crossed the road to see what was happening. He found that the centre of attraction was an old man with a performing monkey. The monkey's tricks, he soon discovered, were in no way remarkable so, after throwing a few pennies in the dirty hat which the man had placed on the pavement, Robert began to move off, along with other members of the crowd. At this point the man suddenly let out a loud cry. Everyone turned to see what had happened. The man was bending over his monkey, which now lay quite still on the pavement. He picked up the apparently lifeless body and, holding it close to him, began to weep. A young man stepped forward from the crowd and, taking some money from his pocket, dropped it into the hat. Robert and several other people did likewise, until the pennies in the hat were covered with silver coins. Meanwhile, the man continued to hold the dead monkey in his arms and seemed to take no notice of what was going on around him. A few months later, Robert came across the old man again in another part of the city. The man had a monkey, bought no doubt with the money which the crowd had given him. It did not, however, seem any better at its tricks than the previous one. Robert was pleased to see that the old man was still able to earn a living, though on this occasion, having partly paid for the monkey out of his own pocket, he did not feel inclined to throw any money into the hat. But the performance was not yet over! Once again, the old man let out a loud cry. Once again, the monkey lay still on the pavement. The man picked up the "dead" monkey and clutching it in his arms began to weep. The same young man stepped forward and threw some money into the hat. Again, the crowd followed suit – except for Robert. Smiling to himself, he went on his way, amazed at the man's audacity.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The monkey owner was ....

a) a trickster b) honest c) sincere d) honourable

18 The writer saw the performance of the man and the monkey ....

a) thrice b) once c) twice d) one time

19 Robert did not throw any money into the hat the second time because ....

a) there was enough money in it already
b) he had seen the monkey's tricks before
c) the monkey's tricks were not very good
d) he knew that the monkey was not really dead

20 The word "likewise" means ....

a) the sensible thing b) the same thing
c) willingly d) more or less the same

21 The monkey owner earns his money through the monkey's performance and also .... people.

a) tricking b) admiring c) begging d) encouraging

22 Robert thought that the man bought the monkey with ....

a) his own money
b) the money he saved from his work
c) the money the crowd had given him
d) no money

23 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) the man's money b) the dead monkey
c) the crowd d) the pavement

24 The crowd threw their few pennies in the .... the man had put.

a) tin b) dirty hat c) new hat c) basket

25 The crowd around the entrance to the park ....

a) was waiting for the bus
b) was watching a football match
c) was trying to deceive the man
d) was watching the man and the performing monkey

26 How many monkeys are there in the story?

a) Only one. b) Two monkeys.
c) No monkey. d) Three monkeys.

27 Translate into English:

3

- لقد تطورت عمليات زراعة الأعضاء بفضل جهود الأطباء والعلماء والتكنولوجيا الحديثة، لذلك يجب على المجتمع ألا يتوقف عن مساعدة المستشفيات.

....

....

....

....

....

28 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Space technology is helping us to understand what is beyond Earth. It has already helped us greatly and we are always discovering more because of it.

....

....

....

....

....

29 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

6

"Decision making is a very vital part of our lives."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 5

40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1 He was found guilty of killing his wife. The antonyms of the word "guilty" are .... and ....
a) convicted b) innocent c) guiltless
d) nasty e) surprised

2 Do you remember any funny stories about work? The synonyms of the word "funny" are .... and ....
a) comical b) humorous c) far
d) shallow e) serious

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3 The .... of the computer has revolutionised the business world.
a) navigation b) invention
c) robot d) air-conditioning

4 Sailors have special equipment to help them ....
a) control b) notice c) navigate d) relax

5 It's about time .... realised that the staff who are happy work more efficiently.
a) customers b) employees c) employers d) clients

6 The .... was started by children playing with matches.
a) fire b) energy c) garden d) orphan

7 I don't have that application on my smartphone, so I'm going to .... it from Google Play.
a) invent b) find out c) upload d) download

8 .... sports is a must for young people to keep healthy.
a) Making b) Solving c) Doing d) Continuing

9 Mother asked her son .... study hard for his exams.
a) if b) to c) that d) whether

10 You all .... come early for appointments. This is my advice to you.
a) should to b) ought c) had better d) shouldn't

11 .... he to study hard, he would get high marks.
a) If b) Were c) Should d) Had

12 .... the accident, they called the ambulance.
a) To see b) Before seeing
c) Having been seen d) On seeing

13. Some islands, ... were once existed in the Pacific, have completely vanished.
    a) where b) whose c) which d) who

14. It .... be a bird. You must be mistaken.
    a) may b) might c) can't d) must

15. Donia doesn't know the man .... she met yesterday.
    a) who's b) whom c) which d) whose

16. The telephone was .... to enable people to connect.
    a) inventor b) inventing c) invented d) invent

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



It is a disturbing fact that many different wild animals throughout the world are in danger. The reasons for this are many and varied, but we must blame pollution, pesticides, the disturbance of the animal's natural environment and man's greed. Industry has grown enormously, and it has become common practice for factories to dispose of waste matter in streams, canals and rivers, causing great loss of river life. Modern agricultural methods include using pesticides, which effectively control insects classified as pests, but which also destroy many that are not.

An increase in population has meant more buildings, more vehicles, more pollution ... and with it the destruction of much of the countryside that provides shelter for wild animals. To satisfy man's selfish desires, the polar bear in North America is under threat because it is hunted by sportsmen; whales are killed worldwide for the oil and food they yield. These are only a few of the species under threat. But the problem is receiving worldwide recognition, and some action is being taken. For example, pollution in the River Thames has been greatly reduced; trading in some furs has been forbidden; and organisations like "Friends of the Earth" do valuable work in this deserving cause.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. It has become common practice for factories to dispose of their waste in streams and rivers. This means that factories ....
    a) deliver their waste to streams, canals and rivers
    b) get over their waste in streams, canals and rivers
    c) get rid of their waste in streams, canals and rivers
    d) store their waste in streams and rivers

18 The underlined word "many" refers to ....

a) pesticides
b) pests only
c) agricultural methods
d) insects other than pests

19 In the passage, the word .... means "to produce".

a) dispose
b) blame
c) classify
d) yield

20 .... is the best title for the passage.

a) Natural life in danger
b) Polar bears in danger
c) Whale oil
d) Fresh water pollution

21 Why are many whales hunted all over the world?

a) For their skin.
b) For the fat they produce.
c) For the oil and food.
d) For their feathers.

22 Why is the polar bear in North America under threat?

a) Because of pollution.
b) Because sportsmen hunt it.
c) Because of the waste matters in rivers.
d) Because of insects and pests.

23 Many different wild animals are in danger because of ....

a) man's greed
b) pollution
c) pesticides
d) all are possible

24 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) the whale
b) pollution
c) the polar bear
d) the River Thames

25 The countryside provides .... for wild animals.

a) shield
b) shelter
c) shade
d) danger

26 An increase in population has meant an increase in ....

a) pollution
b) wild animals
c) shelters for animals
d) insects

27 Translate into English:

3

- يجب أن يقوم البيت على أساس التفاهم والاحترام المتبادل بين الوالدين حتى ينشأ الأبناء فى جو من الحب والسلام، مما يساعدهم على بناء وطن متقدم.

....

....

....

....

....

28 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Many teenagers are being bullied at schools. We should help them to face the bullies to make our schools safe for everyone.

....

....

....

....

....

29 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

6

"The relationship between parents and children"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 6

40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. The synonyms of the word "personally" are .... and ....
   a) mentally b) practically c) generally
   d) privately e) individually
2. The antonyms of the word "inspired" are .... and ....
   a) discouraged b) stimulated c) competed
   d) depressed e) surrendered

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

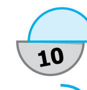
3. She finally .... her ambition to visit Dream Park.
   a) achieved b) campaigned c) competed d) improved
4. Your mother's not going to be very .... when she sees the mess you've made!
   a) happy b) happily c) happiness d) happiest
5. Brazil .... many millions of pounds a year from coffee exports.
   a) plays b) wins c) gains d) earns
6. After spending 5 years in Europe, he became .... with the customs there.
   a) familiar b) useful c) cultural d) stressful
7. Some migrating birds can .... by the moon.
   a) control b) notice c) navigate d) relax
8. After World War II, Germany was .... into two separate countries.
   a) divided b) ensured c) explained d) found
9. If you had an invitation to go into space, ... it?
   a) would you accept b) you would accept
   c) would you have accepted d) you would have accepted
10. Drivers .... wear a seat belt while driving into the city.
    a) need b) might c) must have d) have to
11. The tourist .... me if I could speak English.
    a) wanted to know b) asked c) wondered d) inquired
12. Can you kindly hand me the file .... cover is white?
    a) who's b) whose c) which d) that
13. I didn't expect ....
    a) what said b) which said
    c) what had been said d) what had said

14 It was .... when I had seen him coming that I realised he returned home.
a) that b) only c) hardly d) sooner

15 The great projects, ... out all over Egypt, will help to increase the standard of living.
a) are carried b) which carried c) carried d) carrying

16 He told me that he .... into a new flat the week before.
a) move b) moves c) has moved d) had moved

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



You've seen restaurant reviews in newspapers, magazines or on the Internet. People read these reviews when they want to know about the quality and price of the food at a restaurant. But who writes these? Who gets paid to eat? Those lucky people are food critics.

Food critics are journalists who eat at restaurants and write reviews that give readers the feeling that they have visited the restaurant themselves. The articles almost always include a description of the restaurant, for example, whether it is nicely decorated or has a beautiful view of the ocean. The menu, prices, and service are generally described as well, but a food critic's main task is to write about their opinion of the food. Food critics may tell readers about the colours of fresh vegetables, or the pleasant aroma of a perfectly cooked chicken. They will mention whether they were listening to soft music while they ate or the noises of pots and pans being washed in the restaurant's kitchen and most importantly, they will describe the taste of every dish on the table, starting with the appetizer and ending with the dessert. Every detail of the meal is important.

All of this may sound easy enough, but food critics do face some challenges. First, food critics must be excellent writers. Their job is to give accurate information in an entertaining way. It is also important for food critics to be very observant by nature, and to have an excellent memory, since taking notes at the table is not something typical customers do. Food critic Ruth Adams, former editor-in-chief of a well-known magazine, used to go to restaurants wearing disguises so that she received the same food and service as any other diner. Despite the challenges, a career as a food critic appeals to many people.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Food critics are ....
a) restaurant owners b) magazine cooks
c) professional poets d) professional writers

18. Which of the following would probably NOT be included in a restaurant review?
   a) a description of a restaurant's atmosphere
   b) information about a restaurant's rent and taxes
   c) information about a restaurant's prices
   d) a description of a restaurant's food

19. The purpose of paragraph 3 is to show that it is a very .... job being a food critic.
   a) difficult b) trivial c) easy d) boring

20. The author mentioned soft music and the noises of pots and pans being washed because food critics ....
   a) focus on the negative
   b) must listen carefully to the waiters
   c) focus on the positive
   d) pay attention to every single detail

21. According to the passage, food critics need a good memory because ....
   a) they have to avoid taking notes at the table
   b) they have very busy schedules every day
   c) they like having a challenging job
   d) they need to remember which restaurants they have been to

22. Ruth Adams went to restaurants wearing disguises because she didn't want ....
   a) to get special food and service
   b) her friends to know she was hungry
   c) her readers to recognise her
   d) pay the bill

23. Restaurants serve appetizers ....
   a) before the meal b) after the meal
   c) during reading the reviews d) perfectly after eating cooked chicken

24. What does the underlined pronoun "these" refer to?
   a) Restaurants. b) Newspapers.
   c) Magazines. d) Reviews.

25. Writing favourable reviews about a certain restaurant .... customers to eat out there.
   a) prevents b) encourages c) disturbs d) orders

26. The underlined word "aroma" here means ....
   a) menu b) price c) colour d) smell

27 Translate into Arabic:

3

- The new century should be set aside for children care and welfare. Many institutions are established to look after the handicapped and those of special needs.

....

....

....

....

....

28 Translate into English:

3

- يجب على الآباء مساعدة أبنائهم فى اختيار الأصدقاء الجيدين الذين يساعدونهم ويشجعونهم على النجاح فى حياتهم، وذلك لما للأصدقاء من دورهام جدًا فى حياة الشباب.

....

....

....

....

....

29 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

6

"Choosing the right job"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 7

40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. The synonyms of the word "consequences" are .... and ....
   a) causes b) effects c) results
   d) roots e) reasons
2. The antonyms of the word "happiness" are .... and ....
   a) delight b) displeasure c) boredom
   d) deepness e) gloom

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3. People tend to give money to .... at Ramadan time.
   a) opportunities b) Paralympics c) charities d) activists
4. It was .... six o'clock when my father had an accident.
   a) personally b) physically c) positively d) almost
5. Vodafone telephone sales calls are really .... I don't like talking to them.
   a) cultural b) wonderful c) annoying d) useful
6. His face is covered with .... where he was badly burned.
   a) bin b) tissue c) sponge d) scarf
7. The shirt is very dirty. Wash it thoroughly with .... and water.
   a) gloves b) chopping boards
   c) dirt d) soap
8. Her health has .... since she started on this new diet.
   a) inspired b) improved c) lifted d) pushed
9. After I heard that I .... the exam, I phoned my dad.
   a) passed b) was passing c) has passed d) had passed
10. The policeman told her to turn right, but she turned left. She .... have understood him.
    a) must b) may c) can't d) could
11. If Kamal was faster, he .... a good footballer.
    a) be b) will be c) would be d) being
12. The woman .... waiting over there is my cousin.
    a) whose b) whom c) who's d) who
13. The man with .... I live is my uncle.
    a) whom b) who c) whose d) which

14 The former newspaper boy .... to the neighbouring area.
a) was sent b) sent c) has sent d) would send

15 The dress, ... by Rodayna, is made of fine cotton.
a) wears b) which wears c) which wore d) worn

16 Omar asked Hani if he .... his homework.
a) has finished b) had finished c) was finishing d) finishes

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 10

Most people know that the first man on the moon was Neil Armstrong in 1969. However, since that time, the moon has been visited by eleven other men but they are not so famous. Who were these other space pioneers?

In 1969, four months after Neil Armstrong and his colleague Buzz Aldrin stayed on the surface of the moon for 21 hours, Alan Bean and Pete Conrad spent two days there. Bean is also an artist, and is the only person on earth who is able to paint space scenes that he had actually seen. In 1971, Alan Shepard and Edgar Mitchel went on a mission to study earthquakes on the moon (known as moonquakes). Shepard also enjoyed a game of golf there: because there is very little gravity, he hit the ball farther than any professional golf player on earth!

Seven months later, two more astronauts stayed for nearly three days on the moon. David Scott and James Irwin took along a special vehicle which meant they could travel around. They returned to earth with many moon rocks. In 1972, John Young and Charles Duke landed in the moon's mountains for the first time.

The moon was last visited at the end of 1972. Eugene Cernan and Harrison Schmitt explored the moon for three days, longer than any other astronaut. Schmitt was a geologist before he became an astronaut and he did a number of scientific experiments there. Before they returned to earth, Cernan wrote his daughter's name on the moon's surface. There is no weather on the moon, so he knew that there was nothing that would wear the letters away. They are probably there today! There are now plans to get astronauts to visit the moon again, although nobody knows when this might be.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Why are Alan Bean's paintings special?
- a) They were painted on the sea.
- b) They were painted in space.
- c) He is the only artist who has seen the space.
- d) You can only see them on the moon.

18 Why is it likely that you can still read the name of Eugene Cernan's daughter on the moon today?
- a) The letters are very big.
- b) The letters were written in rocks.
- c) There isn't air there.
- d) His colleague was a geologist.

19 Why do you think that some of the astronauts played golf and wrote names on the surface of the moon?
- a) They were very important experiments.
- b) They wanted to have fun.
- c) Scientists on earth got them to do these.
- d) They behaved badly.

20 Why do you think that astronauts were sent to the moon?
- a) To punish them.
- b) To do scientific experiments.
- c) To test weightless sports.
- d) To test zero-gravity living.

21 What does the underlined word "They" refer to?
- a) The astronauts.
- b) The spaceships.
- c) The moon's weather.
- d) The letters on the surface.

22 What do you think the word "vehicle" means?
- a) Something used to carry people or thing on the Earth
- b) A type of spaceship.
- c) A submarine.
- d) A type of satellite.

23 Which is true?
- a) It is rainy on the moon.
- b) It is sunny on the moon.
- c) It is fine on the moon.
- d) There is no weather on the moon.

24 What was Alan Shepard and Edgar Mitchel's mission on the moon?
- a) get information about moon rocks
- b) get information about moon volcanoes
- c) get information about moonquakes
- d) get information about moon weather

25 The journeys to explore the moon lasted for nearly ....
a) 30 years b) 9 years c) 3 years d) 52 years

26 The journey to explore the moon geology was by ....
a) David Scott and James Irwin
b) Neil Armstrong and his colleague Buzz Aldrin
c) Alan Shepard and Edgar Mitchel
d) Eugene Cernan and Harrison Schmitt

27 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

- Online learning is becoming more popular today, as more people have access to computers and the internet. You can study whenever and wherever you want..

....
....
....
....
....

28 **Translate into English:** 3

- تهتم الحكومة بالمشروعات القومية الكبرى، وذلك لأنها توفر فرص عمل للشباب، وتدعم خطة التنمية، وتزيد من فرص التنمية الاقتصادية، وبالتالى رفع مستوى معيشة المواطن.

....
....
....
....
....

29 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:** 6

"The problem of food shortage all over the world"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Final Test 8

40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. The synonyms of the word "admitted" are .... and ....
   a) denied b) confessed c) disagreed
   d) argued e) acknowledged
2. She is a lazy student. The antonyms of the word "lazy" are .... and ....
   a) industrious b) hard-working c) dependable
   d) company e) dependent

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3. They could take legal action against you if you break the terms of the ....
   a) skill b) contract c) challenge d) idea
4. I'm not .... to give advice on such matters.
   a) stressful b) frustrating c) qualified d) frightened
5. He was a .... man who wanted to save children from hunger and poverty.
   a) compassionate b) cruel c) vulgar d) violent
6. She must have done something wrong, because she's looking so ....
   a) transparent b) guilty c) mysterious d) proved
7. We .... our car with the price we wanted for it in the local newspaper.
   a) employed b) advertised c) forgot d) taught
8. He died from .... causes because he was old and ill.
   a) frightened b) natural c) frustrating d) successful
9. He asked me if I .... that his sister had been ill.
   a) have known b) knew c) will know d) know
10. If I .... to bed late, I feel tired all day.
    a) went b) will go c) go d) would go
11. Five people .... to have been injured in the crash.
    a) had reported b) were reported c) have reported d) were reporting
12. I have just seen Omar at school. He .... be at home.
    a) can't b) mustn't c) can d) must
13. The computer is a useful machine .... stores a lot of information.
    a) which's b) when c) what d) that

14 Not much .... about this complicated subject.

a) has known
b) are being known
c) is known
d) is going to know

15 No sooner .... the match than he went home.

a) he watched
b) he had watched
c) does he watch
d) had he watched

16 A lot of projects .... out at the moment.

a) carried
b) were carried
c) are being carried
d) were being carried

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



When you cut your skin, you bleed. Everyone knows that. If a person loses a great deal of blood, he will become ill and may die. At one time people drank blood to make them strong. When doctors understood how blood went around inside the body, they tried ways of giving blood to people who needed it. They used a rubber tube to take blood from healthy people and give it to people who needed it. This is called blood transfusion. The blood went through a rubber tube from the arm of the healthy person into the arm of the sick person.

But there were two problems. First it did not always work. Sometimes people died. Later, doctors found the reason for this. We do not all have the same kind of blood. There was another problem. To give blood of the right kind, the doctors had to find a person of the right blood group. Often, they could not find a person in time.

If they had a way to keep the blood until someone needed it, they could always have the right kind of blood. In the end, they found a way of keeping blood for a very long time. Now people can give or donate blood every three months, if they want to. The blood is put in bottles and then kept until someone needs it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 You .... when you cut your skin.

a) sleep
b) bleed
c) lead
d) breathe

18 In the past, people drank blood to be ....

a) weak
b) health
c) ill
d) strong

19 To give someone blood is called blood ....

a) transfusion
b) transportation
c) transmission
d) transaction

20 Now doctors can keep blood for ....

a) 15 minutes
b) 20 minutes
c) a long time
d) a short time

21 People don't usually have .... blood group.

a) the same
b) different
c) alike
d) similar

22 To give something useful to someone means to ....

a) bleed
b) transform
c) need
d) donate

23 What happens if a person loses a great deal of blood? They may ....

a) faint
b) die
c) survive
d) save

24 What is meant by blood transfusion?

a) giving blood
b) getting blood
c) shedding blood
d) both a and b

25 Some people die during blood transfusion because ....

a) blood varies
b) blood is poisoned
c) blood pressure decreases
d) blood is sugary

26 People can donate blood every...............

a) 30 days
b) 80 days
c) 3 weeks
d) 12 weeks

27 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

- Youth are the backbone of any nation. So governments should pay attention to provide them with the necessities of life and help them be better citizens.

....
....
....
....
....

28 Translate into English:

3

- من المتوقع أن يكون بنك المعرفة المصرى واحدًا من أهم مصادر المعرفة؛ ولهذا السبب فإن كل الطلبة والمعلمين والدارسين وأساتذة الجامعات المصريين من الممكن أن يستخدموه.

....

....

....

....

....

29 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

6

"How we can solve the problem of illegal immigration"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 9

40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1. The synonyms of the word "advantage" are .... and ....
   a) merit b) demerit c) pros
   d) cons e) disadvantage
2. The antonyms of the word "completely" are .... and ....
   a) totally b) incompletely c) usually
   d) partially e) calmly

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3. We should change the .... regularly to avoid infections.
   a) service b) leaflet c) blog d) bedding
4. Some fruit trees like well-draining, moist and slightly acid ....
   a) soil b) floor c) ground d) earth
5. The doctors say he is now out of .... He is not expected to die although he has been extremely ill.
   a) dust b) danger c) breath d) research
6. .... is the act or process of taking air into your lungs and releasing it.
   a) Dusting b) Breathing c) Carrying d) Dropping
7. Through the new system, we all hope our children will get a good ....
   a) advertisement b) unemployment
   c) cruelty d) education
8. When preparing meals, you need to think about .... as well as nutritional value.
   a) various b) varied c) vary d) variety
9. .... my parents were rich, I couldn't join this expensive club.
   a) If b) Unless c) Without d) In case
10. The man .... the car was stolen, called the police.
    a) who b) whom c) whose d) from whom
11. .... beautiful the dress is!
    a) How b) Who c) What d) Which
12. He .... me if I had taken the decision.
    a) said b) asked c) told d) wondered
13. England is .... European country.
    a) the b) a c) an d) some

14 He .... to the cinema, but he stayed at home to study his lessons.

a) could have gone
b) must have gone
c) should go
d) must go

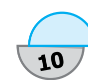
15 Ali was so tired this morning because he .... well.

a) won't sleep
b) hadn't slept
c) hasn't slept
d) wasn't sleep

16 .... early at the meeting, she would see us.

a) If she arrives
b) Had she arrived
c) Were she to arriving
d) Should she arrive

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



If you use the internet (and these days who doesn't), you should be aware of the risks you face and how to prevent being a victim of identity theft. There are people out there who are scanning the internet to find names, addresses and credit card numbers that they can use to take something that isn't rightfully theirs. These are a few tips that can help make you a safer internet shopper.

First, only use your credit card with a trusted website: this means that you should normally stick to reputable companies whose names you recognise, and who have also been doing business for some time. If you don't recognise the company name, there are various lists and verifications provided by independent organisations involved in keeping internet shoppers secure. Check these out if you're not sure before providing your credit card information.

Second, make sure the website uses appropriate encryption technology: even if the web company itself isn't trying to rip you off, there are people out there who are watching and who can still do harm if they intercept your card number. If the connection you are using is not secure, think twice before shopping:

Third, check your credit card statements each month: even small irregularities will sometimes mean that something is wrong. Thieves will sometimes use your card to make a small purchase to see if you will report this to your credit card company. If you don't, they will then make a much larger purchase.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Why should you use only websites with up-to-date encryption technology?

a) Because other sites might try to help you.
b) Because Mark Zuckerberg is watching you.
c) Because criminals might be able to decode communication sent to other sites.
d) Because cheques are the only acceptable form of payment.

18 What is **NOT** given as an example of a website that may make it unsafe to make a purchase from?

a) One which does not have verification from an independent organisation.
b) One which doesn't accept credit cards.
c) One which doesn't use proper encryption.
d) One whose company name you do not recognise.

19 Why does this article suggest you check your monthly credit card statement carefully?

a) Because thieves may make a small purchase as a test.
b) To prevent overspending.
c) To make sure your kids aren't using your card behind your back.
d) To verify the number is correct.

20 Why are criminals scanning the Internet, according to this article?

a) To steal companies' products.
b) To overcharge your credit card.
c) To get address and other personal information.
d) To steal your computer files.

21 When shopping online, a person should ....

a) be careful
b) not use trusted websites
c) make only small purchases.
d) use a fake name

22 How much does it cost to get a credit card?

a) Ten thousand pounds.
b) Twenty thousand pounds.
c) Credit cards are free.
d) This is not mentioned in the passage.

23 A word that is closest in meaning to the underlined word "rightfully" is ....

b) lastly
b) lightly
C) locally
d) legally



24 Which of the following would be the most appropriate title for this passage?

a) credit cards
b) identity theft
c) bank statements
d) website encryption

25 The underlined word "they" refers to?

a) Companies.
b) Thieves.
c) Irregularities.
d) Internet shoppers.

26 The closest antonym of the word "various" is ....

b) similar
b) different
c) unlike
d) dissimilar

27 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

- The issue of education reform is important for Egypt as scientific research is one of the pillars of national security.

....

....

....

....

....

28 **Translate into English:** 3

- تتسبب مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى فى نشر الشائعات وخلق الفوضى فى المجتمعات، وهى أخطر بكثير من المخدرات والإدمان، ولكن لا نستطيع أن ننكر أن لها فوائد كثيرة.

....

....

....

....

....

29 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:** 6

"The television as a means of communication"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 10

40

Choose Two of the Five options:

4

1 The synonyms of the adjective "cruel" are .... and ....

a) friendly b) gentle c) lifeless
d) wicked e) unkind

2 The antonyms of the verb "employ" are .... and ....

a) hire b) fire c) understand
d) learn e) discharge

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

14

3 Luckily, The plane .... disaster when one of the engines cut out on take-off.

a) agreed b) contained c) avoided d) followed

4 They are carrying out some fascinating .... into the language of dolphins.

a) service b) leaflet c) research d) blog

5 When you have selected the file you want, ... the "Open" box.

a) navigate b) kick c) control d) click

6 We were told to keep all our sports .... in the lockers downstairs.

a) equipment b) decade c) conclusion d) description

7 My schedule is quite .... I could arrange to meet with you any day next week.

a) flexible b) confident c) exciting d) honest

8 Do you have any .... of working with kids. Have you ever worked with them?

a) experts b) experiments c) experiences d) experience

9 If it .... for his assistance, I would have lost my job.

a) weren't b) wasn't c) hadn't been d) hasn't been

10 Teachers .... skills on computer are limited, will meet a big challenge next year.

a) who b) whose c) whom d) that

11 .... had he finished writing the letter when the boss called to him.

a) Hardly b) Having c) After d) When

12 He wanted to know .... I had a driving licence.

a) whether b) unless c) that d) whom

13 The woman, ... purse was stolen, reported the police.

a) whom b) whose c) that d) who's

14 My car really needs .... cleaned.

a) to b) to being c) to be d) be

15 Who was this house .... by?

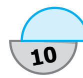
a) design b) designing c) designed d) be designed

16 He was absent yesterday. He .... ill.

a) can't be b) would be

c) must be d) must have been

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



The police find most criminals because somebody tells them who the criminals are. They find other criminals by using science and computers. When there is a bank robbery, the police first look through their computers for the names of bank robbers they know. Then, they go and talk to any of these robbers who are not in jail.

They ask them where they were at the time of the robbery. If any of these people cannot give a good answer, the police often use science to find out if one of them is the robber. Many criminals leave something of themselves at the place of the crime, like dirt or animal hair. If they leave behind some of their blood or a hair or a piece of skin, it will have their DNA inside it.

Everyone's DNA is different in the same way that their fingerprints are different. Therefore, if a criminal cuts himself/herself during a robbery or leaves a hair, or even a small piece of skin, scientists can find out what his/her DNA is. The police can then ask the person they think is the robber to give them one of his/her hairs or some blood and see if it has the same DNA. Many criminals are in jail today because of this kind of evidence.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 To find criminals, the police use ....

a) computers b) science c) detectives d) a, b and c

18 In case of robbery, the police firstly suspect the robbers .... jail.

a) outside b) inside c) under d) beside

19 The police first look through their computers for the .... of robbers.

a) faces b) names c) IDs d) clothes

20 Everyone's DNA is ....

a) the same b) similar c) not the same d) copied

21 The underlined word "them" refers to ....

a) the robbers b) the police c) the detectives d) the fingerprints

22 Criminals usually leave .... behind.

a) money b) DNA c) hair d) evidence

23 The police find most criminals because ....

a) somebody tells them who the criminals are
b) all police officers and detectives are skilled interrogators
c) all criminals are stupid
d) police officers aren't trained to observe and notice details

24 The underlined word "dirt" means ....

a) cleanliness b) pureness
c) any substance that makes things clean
d) any substance that makes things dirty

25 The word "evidence" is a synonym for ....

a) proof b) disprove
c) contraindication d) falsehood

26 The word "jail" here can be replaced by the word ....

a) prison b) paradise c) palace d) mansion

27 Translate into Arabic: 3

- Our country has rich natural resources. If we make the best use of them, they will lead to welfare and remarkable progress..

....

....

28 Translate into English: 3

- الأدب والفن هما المرآة التى تعكس حضارة المجتمع وقيمه، فهما من أهم الأدوات التى تنمى السلوك الحضارى للأفراد وتلعب دورًا فى خلق مجتمع راقٍ.

....

....

29 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following: 6

"Your role model in life"

....

....

....

....

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢١/٩٥٦٢

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ١٤٣/٢/١٢/١٠٤

